



CMS

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

Northland 2014–2024, Volume I
Operative 29 September 2014



Department of
Conservation
Te Papa Atawhai

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

NORTHLAND 2014–2024, Volume I

Operative 29 September 2014

Cover image: Waikahoa Bay campsite, Mimiwhangata Scenic Reserve.

Photo: DOC

September 2014, New Zealand Department of Conservation

ISBN 978-0-478-15017-9 (print)

ISBN 978-0-478-15019-3 (online)



This document is protected by copyright owned by the Department of Conservation on behalf of the Crown. Unless indicated otherwise for specific items or collections of content, this copyright material is licensed for re-use under the Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. In essence, you are free to copy, distribute and adapt the material, as long as you attribute it to the Department of Conservation and abide by the other licence terms.

To view a copy of this licence, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/nz/>

This publication is produced using paper sourced from well-managed, renewable and legally logged forests.

Contents

Foreword	7
<hr/>	
Introduction	8
<hr/>	
Purpose of conservation management strategies	8
CMS structure	9
CMS term	10
Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools	10
Relationship with other planning processes	11
Legislative tools	11
Exemption from land use consents	11
Closure of areas and access restrictions	11
Bylaws and regulations	12
Conservation management plans	12
International obligations	12
Part One	13
<hr/>	
1 The Department of Conservation in Northland	13
2 Vision for Northland—2060	13
2.1 Long-term vision for Northland—2060	14
3 Distinctive features, values and issues of Northland	15
3.1 Northland feels like an island	15
3.2 A complex, jumbled geology	16
3.3 One of the three indigenous biological treasure chests of New Zealand	17
3.4 Diverse and unique freshwater habitats	19
3.5 The most diverse marine environments in New Zealand	20
3.6 Numerous distinctive offshore islands	22
3.7 Rural and Māori communities close to large urban populations	22
3.8 The birthplace of the nation	23
3.9 World class visitor destinations	24
4 Treaty of Waitangi partnerships	25
4.1 Post-Treaty settlement relationships (as at the approval of this CMS)	25
4.2 Treaty claims yet to be finalised or negotiated (as at the approval of this CMS)	26
4.3 Treaty of Waitangi objectives	26
5 Northland Region by 2024	28
5.1 The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored	28
5.2 History is protected and brought to life	32
5.3 More people participate in recreation	33
5.4 More people engage with conservation and value its benefits	34
5.5 Conservation gains from more business partnerships	37
Part Two—Places	40
<hr/>	
6 Manawatāwhi/Three Kings—Te Paki Place	41
6.1 Description	41
6.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	42
7 Parengarenga—Aupouri—Kaimaumu—Karikari Place	46
7.1 Description	46
7.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	48

8	Ahipara–Herekino–Raetea–Warawara Place	52
	8.1 Description	52
	8.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	53
9	Whangaroa–Cavalli Place	56
	9.1 Description	56
	9.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	58
10	Puketi–Omahuta Place	61
	10.1 Description	61
	10.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	63
11	Bay of Islands Place	66
	11.1 Description	66
	11.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	69
12	Northern Kauri Coast Place	74
	12.1 Description	74
	12.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	77
13	Pouto–Kaipara Place	82
	13.1 Description	82
	13.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	83
14	Whangaruru–Mangawhai Coast Place	87
	14.1 Description	87
	14.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	90
15	Mangakahia–Tutamoe–Tangihua Place	96
	15.1 Description	96
	15.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones	98
Part Three		101
16	Specific policy requirements for Northland	101
	16.1 General	101
	16.2 Authorisations (General)	102
	16.3 Vehicles	104
	16.4 Aircraft	108
	16.5 Animals	111
	16.6 Private accommodation	114
	16.7 Marine mammal viewing	116
	16.8 Commercial eeling	117
	16.9 Sports fish and game bird hunting	117
	16.10 Prospecting, exploration and mining	118
	16.11 Sand and shingle extraction	119
	16.12 Commercial filming and photography	120
	16.13 Collection of material	120
	16.14 Wild Animal Control Activities	120
	16.15 Game animals (see also Wild Animals)	122
	16.16 Fire management	122
	16.17 MILESTONES–OUTPUTS	123
Part Four		124
17	Implementation monitoring and reporting, and review	124
	17.1 Introduction	124
Glossary		125

Appendix 1	145
Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that may meet the requirements of Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents	145
Appendix 2	161
Important ecosystems and habitats within Northland	161
Appendix 3	164
Islands over 1 ha administered by the Department of Conservation in Northland	164
Appendix 4	167
Priority ecosystems on public conservation lands and waters (excluding marine) in Northland identified by the Department through the Natural Heritage Management System in September 2013	167
Appendix 5	169
Threats, pests and wild animals present in Northland	169
Appendix 6	178
Flora and fauna present in Northland	178
Appendix 7	190
Nationally iconic species in Northland	190
Appendix 8	191
Marine habitats and ecosystems in Northland	191
Appendix 9	200
Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Northland	200
Appendix 10	203
Recreation destinations in Northland	203
Appendix 11	206
Prescriptions for management of visitor management zones	206
Appendix 12	209
Actively conserved historic places in Northland on public conservation lands managed by the Department	209
Appendix 13	213
Te Uri O Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002	213
Schedule 2	214
Appendix 14	230
Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act 2008	230
Appendix 15	251
Ngati Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012	251
Index	262

Foreword

The major issues identified in this conservation management strategy are engagement with iwi, hapū and communities, restoration of waterways and biosecurity.

Treaty of Waitangi claim settlement processes underway require that the Department engages actively and develops long term working relationships with iwi, hapū and communities.

The Department will be working with a range of partners, tangata whenua, statutory agencies, regional and local authorities, businesses, schools, other land managers and the wider community for the achievement of ongoing conservation results, particularly on the restoration of waterways and priority ecosystem units.

A strategic milestone throughout the Places in this Conservation Management Strategy is the maintenance of biosecurity protection and progress towards control of plant and animal pests in priority ecosystem units.

This Conservation Management Strategy has been developed through a lengthy public process and includes significant ongoing contributions from tangata whenua and Northland communities and others over many years. This enthusiastic input and active engagement is acknowledged, and it has resulted in this robust statement of the direction for conservation in Northland for the next decade and beyond.

This CMS became operative on 29 September 2014.


Dr Warren Parker
Chairman NZ Conservation Authority



Mita Harris
Chairman Northland Conservation Board



Nicola Douglas
Director Conservation Partnerships



Chris Jenkins
Director Conservation Services



Introduction

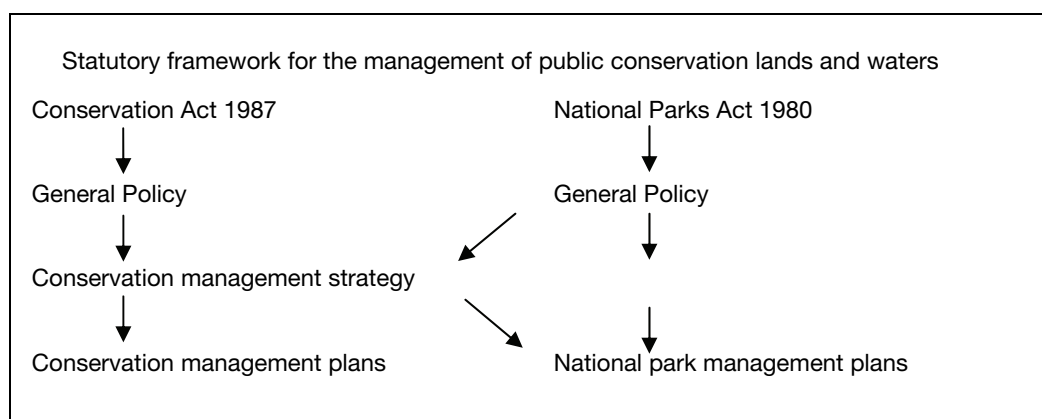
Purpose of conservation management strategies

Conservation, as defined under section 2 of the Conservation Act 1987 (the Act), is the ‘preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations’.

The functions of the Department of Conservation (the Department) are, for the most part, identified in section 6 of the Act and in other Acts listed in the First Schedule of the Act.

Section 17D of the Conservation Act states that the purpose of a conservation management strategy (CMS) is to implement general policies (including the Conservation General Policy 2005), and to establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including species managed by the Department, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes.

The Act creates a hierarchy of documents to guide the Department in its management of natural and historic resources. The Acts are at the top, the General Policy is next, and below that are the CMSs and conservation management plans. In Northland there are two operative conservation management plans: Pukenui Forest - Ngahere o Pukenui Management Plan 2009, which was prepared by Whangarei District Council, the Department and Nga Ahi Kaa o Pukenui; and the Sustainable Development Plan for the Kororipo-Kerikeri Basin 2007, which was prepared by Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, Far North District Council, tangata whenua and the Department.



The general policy relevant to this CMS is the Conservation General Policy 2005, which applies to all conservation lands, waters and resources managed by the Department under the following Acts: the Conservation Act 1987, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.

Other legislation in which the Minister of Conservation has a role or that is relevant to this CMS includes the Electricity Act 1992, the Freedom Camping Act 2011, the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, the Protected Objects Act 1975, the State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986, the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Walking Access Act 2008 and the Game Animal Council Act 2013.

All public conservation lands and waters must be managed in accordance with the legislation under which they are held. This CMS must be interpreted and applied in line with that legislation.

The parts of this CMS which have legal effect are the objectives, outcome statements, policies and glossary:

- Objectives describe the goals that the Department wants to achieve across the area covered by this CMS, and support national directions and community aspirations to achieve integrated management.
- Outcome statements describe the future state of a 'Place', including its values and changes at that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used when making decisions. This applies whether or not there is a specific policy for a Place.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used for conservation management and decision making.
- The glossary defines words and phrases

All other text is provided as supportive background material.

Each CMS is prepared with public participation, according to the process set out in the Conservation Act. Preparation of this CMS has involved two pre-statutory consultation phases. The first occurred in 2008, and involved meetings and hui with communities throughout Northland, an online questionnaire seeking answers to a set of questions regarding each Place, a competition for school students, and advertising in the media. The second phase was held during 2011 and sought mainly to fill any gaps in the earlier phase, using the same set of questions used in the online and face-to-face survey. Meetings, hui and drop-ins were held with communities throughout Northland, often simultaneously with consultation on the proposal to establish a Kauri National Park. District councils, Northland Regional Council and stakeholder groups with a region-wide focus were also consulted. Over 800 people participated in this process by providing preliminary submissions. The Northland Conservation Board was involved throughout, attending meetings and provided with briefings at board meetings. The Board has also been involved in the development of the CMS. Stakeholder groups have been given the opportunity to view and comment on drafts in development, and iwi authorities have been informed on several occasions and provided with copies of draft sections of this document for comment during its development.

The role of the Conservation Board is to recommend approval of the draft CMS, and when approved, to monitor the implementation as described in Part Four. The role of the New Zealand Conservation Authority is as the decision-maker approving the CMS.

CMS structure

This CMS describes the conservation values present in Northland, and provides guidance for the Department's work in the form of a vision, objectives, outcomes for Places, policies, and milestones; translating the Department's strategic outcomes to Northland. The Places described in Part Two of this CMS have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management and require some specific management direction.

This CMS has two volumes. Volume I includes a vision, and objectives (Part One), outcomes, policies and milestones for Places (Part Two), and other specific policies that address legislative and general policy requirements (Part Three), the glossary and

appendices. The vision and objectives in Part One, and the policies in Part Three, cover all public conservation lands and waters in Northland. Volume II contains maps and a public conservation land inventory.

CMS term

This CMS will have effect for 10 years, or until formally amended or reviewed in full or in part. The term of this CMS is from 2014 to 2024, but may be extended with ministerial approval.

Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools

This CMS must be read in conjunction with the Conservation General Policy¹, as this is the key statutory tool directing the content of CMSs. Relevant provisions of the General Policy are not repeated in the CMS.

The Conservation General Policy provides clear direction that each CMS should integrate the management of Places to achieve national conservation outcomes and coordinate planning between Places in other CMSs. To help achieve this integration towards national conservation outcomes, the high-level objectives of the Department's Statement of Intent 2013-17 and national priorities identified through the Department's national decision-making support tools are reflected in this CMS. These tools, including those for natural heritage management and destination management, identify national priorities for the delivery of the Department's biodiversity, historic and recreation functions.

In this CMS, the term 'priority ecosystem unit' refers to a site on public conservation land where conservation work will most effectively contribute to protecting the full range of ecosystems nationally, and the Threatened and At Risk species that live within these ecosystems. These sites have been identified through the application of the Department's natural heritage management prioritising processes. Refer to Appendices 2, 3 and 4.

Threatened species are referred to by their status according to their level of threat of extinction identified in the New Zealand Threat Classification System (2008)². Iconic species are those that the public has told the Department help define New Zealand's identity.

References to recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters have been categorised to reflect known demand. 'Icon visitor destinations' are those that the Department has identified as aspirational places that are crucial to domestic and international tourism. 'Gateways' are places that the Department will promote as suitable for people's first adventures in the outdoors, or repeat adventures of a gentle nature. 'Local treasures' are nearby places valued by the local community which are managed to build community connection with and use of those places. 'Backcountry destinations' are more challenging recreation opportunities in the backcountry that are

¹ It must also be read in conjunction with the General Policy for National Parks, if a national park is established in Northland, for the area covered by the national park.

² Townsend, A.J.; de Lange, P.J.; Duffy, C.A.J.; Miskelly, C.M.; Molloy, J.; Norton, D.A. 2008: New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual. Department of Conservation, Wellington.

managed to attract a wider range of visitors. ‘Historic icon destinations’ are an important part of New Zealand’s history and identity, and the focus of the Department’s story-telling to bring history to life.

CMSs integrate the Department’s national priorities with local priorities that have been identified through consultation with the community. They guide the Department’s management of Places, business planning, the Statement of Intent and decisions on concessions and other authorisations, and identify opportunities for collaborative efforts to achieve more conservation.

Relationship with other planning processes

CMSs are part of a wider planning landscape. In preparing CMSs, the Conservation General Policy requires that regard be had to local government planning documents. In turn, local government planning is required to have regard to the Department’s statutory plans when preparing documents under the Resource Management Act 1991. Planning for natural and historic resources cannot be undertaken in isolation from the wider regional, local government planning and iwi planning processes. Integration of this planning framework will ensure that plans and policies work as building blocks to deliver good conservation and environmental outcomes at a regional scale.

Regional councils have a leadership role under the Biosecurity Act 1993 for promoting the alignment of pest management in a region, and facilitating cooperation and co-ordination among those involved in pest management to enhance effectiveness, efficiency and equity of programmes. Regional pest management and pathway plans are tools for the delivery of that role.

Legislative tools

Exemption from land use consents

Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) exempts the Department from needing to obtain district council land use consents where activities are consistent with a CMS and do not have significant adverse effects beyond the boundary of public conservation lands. Appendix 1 of this CMS lists many activities that the Department considers meet the requirements for an exemption under Section 4(3)(a) and (b) of the RMA. The facilities and activities listed in Appendix 1 are provided for the sole purpose of enabling the exemption under Section 4(3) of the RMA and do not represent an undertaking in terms of the provision of these facilities.

Further, while certain activities may be exempt from land use consent, this does not preclude compliance with other regulatory requirements under the RMA, and under other legislation.

Closure of areas and access restrictions

Section 13 of the Conservation Act 1987 enables the Minister of Conservation to close areas administered under that Act for reasons of public safety or emergency. This section also enables the Minister to close areas if a CMS provides for the closure for conservation purposes. See Part Three Policy 16.1.1.7. Access to reserves may also be restricted under the conditions for use of the reserve by Gazette notice or signage.

Bylaws and regulations

Bylaws can be established for reserves under the Reserves Act 1977 and for national parks under the National Parks Act 1980, and regulations can be made for conservation areas and other conservation purposes under the Conservation Act 1987. The Northland Reserves Bylaws 2007 apply to 16 scenic, recreation, historic and wildlife reserves on the eastern coast of Northland. The bylaws may be reviewed with the aim of extending the number of reserves subject to them. The Bay of Islands Maritime and Historic Park Bylaws 1985 apply to 56 reserves within the Bay of Islands and wider area from Mimiwhangata in the south to Whangaroa Harbour in the north.

Conservation management plans

Sections 17E and 17G of the Conservation Act provide for the preparation of conservation management plans for the purpose of implementing a CMS and establishing detailed objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources for an area and for recreation, tourism or other conservation purposes. The Act provides that the intention to prepare a conservation management plan may be identified in a CMS. This does not preclude the preparation of management plans or parts of a CMS, which may come about as a requirement in Treaty Settlement Acts (see section 4).

International obligations

New Zealand is a signatory to many international agreements that are relevant to conservation. The Department implements these agreements in accordance with its functions and has responsibilities for a number of species under those agreements. Some key examples of international agreements of most relevance within Northland include the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity
- Convention Concerning the Protection of the World's Cultural and Natural Heritage (World Heritage Convention)
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wildlife Flora and Fauna (CITES)
- International Convention for the Regulation of Whaling
- Convention on Migratory Species
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat (Ramsar Convention)
- Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict
- Convention on the means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property.

Wakarua Moutere, or the North East Islands, Kororipo-Kerikeri Basin Historic Precinct and the Waitangi Treaty Grounds Historic Precinct are included on New Zealand's tentative list of eight sites for World Heritage Status. Ramsar status has previously been proposed for Kaipara, Parengarenga and Rangaunu Harbours.

Part One

1 The Department of Conservation in Northland

This section contains a vision and objectives that apply to all public conservation lands, waters and resources in Northland. Where there is a more specific provision in Part Two or Part Three, the more specific provision prevails.

This section also guides the Department when it advocates for conservation off public conservation lands and waters.

See also Volume II, Map 1, Map 6 and Maps 7.1 to 7.13.

2 Vision for Northland—2060

The Vision sets the long-term picture for how the conservation of natural and historic resources of the Northland region could be in 50 years. It goes well beyond the 10-year life of this CMS and may change over time.

The Department of Conservation also has a national long-term Vision:

New Zealand is the greatest living space on Earth

Kāore he wāhi i tua atu i a Āotearoa, hei wahi noho i te ao

This Vision is aspirational, a great deal bigger than conservation and a great deal bigger than the Department. It stretches the Department to connect with others to achieve it, often in ways that may challenge and expand the traditional view of the Department's role and who its traditional partners are. In doing so, it requires the Department to build empathy, trust and understanding, so that both traditional and non-traditional audiences engage in a common vision.

Conservation is an investment in New Zealand's future prosperity—with 'prosperity' defined in the broadest environmental, heritage, cultural, social and economic terms. The aim is to shift perceptions of conservation as a cost, to conservation as an investment. The Department wants to inspire and involve others to work together to achieve more conservation than it could achieve alone.

It means changing the way people perceive a healthy environment, so that they understand and value spending on nature conservation, seeing that it delivers a broad range of benefits, such as healthy soils, clean air, fresh water and carbon sequestration. The benefits nature provides are also multi-faceted and broad—they feed social, physical, cultural and spiritual health, and wealth. This allows people to be drawn to making *New Zealand the greatest living space on Earth* through many pathways.

2.1 Long-term vision for Northland—2060

Northland is the greatest place for living and experiencing New Zealand’s early contact history, culture and subtropical natural heritage. Throughout the many Places in Northland, the themes of historical and cultural interaction and relationships with the environment are experienced, and affirm the identity of all New Zealanders.

It is widely known that Polynesian explorers made the first landfall on the shores of Hokianga Harbour and that the people of many tribes trace their ancestry back to Northland. Te Wahapū o te Hokianga nui ā Kupe is celebrated as the place of beginnings. Northland is widely regarded as the most historically significant part of the country with both early Māori and the first European settlements.

Northland claims the title of ‘Birthplace of the Nation’, being the site of the Declaration of Independence of New Zealand in 1835 and the first signing of the Treaty of Waitangi.

The resolution of historical Treaty grievances creates resurgences in health, well-being, sense of worth and self-determination.

Conservation is a collaborative partnership. The communities of Northland have risen to the challenge of living in a biodiversity, cultural and historic hotspot, and have built a reputation as international leaders in biodiversity enhancement and restoration, and management of heritage and cultural sites reflecting the early contact period between European and Māori in Northland. With landowner and community support, the kauri (*Agathis australis*) forests, wetlands, key freshwaterways, coastline and marine area are linked and flourishing as healthy ecosystems. Communities are actively involved in and appreciate the important contribution that conservation and heritage protection makes to their prosperity.

Visitors connect with local communities and experience a genuine interaction with Northland’s unique combination of subtropical biodiversity, history and heritage influenced by its long coastline.

3 Distinctive features, values and issues of Northland

3.1 Northland feels like an island

With its distinctive long coastline characterised by sandy beaches and dunelands, rocky shorelines and headlands, and numerous harbours and estuaries, Northland feels like an island. Furthermore, being less than 100 km across at its widest point, no place is more than 40 km from the sea. The surrounding ocean has a profound effect on the character of the region and its people. The 16 harbours, numerous bays, inlets and islands on the 3000 km long coastline are a primary attraction for residents and visitors to the region. The climate and weather patterns are dominated by maritime influences. Northland contains the largest area of relatively unmodified sand hills and dunelands (Pouto Peninsula), the largest mānawa/mangrove (*Avicennia marina*) forest (Rangaunu Harbour) and one of the most biologically rich harbours (Parengarenga Harbour) in New Zealand. Kaipara Harbour is a dominant and unifying feature, as its catchment drains almost the entire southern half of the region as well as linking with the adjacent Auckland region.

As global climate change contributes to sea level rise, the nature of the coastline will slowly but inexorably change. At current rates, by 2050, the sea level around New Zealand will have risen 12 cm above today's (2014) levels. The following changes are likely to occur as a result of climate change:

- Coastal defences are overtopped by waves or high tides more often.
- Severe storms increase in intensity and storm surge levels rise.
- Some sandy beaches may continue to accrete, but at a slower rate.
- Waves could be 15% higher by 2050.

Predicting how native species and ecosystems will respond to climate change is difficult as many native species and ecosystems occupy relic distributions reflecting previous use patterns that have little relationship to climate.

Significant impacts on indigenous flora and fauna from climate change may be caused by:

- changes in habitats
- increases in populations of pests and predators
- new pest species becoming established
- changing rainfall patterns
- ocean acidification
- extreme weather events
- sea level rise.

As New Zealand's temperatures are predicted to rise and climatic patterns alter, habitats are changing and many lowland areas are becoming drier than they have been before.

For those indigenous plants and animals that exist only in small, specific parts of the country (because they have evolved according to the unique conditions found there, because much of their natural habitat has been lost to development, or their capability to migrate to new habitats is limited), these changes may lead to extinction.

Warmer temperatures can upset the breeding cycles of animals such as the tuatara. Lower numbers of females hatch from eggs developing at higher temperatures. Flowering and seed setting may also be disrupted.

The continued acidification of oceans alters food chains, particularly for organisms with calcium-based shells or skeletons. The consequences are unknown for the many animals that rely on these organisms for food.

The relatively rapid rise in sea level is likely to lead to reduction, modification, or elimination of many intertidal habitats. Rates of erosion of coastal cliffs may accelerate.

Recreation opportunities will also be impacted by climate change with coastal walks and camping grounds likely to be among the most affected.

3.2 **A complex, jumbled geology**

The geology of Northland is complex, with a wide-ranging jumble of sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic rocks occurring throughout the region. Part of this jumble is the broken-up remains of a prehistoric (20 million-year-old) landmass on the Pacific Plate, which crumpled as it was subducted beneath the Australian Plate. This is the Northland Allochthon. It comprises the older materials found throughout northern and western Northland and the Kaipara, and includes:

- jagged or steep volcanic mountain ranges, including Maungataniwha, Tangihua, Te Pahi, Warawara and Waima massifs ('Tangihua Complex')
- low-lying, sedimentary mudstones and sandstones ('Mangakahia Complex', 'Whangai Formation', 'Punakitere Sandstone' and 'Hukerenui Mudstone')
- small pockets of limestone ('Mahurangi Limestone') and conglomerate argillites ('Tupou Formation') and
- metamorphic serpentinite, ophiolite and gabbro at North Cape (Otou) ('Surville Serpentinite' and 'Murimotu Intrusives'), which is a section of the continental-crust sea floor that has been folded and uplifted.

Punctuating the Northland Allochthon are several volcanic units that formed around the same time: the 'Coromandel Group' volcanoes in the east (Manaia, Mt Parihaka, Bream Head and the Dome), and the remains of the Waipoua Volcano ('Waitakere Group') in the west. In contrast, eastern Northland is largely argillaceous ('Waipapa Group') greywacke, with beds of sandstone, red and green argillite, chert, and tectonically enclosed basalt. These rocks are one of the older rock types in Northland (at around 200 million years), and are comprised of up-lifted and folded sea floor.

Sitting amid these two blocks at Puketi is a terrane that contains some of the oldest rocks in Northland ('Caples'), at about 250 million years old. These rocks comprise metamorphically altered basalts, argillites and cherts ('Puketi Unit'), and complex sandstones and conglomerates ('Omahuta Unit'). Overlaying and thrusting through all these rock types are the most recent Quaternary volcanoes and lava flows ('Kerikeri Group'), which are similar in age to the Auckland volcanoes. These include the domes of Maungatapere, Maunu, Parakiore, Tauanui, Pakaraka, Tarahi and Putahi, and fields at Tikipunga, Springs Flat, Wairua River, Waiariki River, Punakitere, Ngapuhi, Taheke, Omapere, Waitangi, and the hinterland plateaux behind Kerikeri, and Matauri and Takou Bays.

The final chapter in Northland's geology are the recent (Holocene) sands, sandstones, dunes and tombolos that have been deposited around the coast. These have been formed from outwash sediments, largely as a result of the last glacial period and events such as the Taupo Eruption. Such phenomena produced large amounts of fine material that reached the coast and were then carried northward by prevailing currents. As the currents dragged these sands northward, the heavier and coarser materials dropped out first. Black sands were deposited along Northland's west coast beaches and the lighter, finer sands travelled further, with some going around Cape Reinga/Te

Rerengawairua and North Cape (Otou) (or being blown over it) to get deposited at Parengarenga Harbour (Kokota Spit); the finest, lightest sands reached Karikari. Such phenomena have occurred several times and, in combination with sea-level increases and decreases, have formed several series of dunes of varying ages inland of those that are currently being deposited on the coast. This process of sand accumulation has joined what was once a long, isolated archipelago comprising the islands that are now called Te Pahi, Mokaikai, Mt Camel and Karikari to the much larger portion of Northland. Tropical weathering and erosion as a result of warm temperatures in the past means that outcrops of fresh rock at the surface are sparse. Refer also to Appendix 9. Systematic geological mapping began at Whangaroa in 1909 and geological research has continued to the present, and a recent aerial geomagnetic survey of the region has stimulated further interest in mineral exploration.

Northland has a very varied mining history having produced antimony, coal, copper, diatomite, kaolinite clay, kauri gum, manganese, mercury, peat, serpentine, silica sand and silver in the past. The region contains a wide variety of mineral commodities and currently produces high-quality ceramic clays, limestone for agriculture and cement, and rock and sand aggregates. In addition, potential is recognised for mining bauxite, chromium, feldspar sand, gold, lead, nickel, phosphate, zeolite and zinc. Land administered by the Department contains areas with potential for nearly all of these. Minerals exploration and mining today is often carried out where mining occurred in the past. In some cases, the mining activities of the past have become the historic heritage of today. Refer also to Appendix 9.

3.3 One of the three indigenous biological treasure chests of New Zealand

Northland's indigenous terrestrial ecosystems are diverse. The region's subtropical climate, strong coastal association and historic periods of isolation from the rest of New Zealand have resulted in many unique habitats, in which plants and animals that are found nowhere else in New Zealand or the world occur. This is particularly true at Te Pahi, North Cape (Otou), where magnesium-rich, ultramafic geological features support unique plant associations and shrubland types, and many locally endemic threatened plants and animals. Other renowned mainland sites include the forests of Waipoua and the Waima Range, and the dunelands and wetlands on Pouto Peninsula. Refer to Appendices 2, 3 and 4.

Many of Northland's most important habitats and ecosystems occur on public conservation lands; however, very significant natural areas fall outside lands the Department administers. Threats from introduced plants and animals (refer to Appendix 5) and human activities in particular are impacting on threatened species and on habitats that are now rare in Northland, such as wetlands, coastal habitats and ecosystems, and lowland forest.

Northland's terrestrial area covers approximately 1 254 826 ha, with around 13.4% of this area (167 918 ha) designated as public conservation land. The Northland Protected Natural Area Programme (PNAP) has identified around 21.7% (272 176 ha) of important natural areas on the mainland, with 47% (129 057 ha) of these areas occurring on public conservation land. This illustrates that a significant number of important natural areas, and thus also the native biodiversity they support, are found on private land. Areas of protected private land include: QEII covenants 8790 ha, Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata (covenant) 6682 ha, and Department-administered conservation covenants 3684 ha.

Northland has a particularly rich diversity of fauna and flora (refer to Appendix 6), which includes the following:

3.3.1 Fauna

A high number of Threatened and At Risk endemic invertebrates, including land snails and insects, often with locally restricted distributions. Northland is home to all six species of northern giant land snail, which include pūpū harakeke/flax snails (*Placostylus* spp.) and pūpū rangi/kauri snails (*Paryphanta* spp.). Invertebrate sites with high levels of endemism include the offshore islands, Te Paki/Aupouri Peninsula, western Northland forest blocks (Warawara, Waima, Waipoua), Cape Brett Peninsula and Bream Head.

Northland endemic fish species, such as the At Risk dune lakes galaxias (*Galaxis* sp.), which is restricted to west coast dune lakes, and the Threatened Northland mudfish (*Neochanna heleioides*), which is only found from Kaikohe to Kerikeri.

Northland endemic lizard species, including four At Risk species endemic to Te Paki—three geckos and one skink. Offshore islands are home to a high diversity of lizards, including endemic species and species that are no longer found on the mainland.

Threatened shorebird species such as taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern (*Sternula nereis davisae*), which only breeds at Waipu and Mangawhai sandspits in Northland, and tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel (*Charadrius obscurus aquilonius*), which has important breeding grounds at Waipu, Ngunguru and Mangawhai sandspits, and Rarawa Beach.

Significant numbers of migratory wading birds, such as kuaka/bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica*), turnstone (*Arenaria interpres*) and huahou/lesser knot (*Calidris canutus*). Important feeding habitats for these species include harbours at Parengarenga, Kaipara, Rangaunu, Houhora and Whangarei.

Significant populations of forest birds, including North Island kōkako (*Callaeas wilsoni*), North Island brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*) and kūkupa/New Zealand pigeon (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*). Notable forest sites that support these species include Waipoua, Waima/Mataraua, Puketi/Omahuta and Maungataniwha forests. These sites (among others) also contain populations of two Threatened pekapeka/bat species: the northern short-tailed bat (*Mystacina tuberculata aupourica*) and the long-tailed bat (*Chalinolobus tuberculata*).

A significant population of At Risk pāteke/brown teal (*Anas chlorotis* “North Island”). This species is found along the coast in eastern Northland, with key habitat at Mimiwhangata/Whananaki.

North Island weka (*Gallirallus australis greyi*) at Russell is a significant local feature.

3.3.2 Flora

Of the approximately 2362 vascular plant species native to New Zealand, just over half (1233) are found on the Northland Peninsula. Of these, 804 are only found in New Zealand and include species such as rimu (*Dacrydium cupressinum*), which is confined to the main islands of New Zealand, and kauri and pōhutukawa (*Metrosideros excelsa*), which are naturally confined to the northern half of the North Island.

Of the 804 species that are only found in New Zealand, 152 species only occur in Northland, or even only within a small part of it. These include species such as:

- North Cape karo (*Pittosporum serpentinum*) (a shrub) and Weissia “North Cape” (a tiny moss), both of which are confined to Surville Cliffs at North Cape (Otu);
- rātā Moehau/Bartlett’s rātā (*Metrosideros bartlettii*) (a large tree with white flowers), which is confined to several forest remnants around Te Paki;

- Poor Knights lily (*Xeronema callistemon*) (a flax-like plant with showy, red bottlebrush flowers), which is confined to the Poor Knights and Hen and Chickens Islands;
- rough-leaved kumaraho (*Pomaderris edgerleyi*) (a small shrub), which is confined to the northern and western parts of Northland.

Northland has a relatively large number of Threatened (70) and At Risk (167) species—only surpassed by Nelson/Marlborough and Southland, which both have a much larger land area. Northland threatened plants include:

- North Cape karo (Nationally Critical), with only 153 individuals known;
- Maungaraho Rock koromiko (*Hebe saxicola*) (Nationally Critical), with several hundred individuals known from the relatively small area of cliffs at Maungaraho Rock, south of Dargaville;
- *Hibiscus diversifolius* (Nationally Endangered), a coastal shrub of northern harbours and saltmarshes;
- *Goebelobryum unguiculatum* (Nationally Endangered), a liverwort found on peat in gumland shrublands.

Other important places and habitats for threatened plants in Northland, and the number of Threatened plant species in each case include:

- Te Pahi: 32 (29 on Surville Cliffs);
- Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands: 19;
- Western Northland (including Waima, Waipoua and Maungaraho Rock): 10;
- Far North (not including Te Pahi): 8;
- Poor Knights and Hen and Chickens Islands: 4;
- Whangarei Heads: 3.

Twenty Northland plant species are truly tropical, with their southern limit occurring in the region. These include plants such as *Macrothelypteris torresiana* (a tropical fern that has been recorded from North Cape (Otou)), *Ectopothecium sandwichense* (a tropical moss recorded from Te Pahi) and *Hibiscus diversifolius*.

3.4 Diverse and unique freshwater habitats

Freshwater habitats in Northland include lakes, rivers and streams, bogs, gumlands, swamps, fens, and ephemeral wetlands. They are some of Northland's most threatened habitats. Threats to freshwater and wetland ecosystems include poor water quality, poor land management practices (particularly intensification of farming), drainage, water reticulation and supply, pest plant encroachment, pest fish, grazing, development and predators. The lakes, especially, are at risk from aquatic weeds such as oxygen weeds (*Elodea canadensis*, *Lagarosiphon major* and *Ceratophyllum demersum*), which have the potential to disrupt lake ecology. Northland's freshwater habitats have the following features:

- Rivers and streams with relatively short catchments, the majority of which flow into estuaries, have a considerable intertidal area, and often originate from native forest. Waipoua River is one of Northland's most pristine rivers. Manganui River is the only large river system in Northland and contains substantial areas of original floodplain that still functions as a natural wetland.

- Dune lakes that are unique and have some of the highest ranked examples of intact natural aquatic ecosystems in New Zealand. Many are ranked as 'Outstanding' by the National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA). Examples of these can be found on Pouto Peninsula, at Kai Iwi, on Aupouri Peninsula and on Karikari Peninsula.
- The Ngawha geothermal field, which is the only high-temperature geothermal field outside the Taupo Volcanic Zone (NRC 2002)³, but which is also relatively cool by comparison (Browne et al. 2002)⁴. Several wells have been drilled that are in commercial operation as a geothermal power plant. The thermal lakes are surrounded by gumland vegetation.
- Volcanic lakes, which are lakes of volcanic origin. Lake Omapere is Northland's largest lake and Lake Owhareiti is its second largest.
- Peat bogs, which are nutrient-poor (oligotrophic), poorly aerated and acidic wetlands that often have mānuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*) prevalent in the canopy. Significant examples occur at Kaimaumau, Lake Ohia and Otakairangi.
- Podzol gumlands, which are unique to northern New Zealand. They are restricted to strongly leached podzol soils, which are very poorly drained, very infertile and acidic, and seasonally waterlogged. Gumlands were originally kauri forest, which was removed by repeated natural and human-induced fires. They are typically characterised by species such as mānuka, *Baumea* and *Schoenus* sedges, rārahu/bracken (*Pteridium esculentum*), waekura/umbrella fern (*Sticherus cunninghamii*), tangle fern (*Gleichenia dicarpa*) and *Dracophyllum lessonianum*. Some of Northland's most important gumlands occur at North Cape (Otou), Kaimaumau, Lake Ohia, the Ahipara tablelands and Ngawha Springs.
- Fertile swamps, the largest remaining examples of which occur at Te Werahi (Te Paki), near Motatau and at Kaipaha. Raupō (*Typha orientalis*) swamp is the most common type, while tī kōuka/cabbage tree (*Cordyline australis*) or harakeke/flax (*Phorium tenax*) swamps are the rarest. At Manganui River, wetlands are periodically immersed in water with very high fertility.
- Fens, which are a mixture of peat with inputs of groundwater and nutrients with slow-moving water. Northland's best example occurs at Maitahi, just north of Dargaville.
- Ephemeral wetlands, which are seasonally wet, shallow depressions that are important breeding and feeding sites for a wide range of waterbirds. In Northland, they mainly occur on the west coast dunelands, and occasionally in shallow inland depressions. The Motatau area contains an important inland example.

3.5 The most diverse marine environments in New Zealand

Northland has the greatest marine biodiversity in New Zealand due to its exposure to two major ocean systems, an impressive array of islands and estuaries, and a complex, indented, semi-sheltered east coast. Northland is the gateway for marine species coming to New Zealand on the warm tropical currents from the northwest, north and

³ Northland Regional Council annual environmental monitoring report 2001–2002. www.nrc.govt.nz/upload/2231/Chapter%20Ten%20-%20Ngawha.pdf. accessed 10 October 2012.

⁴ Browne, P.; Simmins, S.; Campbell, K.; Hampton, W.; Pastars, D. 2002: Geothermal Northland. Field trip guides. GSNZ Annual Conference 'Northland 2002', Geological Society of NZ, Miscellaneous Publication 112B: 49–58.

northeast. In addition to this rich northern biodiversity influence, species from the colder temperate environments to the south are also extensively represented in Northland. All these influences combine to make Northland's marine environments and ecosystems distinctive, and scientifically and economically important. Refer to Appendix 8.

Marine environments in the region have limited protection. Currently, there are four formally protected areas in Northland: two marine reserves (Whangarei Harbour (239.3 ha) and Poor Knights Islands (1922.1 ha)), one marine park at Mimiwhangata and the West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary which extends to the 12 nautical mile Territorial Sea from Maunganui Bluff to south Taranaki.

The Northland region covers three marine biogeographic regions: the Three Kings, the northeastern coast and the west coast.

Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands are located approximately 50 km to the northwest of Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua. Strong ocean currents from the south, east and northeast influence this island group at varying times and with irregular intensities. The currents of the Tasman Sea and Pacific Ocean periodically cause cold water to well up, providing nutrients for locally endemic species. Combined, these factors support terrestrial and marine fauna and flora that is unique to Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands, including many endemic species. Spirits Bay (Piwhane Bay) and Tom Bowling Bay on the adjacent mainland contain extremely diverse benthic communities. In these locations, bryozoans are among the most diverse in the world.

The Tasman Current, a series of tropical and subtropical water masses, sweeps down through this region and continues down northeastern New Zealand as the East Auckland Current. This current carries along tropical and subtropical larvae, invertebrates and fish. The larvae then settle along the eastern Northland coast at exposed headlands and offshore islands, including Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua, Cape Brett, Cape Karikari (Whakapouaka) and the Poor Knights Islands. Some of these larvae also find their way into estuarine systems in the Far North, including the Parengarenga, Houhora and Rangaunu estuaries, where they enhance local species populations. More exotic species that are occasionally encountered include sea turtles and snakes, and manta and devil-spined rays.

The east Northland coastline supports large populations of migratory wading bird species. Large colonies of nesting seabirds also occur on many of the coastal headlands and offshore islands. The west coast has only a few small islands (at its northernmost extent), and is continually exposed to oceanic swells along its extensive sandy beaches and rocky headlands.

The very large Kaipara Harbour contains a diverse array of habitats and associated species, including large wading bird populations. To the north is the long and convoluted Hokianga Harbour, and the two small harbours of Herekino and Whangape. The long stretches of Dargaville Beach to the north of Kaipara Harbour and Ninety Mile Beach contain large populations of the endemic surfclam toheroa (*Paphies ventricosa*). There are seal haul-out sites at Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands, Matapia Island (Ninety Mile Beach), and South Head (Kaipara Harbour), where small and remote remnants of the original kekeno/New Zealand fur seal (*Arctocephalus forsteri*) population can be found.

3.6 Numerous distinctive offshore islands

Northland contains a wealth of offshore islands and rock stacks. Refer to Appendix 3. Some islands contain a high number of endemic species, especially plants and invertebrates, many of which are At Risk or Threatened:

- Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands are home to an incredible array of threatened and significant species. They include two of the world's rarest plants, *Pennantia baylisiana* and *Tecomanthe speciosa*; many Threatened endemic snails such as *Placostylus bollonsi* and *Rhytidarex buddlei*; numerous endemic terrestrial invertebrates; a very large endemic skink, *Oligosoma fallai*; and many other plants that are found nowhere else, such as *Alecyrton excelus* subsp. *grandis* and *Myrsine oliveri*.
- The Poor Knights Islands support the only breeding population of at risk Buller's shearwater (*Puffinus bulleri*), as well as many endemic threatened or at risk species such as Poor Knights marbled skink (*Cyclodina oliveri*), Poor Knights giant wētā (*Deinacrida fallai*), Poor Knights flax weevil (*Anagotus fairburni*), Poor Knights lily (*Xeronema callistemon* forma *bracteosa*), which is endemic to the Island, and one of only two known populations of the threatened fern *Asplenium pauperequitum*.
- Until 1964, the Hen and Chickens Islands held the last remaining naturally occurring population of tieke/North Island saddleback (*Philesturnus carunculatus*) on Taranga (Hen) Island. Now there are several populations comprising thousands of individuals on offshore islands around the country, derived from this population. These islands are also home to many other threatened and significant species, including tuatara (*Sphenodon punctatus*), the endemic snail *Amborhytida tarangensis*, little spotted kiwi (*Apteryx owenii*), Poor Knights lily (*Xeronema callistemon* forma *callistemon*) and a wide diversity of breeding seabirds, including the at risk Pycroft's petrel (*Pterodroma pycrofti*).
- Ecologically significant islands not administered by the Department include Matapia Island, Stephenson Island (Mahinepua Island), the Moturoa Islands, the outer Cavalli Islands and Motukokako Island (Piercy Island). In the Bay of Islands, the privately owned Moturoa group is gazetted as a wildlife refuge.

3.7 Rural and Māori communities close to large urban populations

Northland communities and tangata whenua have a high level of commitment to conservation, with the highest number of landcare groups in the country (55) and the highest number of QEII covenants in New Zealand (629). In 1990 Northland tangata whenua also initiated the first Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata for protection of biodiversity values on Māori-owned land, and the region currently has 14 operating Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata in place.

Given that Northland is the most rural region in New Zealand, with 51% of its 152 700 population living in rural areas, the continuing engagement of communities and tangata whenua in conservation is crucial. Future challenges for conservation in Northland will include factoring in the influence of the neighbouring Auckland region, which is home to the largest metropolis in New Zealand and a source of domestic tourism and investment, as well as a key employment destination for Northlanders. Northland communities fluctuate in number, with summer and holiday times seeing a three-fold increase in population, particularly on the east coast, where many of Northland's popular public conservation sites are located.

Another challenge will be the integration of conservation into the diverse range of socio-economic communities living in Northland. Wide-ranging differences in socio-economic status are a prominent characteristic. Northland features at the top of national unemployment levels, and Northlanders have more limited access to telecommunications and a lower median income than the rest of New Zealand. However, at the other end of the socio-economic spectrum, the past decade has seen increased residential development on Northland's popular east coast in holiday spots such as Mangonui–Cable Bay, Karikari Peninsula and the Bay of Islands. The affluence of these areas, which includes significant amounts of investment by non-residents including foreigners, contrasts sharply with many of the small, isolated predominantly Māori communities close by, who depend on the land and sea for their living. Over 31.7% of Northland's population is Māori (compared with a total of 7.7% nationally).

3.8 The birthplace of the nation

Some of the oldest traces of Māori settlement can be found in Northland, including proof of habitation on offshore islands—from Taranga Island in the Hen and Chickens group through to Motukawanui in the Cavalli group. Archaeological evidence and records held by tangata whenua provide proof that Northland was also one of the mostly densely settled parts of New Zealand at the time of European arrival. Sea and freshwater resources were a vital dietary component, but food production from horticulture also played an important role, with the sandy soils of the coast being favoured for gardening. Exploitation of forest resources also occurred.

The 18th century saw the arrival of European explorers, two of whom had a particularly large impact in Northland: Lieutenant James Cook, who visited several locations along the east coast in 1769, and Marion du Fresne, who spent nearly 2 months in the Bay of Islands in 1772. These journeys of exploration were followed by traders, whalers and sealers, and then missionaries. Stories of the temperate climate, fertile land, and the potential of kauri and kahikatea (*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*) forests as sources of timber and gum, in addition to agricultural potential, motivated further migrations.

The first European settlement in New Zealand was established at Oihi Bay in 1814, where a mission station was set up by Reverend Marsden and chief Ruatara. This was followed by additional missions in Kerikeri in 1819 and Paihia in 1823.

In 1832, James Busby was appointed as British Resident in New Zealand and a house was built for him at Waitangi. In 1840, Busby hosted the formal signing ceremony of the Treaty of Waitangi by representatives of the British Crown and Māori chiefs from the northern tribes. In the same year, the first capital of New Zealand was established at Okiato by Lieutenant-Governor of New Zealand, Captain William Hobson.

In Northland, archaeological and historic sites represent every stage of New Zealand history, from early Polynesian settlement, through the development of Māori agriculture and warfare, to European colonisation and the subsequent growth of industries that transformed the landscape and formed a basis for our present economy. More than 12 000 archaeological sites have been recorded in Northland, 3000 of which are on public conservation land. Among these, there are representations of all types of Māori sites, from the earliest Archaic period middens to Classic period pā and on to the development of musket-fighting pā. The majority are situated within 1 km of the coast or are within the fertile volcanic valley systems. Sites representing European settlement are as diverse as whaling stations, World War II installations (radar, gun and mine), kauri gum mining and timber milling (saw pits, dam installations), as well as resource mining such as gold, mercury and tin. Refer to Appendix 12.

Northland features several historic sites with national significance, including Ruapekapeka Pā, Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua, Cape Brett Lighthouse, Flagstaff Hill/Maiki Hill, Kororipo Pā, Arai Te Uru, Marsden Cross, Pompallier House and the Waitangi Treaty Grounds.

Archaeological sites are represented by physical evidence, such as standing structures or associated earthworks, and some also hold spiritual significance for tangata whenua. There are also places of traditional importance where no physical evidence of human activity exists. These are broadly categorised as wāhi tapu (sacred places) and can include mountains, food gathering places, canoe landings and fresh water springs, to name just a few.

Threats to historical values in Northland include natural forces (e.g. storm damage), ignorance of their values or their protection by law, a lack of knowledge as to their precise location, land developments (including development of visitor facilities), and loss of knowledge. Events such as a tsunami in 1450 AD offer the potential for collaboration between tangata whenua, archaeologists and others who can read landscapes and bring history alive to raise awareness of natural hazards and their potential effects.

3.9 World class visitor destinations

People visit Northland to experience culture and history, the coast, and kauri trees. Being the birthplace of the nation, it is exploding with history and showcases some stunning examples of early Māori settlement, early European/Māori co-settlement, such as is found at Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin, and settlement conflict, e.g. Ruapekapeka Pā. The forest also tells a story, with kauri trees that are older than human settlement in New Zealand and larger than most trees in the world—Tāne Mahuta in Waipoua Forest being the largest kauri tree of all. The campgrounds, opportunities for freedom camping, and mainly day track destinations on the coast are a major draw card for visitors, with sweeping beaches and little nooks and crannies. The trip along Ninety Mile Beach (Te Oneroa-a-Tohe) or State Highway 1 to Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua brings the physical (coast, seas) and spiritual together at the tip of New Zealand. As one of New Zealand's icon destinations it provides the backbone to the Northland visitor experience. People are welcome to camp overnight in places where they can hear the waves (Maitai Bay Camp) or kiwi (Trounson Camp); walk the bush track to get views of Northland (Mt Manaia) or see a pā (Rangikapiti, Urupukapuka Island), or walk along the coast (Mangawhai Cliffs); or experience a marine reserve (Poor Knights Islands, Whangarei Harbour). Public conservation lands and waters are at the heart of it all. Refer to Appendix 10.

4 Treaty of Waitangi partnerships

The Conservation Act 1987 and all the Acts listed in its First Schedule must be so interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Conservation Act 1987: section 4). The Department also has specific responsibilities under Treaty settlement legislation.

The Department recognises the role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki and acknowledges their mana whenua, the special relationship they have with the land and its resources. Some of the most important wāhi tapu sites and places of ancestral significance in Northland are on public conservation lands and waters.

Iwi may chose to develop their own plans to guide their work and relationship with Crown agencies and express the exercise of their kaitiakitanga. These plans may include monitoring, reporting and review processes. These plans have been taken into account in the development of this CMS.

Effective relationships with tangata whenua help to achieve conservation of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage. Relationships with tangata whenua vary, and take a unique form with different iwi or hapū, or with respect to individual Places, species or resources. The Crown's Treaty of Waitangi settlement process is creating enhanced relationships with Māori. The special and traditional relationships of claimant groups with the natural environment are often explicitly recognised, and claimant groups are better able to participate in decision-making processes.

The areas of New Zealand that were first settled by both Māori and Europeans are found in Northland. Overlaying the public conservation land are many histories of arrivals, settling and working with the land. These histories and relationships with the land, and therefore the Department, are a focus in this CMS. The Crown is currently negotiating with various Northland iwi towards settlement of historical claims under the Treaty of Waitangi. It is likely that the final Deeds of Settlement will provide a firm platform for enduring and positive relationships between these iwi and the Department.

4.1 Post-Treaty settlement relationships (as at the approval of this CMS)

4.1.1 Te Roroa

The rohe of Te Roroa runs from south of Dargaville to the Hokianga, centred on Waipoua Forest. The Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act 2008 established Te Tarehu, a statutory overlay that requires the Department to acknowledge Te Roroa's spiritual, historic, cultural and/or traditional values associated with Waipoua Forest (Appendix 14). Waipoua Forest and associated public conservation lands were subject to a national park investigation in 2011 to 2013. No decision had been made to establish a national park as at the time this CMS was approved.

4.1.2 Te Uri o Hau

Te Uri o Hau is a hapū of Ngāti Whātua and its rohe is the northern Kaipara district. The Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002 transferred 14 areas of cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau, including parts of the Okahukura and Oruawharo River Conservation Areas. In addition a 'kirihipi' or statutory overlay was put over the Manukapua Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve, acknowledging the important values it holds for Te Uri o Hau. Both the Department and Te Uri o Hau are committed to developing a strong working relationship to protect conservation values and public access (Appendix 13).

4.1.3 Ngāti Manuhiri

Ngāti Manuhiri are based at Omaha Marae near Leigh. Their rohe extends along the eastern coast of North Auckland from Bream Tail in the north to Whangaparoa in the south, and includes Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island. Its rohe is covered by the Auckland CMS except for the section between Mangawhai and Bream Tail. The Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012 provides for the preparation of a joint management plan over Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier, transfer of five sites, two Whenua Rāhui overlay classifications and statutory acknowledgement of a number of sites. A conservation protocol sets out how the Department will work together with Ngāti Manuhiri in fulfilling conservation objectives across its area of interest (Appendix 15).

4.2 Treaty claims yet to be finalised or negotiated (as at the approval of this CMS)

4.2.1 Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, Ngāi Takoto, Te Rarawa

Te Hiku Claims Settlement Bill is before Parliament. It gives effect to the deeds of settlement in which the Crown and Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri, Ngāi Takoto and Te Rarawa agreed to the final settlement of the historical Treaty of Waitangi claims of those iwi.

The geographical area to which the settlements apply is Te Hiku-o-Te Ika (the tail of the fish/the Far North).

One element of the Te Hiku settlement is the establishment of a Korowai for enhanced conservation—Korowai Atawhai Taiao. The Korowai recognises the historical, spiritual and cultural association Te Hiku iwi have with public conservation land. It gives iwi greater input into decision-making, including in the protection of public conservation lands and important cultural taonga within the combined areas of interest of Te Aupōuri, Te Rarawa, Ngāi Takoto and Ngāti Kuri.

A new Te Hiku Conservation Board will be established with equal Te Hiku iwi and public membership. The Te Hiku Conservation Board will have a number of statutory functions, similar to those of the Northland Conservation Board, including recommending the approval of a new Te Hiku part of the Northland CMS, relating to public conservation land within the area covered by the Korowai.

Te Hiku iwi and the Department will co-author the Te Hiku part of the CMS, which will ensure that Te Hiku iwi interests will be integrated into this primary departmental planning document.

4.2.2 Ngāti Kahu, Ngāti Kahu ki Whangaroa, Ngāpuhi, Ngāti Hine, Ngāti Wai

The settlement of historical Treaty of Waitangi claims of Ngāti Kahu, Ngāti Kahu ki Whangaroa, Ngāpuhi, Ngāti Hine and Ngāti Wai were outstanding at the time of the approval of this CMS.

4.3 Treaty of Waitangi objectives

4.3.1 OBJECTIVES

4.3.1.1 Maintain and strengthen relationships with tangata whenua to enhance conservation and recognise mana. These relationships should be based on mutual good faith, cooperation and respect.

- 4.3.1.2 Formalise relationships, where appropriate, through agreements with tangata whenua to enhance and support those relationships.
 - 4.3.1.3 Actively consult and work with tangata whenua, ensuring consultation is early, ongoing, informed and effective.
 - 4.3.1.4 Consider customary practices and the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species by tangata whenua, consistent with kaitiakitanga, the relevant legislation, regulations, general policies and the purposes for which the land is held.
 - 4.3.1.5 Encourage tangata whenua involvement and participation in conservation management on public conservation lands and waters.
 - 4.3.1.6 Promote integrated conservation management for areas adjoining public conservation lands or waters that have been returned to tangata whenua through Treaty of Waitangi settlements.
 - 4.3.1.7 Work with tangata whenua where the Department has a common interest to protect on public conservation land, and advocate for off public conservation land, mahinga kai, wāhi tapu and other cultural resources in accordance with Treaty settlement outcomes.
 - 4.3.1.8 Work with tangata whenua to establish formal protocols to:
 - a) enable the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species, consistent with objective 4.3.1.4; and
 - b) guide the management of marine mammal strandings.
 - 4.3.1.9 Implement relevant Treaty of Waitangi settlements consistent with the Department's statutory role.
 - 4.3.1.10 Consider relevant iwi environmental plans in conservation management and the operations of the Department.
-

5 Northland Region by 2024

This section outlines national conservation outcomes for natural heritage, history, recreation, public engagement and conservation gains from business partnerships to be delivered by management of conservation resources within the area covered by the CMS over the next 10 years (refer Introduction).

These national conservation outcomes are linked to the Department's outcome statement and long-term vision, as detailed in the Department's Statement of Intent 2013–2017.

Map 2 in Volume II demonstrates how Northland's key conservation outcomes fit into the jigsaw of priority ecosystem units and recreation outcomes identified by the Department.

5.1 The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored

Northland is recognised nationally as a biodiversity hotspot, where an incredible diversity of significant habitats and ecosystems that support many threatened and at risk species are found. A high proportion of these sites have been identified using the departmental prioritising tools for natural heritage management and restoration to ensure that a full range of New Zealand's ecosystems and biodiversity are maintained. Refer to Appendix 4.

Many of Northland's most significant natural areas are formally protected and administered by the Department. However, there are also many nationally important sites that occur off public conservation land, and the Department would like to work with landowners and the community to protect these.

Northland's reputation as a biodiversity hotspot is highlighted by the following outstanding natural features:

- **Threatened species:** In 2012, habitats found within Northland provide a home for 70 threatened and 167 at risk plant species—the third highest number of any region in the country.
- **Islands:** Northland is blessed with many offshore islands, which provide safe havens for some highly threatened species, many of which no longer occur on the mainland. Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands, the Poor Knights Islands and the Hen and Chickens Islands stand out for their internationally unique ecosystems and incredible diversity of species, including those that do not occur anywhere else.
- **Unique endemic ecosystems:** North Cape Scientific Reserve is an outstanding ecosystem of international importance. On its serpentine soils, a range of plant species exhibit dwarfism and other variations in form that are not seen elsewhere. There are 17 threatened and at risk endemic plant species, and 3 threatened and 17 at risk land snails in this reserve.
- **Dune systems:** Te Pahi, Pouto and Mangawhai contain relatively extensive examples of mostly unmodified dune systems that support threatened and at risk species, and contain scenic and wilderness qualities that are seldom seen in the North Island. A chain of dune lakes on the Aupouri and Pouto Peninsulas are unrivalled elsewhere in the country and includes lakes that are ranked as being of outstanding quality.

- Forests: At some 31 000 ha, the Waipoua/Mataraua/Waima forest continuum is the largest tract of forest north of Auckland, and supports an incredible array of threatened and at risk species, including the largest area of old-growth kauri forest in New Zealand at Waipoua. The nationally significant forests of Puketi, Bream Head and Pukenui are supported by community conservation trusts who are working hard to maintain and restore their ecology.

The future of Northland's natural heritage is dependent on ensuring that a considered level of protection and management is undertaken by the Department and the community so that the highest priority natural areas do not incur further biodiversity loss and are progressively restored for future generations.

Management prescriptions such as wild animal and plant pest eradication and management, biosecurity surveillance, maintenance of pest-free statuses, monitoring and advocacy, and consultation will be required. The Department will concentrate on locations and species which will best achieve national priorities for protection across marine, terrestrial and freshwater environments.

Threats to the healthy functioning of habitats and ecosystems include widespread populations of possums, pigs and goats. Deer occasionally escape from deer farms. Weasels, ferrets, stoats, rats, mice and wild cats are all contributing to the decline of forest birds and are present throughout the region. Argentine ants are common around human habitation and their range is expanding. Wild dogs are found in some large forests and are a threat to ground-nesting birds including kiwi. Significant plant pests include Kahili ginger, brush wattle, *Elaeagnus* vine, moth plant, Mexican devil weed, yellow flag iris and pampas. A more comprehensive description of animal and plant pests is contained in Appendix 5. Other threats include fragmentation and loss of habitat through vegetation clearance, drainage, reclamation, water abstraction, fire, pollution, and industrial and urban development.

Specialised conservation management, such as translocations and reintroductions of species, will be important in some cases to reduce the risk of species extinctions and facilitate the restoration of some of Northland's most important sites.

Strengthening relationships, monitoring the work, effectively demonstrating results and celebrating successes are vital for fulfilling the vision of Northland being renowned as a leader in biodiversity enhancement and restoration. A diverse range of approaches are possible including new or improved legal protection, adaptive management, sponsorship, collaboration on long term research and prosecuting breaches of legislation and/or bylaws.

Priority ecosystems the Department considers nationally important for natural heritage management in Northland on public conservation land include:

- Bream Head Scenic Reserve
- Bream Islands Nature Reserve
- Hen and Chickens Islands Nature Reserves
- Kaihu Forest
- Kaimaumu Scientific Reserve and East Beach Conservation Area (part of), Motutangi/Waihuahua
- Kaipara North Head—Lake Rotokawau (Pouto) Marginal Strip; Kanono Conservation Area; Lake Kanono Marginal Strip; Kahuparere Conservation Area; Lake Rotootuauro Marginal Strip; Rotopouua Creek Conservation Area; Pouto Conservation Area; Pouto North Conservation Area (part of)

- Lake Ohia Conservation Area and Rangaunu Conservation Area (part of)
- Lake Waiporohita Scenic Reserve
- Maitahi Wetland Scientific Reserve
- Manaia Ridge Scenic Reserve
- Manganuiowae Ecological Area—part of Raetea Forest
- Manganui River Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve
- Mangawhai Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve
- Mokaikai Scenic Reserve (part of)
- Ngawha Springs—includes Lake Waiparaheka Scientific Reserve; Ngawha Conservation Area; Ngawha Scenic Reserve
- North Cape Scientific Reserve
- Omamari Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve
- Papakuri Scenic Reserve
- Poor Knights Islands Nature Reserve and Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve
- Pukenui Forest
- Puketi Forest
- Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve
- Simmonds Islands Nature Reserve
- Tangihua Forest
- Te Paki Recreation Reserve (part)
- Te Ramanuka Conservation Area
- Three Kings Islands Nature Reserve
- Trounson Kauri Park Scenic Reserve
- Waima Forest—includes Waima Scenic Reserve; Pakanae Scenic Reserve; Framptons Scenic Reserve; Wahaotetupua Scenic Reserve
- Warawara Forest
- Whangaruru North Head Scenic Reserve

The Important Bird Area (IBA) programme uses a set of standard criteria for identifying sites based on the IUCN (International Union for Conservation of Nature) threat rankings of birds and a set of population parameters (numbers of birds present based on their threat status). The IBA sites are used to encourage protection of sites of importance to wildlife. A process is underway to list IBA sites in New Zealand. Sites being considered in Northland include Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands, Poor Knights Islands, Marotere Islands, Taranga Island, Waipu Estuary, Mangawhai Estuary, North Auckland seabird flyway, and Kaipara Harbour.

Phytophthora taxon *Agathis* (PTA or kauri dieback disease), a soil-borne fungus-like organism that kills kauri trees, is a significant risk to the health and functioning of kauri forest ecosystems and can be spread by human activity as well as by animals. Management of this disease will require some significant changes to track infrastructure, and behaviour changes by the public to ensure effective boot and equipment hygiene/cleaning before each visit to all northern forests. There will be active control of soil movement within kauri forests during track construction, maintenance, or revegetation. Facilities will include non-muddy track surfaces, including boardwalks, in high use sites and the placement of hygiene stations at key forest entry points. In some circumstances temporary or permanent closure of forests may be required to protect kauri stands or reduce the spread of PTA. There will be an

ongoing programme of monitoring and testing for the presence of PTA, and targeted pig and other vector control.

The Department implements its responsibilities under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, the Fire Service Act 1975, and the Forest and Rural Fires Regulations 2005 through its National Fire Plan.

5.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.1.1.1 Contribute to building a national network of representative ecosystems conserved to a healthy functioning state, focusing on the priority ecosystem units listed in Appendix 4 and supporting the work of others to build a wider range of ecosystem types in good condition as identified in Appendix 2.
- 5.1.1.2 Contribute to efforts to ensure the persistence⁵ of Nationally Threatened species⁶, as listed in Appendix 6.
- 5.1.1.3 Contribute to efforts to maintain or restore the nationally iconic species listed in Appendix 7 that occur locally. The priority for ferns is as listed in Appendix 6.
- 5.1.1.4 Build partnerships with others to maintain or restore locally treasured natural heritage.
- 5.1.1.5 Engage in collaborative processes to build a nationally representative network of marine reserves and other marine protected areas, taking into account the marine ecosystems listed in Appendix 8.
- 5.1.1.6 Advocate for the protection of priority natural heritage, such as priority ecosystem units, Threatened and At Risk species, and significant geological features, landforms and landscapes selected from Appendix 9.
- 5.1.1.7 Actively manage threats, including unwanted incursions of new organisms, and new biosecurity risks to biodiversity habitats, with support from other agencies, tangata whenua and communities.
- 5.1.1.8 Collaborate with agencies and communities to prevent the establishment and spread of pest animals, plants and pathogens, including those listed in Appendix 5 in Northland.
- 5.1.1.9 Collaborate with agencies and communities to enhance freshwater quality and freshwater fish passage for whitebait and tuna/eel species.
- 5.1.1.10 Work to ensure that at least 95% of the 152 plant species that are endemic to Northland are flourishing on public conservation lands.
- 5.1.1.11 Advocate for and work with landowners and communities to protect and restore the ecosystems listed in Appendix 2 that are not on public conservation land.

⁵ Persistence is achieved when there is a 95% probability of a species surviving over the next 50 years or three generations (whichever is longer).

⁶ 'Nationally threatened species' in this context are all species categorised as Threatened (Nationally Critical, Nationally Endangered, Nationally Vulnerable) and At Risk (Declining).

- 5.1.1.12 Work with agencies and communities to establish a regional network of ecosystems conserved to a healthy functioning state, including connections between priority ecosystem units.
 - 5.1.1.13 Slow the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease) at contaminated sites, stop establishment of new sites of infection, and stop the long-range movement of PTA through effective working partnerships between the Department, agencies, tangata whenua, regional authorities and communities.
 - 5.1.1.14 Raise community awareness of fire threat in partnership with other organisations, and at sites where this will achieve conservation benefits.
-

5.2 History is protected and brought to life

All historic sites on public conservation land in Northland are accurately recorded in Archsite and will be protected from avoidable human harm. Community and tangata whenua involvement, understanding and appreciation of historic heritage in Northland will be enhanced. The places selected for active conservation management by the Department in Northland are listed in Appendix 12.

The places where the Department will prioritise its effort to ensure history is brought to life are:

- the historic icon and visitor destination icon of Kororipo Pā in Kerikeri Basin
- Marsden Cross Historic Reserve, which celebrated its 200th anniversary in 2014
- the Gateway Destination Urupukapuka Island—track upgrade
- Ruapekapeka Pā—a major interpretation upgrade to bring the site to life for visitors
- Mangonui Courthouse, part of a joint departmental/community project
- Rangikapiti, part of a Department/hapū/community project
- Spirits Bay (Piwhane Bay)—a major track and interpretation upgrade
- Northland forestry, Pukenui Forest, Tangihua, Warawara, Puketi, Omahuta, and Herekino
- Gum digging industry
- Bream Head—both Māori sites and the World War II gun emplacement
- Mimiwhangata
- mining history.

5.2.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.2.1.1 Understand the location, nature and condition of archaeological and historic places on public conservation land, and ensure that records of the location, nature and condition of these places are up to date.
- 5.2.1.2 Profile the historic icon sites and selected actively conserved sites listed in Appendix 12 through quality interpretation, both on- and off-site, to enable visitors to identify with the places and their stories.
- 5.2.1.3 Prioritise and protect the actively conserved sites listed in Appendix 12 on the basis of their historic, cultural and physical significance, their value to tangata whenua and the wider community, and their conservation need.

- 5.2.1.4 Understand the expectations of tangata whenua, communities and others regarding the protection and management of historic places on public conservation land.
 - 5.2.1.5 Build relationships with tangata whenua, communities and business to increase understanding, skill and active management and support for historic places.
 - 5.2.1.6 Undertake conservation work (repair and maintenance) at actively conserved historic places having regard to conservation plans, national and international best practices and the ICOMOS NZ charter.
 - 5.2.1.7 Work with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and other stakeholders to utilise expertise and shared interests to provide high standards of conservation and an integrated and enhanced visitor experience.
-

5.3 More people participate in recreation

Northlanders are proud to welcome people to the region's icon destination sites: Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua, Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin, Waipoua Kauri walks including Tāne Mahuta, and the Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve. Further development at the Cape Reinga Coastal Track, Cape Brett Lighthouse/Hut and Ruapekapeka Pā has led to increased visitation to these (proposed icon) sites.

Northland has introduced many people to recreation and conservation experiences through thoughtful management of campgrounds, huts and related tracks at Bream Head, Maitai Bay, Mimiwhangata, Otamure, Puketi Kauri Forest, Trounson, Whangaruru and Urupukapuka Island, and through easy-to-access backcountry tramping opportunities, including the Te Araroa Trail.

The Department works with tangata whenua, communities, businesses and other agencies to provide a range of recreation destinations and experiences that attract people to Northland. However not all recreation and tourism activities can be accommodated on public conservation land. Utilising public conservation land for recreational purposes helps people to connect with the special places in their locality and beyond.

5.3.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.3.1.1 Understand demand for outdoor recreation and provide recreation opportunities where demand is evident and expected to be sustained and the recreational opportunities are consistent with the protection of indigenous natural resources and historic and cultural heritage.
- 5.3.1.2 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the icon and gateway destinations identified in Appendix 10 as strategic attractions within the network of opportunities offered in Northland.
- 5.3.1.3 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the local treasure (Appendix 10) and backcountry destinations, as valued by local communities and as more challenging attractions respectively, within the network of opportunities offered in Northland.
- 5.3.1.4 Build partnerships with others to plan for, maintain and/or better develop locally treasured and backcountry recreation destinations.

- 5.3.1.5 Provide visitors with the opportunity for a positive social, physical and learning experience on public conservation lands.
- 5.3.1.6 Work with tangata whenua, communities and business to provide high-quality visitor facilities and related business opportunities where there is a demonstrated demand at locally treasured sites.
- 5.3.1.7 Promote and enhance understanding and appreciation of recreational, natural, historic and cultural values through marketing, education and interpretation.
- 5.3.1.8 Focus departmental management on a range of quality recreation opportunities with a kauri, coastal marine, cultural and historical focus, consistent with the protection of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage.
- 5.3.1.9 Avoid or otherwise minimise adverse effects on the qualities of peace and natural quiet, solitude, remoteness and wilderness in places where this is an important feature and expectation of the visitor experience.
- 5.3.1.10 Ensure recreation opportunities are eco-friendly and sustainable.
- 5.3.1.11 Work with the NZ Walking Access Commission to prioritise improved access to public conservation lands and waters for recreation, consistent with the protection of indigenous natural resources and historic and cultural heritage.
- 5.3.1.12 Work with the Te Araroa Trust on development of the Te Araroa Trail experience, including provision of visitor assets and information.
- 5.3.1.13 Develop and implement targeted approaches to encourage Northlanders to experience a wider range of recreational opportunities on public conservation lands and waters.
- 5.3.1.14 Avoid, minimise and otherwise manage conflicts between different users, including people undertaking different types of activities in the same location, in particular by:
- a) providing guidance on appropriate shared use etiquette;
 - b) placing seasonal restrictions on some activities.
- 5.3.1.15 Consult with tangata whenua and communities in decision making, and have regard to their views on new or upgraded visitor facilities and share technical knowledge and information.
-

5.4 More people engage with conservation and value its benefits

The strategic direction of the Department emphasises the need to raise the value of conservation to New Zealanders and increase involvement in conservation programmes.

Public feedback in 2011 identified the following as being important to members of the public:

- increasing connections to public conservation land
- Māori communities exercising their role as kaitiaki (guardians)
- participation in conservation management.

5.4.1 Active engagement

In Northland, there are many established, effective community and tangata whenua groups carrying out valuable conservation work, both on and off public conservation land. The number of community and tangata whenua conservation groups continues to grow, with the assistance and support of other agencies, including regional and district councils, the New Zealand Landcare Trust and Queen Elizabeth the Second National Trust. The Department currently supports community and tangata whenua conservation groups by providing operational, technical and strategic advice, assisting with funding applications, and collaborating with operational activities. There are now many organisations and schemes providing sources of funding to community and tangata whenua groups specifically for conservation projects.

In working with tangata whenua on conservation outcomes, a major consideration for the Department will be any changes to the governance and management of public conservation land arising from the settlement of Treaty claims. This may include application of the control and management provisions of the Reserves Act 1977 for management of protected areas. For conservation to continue to move forward in Northland, the Department will be focused on building positive and constructive relationships with tangata whenua. For many community and tangata whenua conservation groups, a key issue is securing ongoing funding, without which progress may be slowed or stopped, and conservation achievements undone. Another significant issue is a lack of capacity within groups, especially to meet administration requirements such as reporting on progress and securing funding.

A key focus of the Department's work will therefore be to continue working with tangata whenua and existing community conservation groups, (such as the NZ Motor Caravan Association and Reconnecting Northland), building on relationships and opportunities, and assisting with developing skills and capacity to achieve sustainable conservation outcomes.

5.4.2 Participation and awareness

Another goal of the Department will be to raise awareness across Northland of the value of conservation and its importance in the everyday lives of all New Zealanders.

This will include encouraging people to take advantage of the recreation opportunities provided on public conservation land, which will contribute to health and well-being, as well as developing an awareness of the intrinsic values of nature conservation. Some of the issues that the Department will focus on to raise awareness in Northland over the next 10 years include the impact of dogs on wildlife, wildfires, PTA (*Phytophthora taxon Agathis*; kauri dieback disease), biosecurity, and water quality. This will involve working with specific groups within the community to identify shared values and develop solutions.

Other issues raised by the public during consultation in 2011 included access to public conservation land, subdivisions, marine protection, access to and availability of kai (food), pollution, and the impacts of new energy generation technologies. Where possible, the Department will work with the community and tangata whenua to identify common goals and find solutions.

There are numerous sites in Northland where the community and tangata whenua currently work with the Department on conservation projects, or which have the potential as future conservation projects. Support by the Department for community and tangata whenua conservation initiatives will not be restricted to priority ecosystem units, and may be in response to pressure from the public to protect ecological values. The level of support given may be restricted due to staff capacity. Places where the

community will be encouraged to become involved or continue to initiate or lead conservation programmes include:

- Warawara Forest Conservation Park
- Herekino Forest Conservation Park
- Raetea Forest Conservation Park
- Mangamuka Gorge Scenic Reserve
- Eastern Bay of Islands / Ipipiri island group
- Cape Brett and Russell Peninsula
- Puketi Forest Conservation Park
- Omahuta Forest Conservation Park
- Motokawanui Island Scenic Reserve
- Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve
- Waipoua Forest Conservation Park
- Arai Te Uru Recreation Reserve
- Trounson Kauri Park Scenic Reserve
- Pouto Peninsula
- Bream Head Scenic Reserve
- Mimiwhangata Coastal Park
- Wairua River Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve
- Ngunguru Sandspit
- Whangaruru North Head Scenic Reserve
- Waipu Government Purpose Wildlife Refuge
- Mangawhai Government Purpose Wildlife Management Refuge
- Ruakaka Wildlife Refuge
- Maungatapere Hill Scenic Reserve
- Pukenui Forest

The Department works with a wide range of other statutory agencies to achieve common objectives and mutually agreed priorities. Examples are: NZ Transport Agency on roading, NZ Walking Access Commission on access, TBfree New Zealand on possum control, regional councils on biodiversity and pest management, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, Northland Fish and Game Council on sports fish and game bird related issues, the Game Animal Council on improving hunting opportunities, NZ Police, and Search and Rescue.

5.4.3

OBJECTIVES

- 5.4.3.1 Increase understanding, skills and active management and support for conservation in Northland.
- 5.4.3.2 Seek opportunities that connect more people to the value of conservation.
- 5.4.3.3 Work with a range of partners (such as tangata whenua, statutory agencies, regional, unitary and local authorities, businesses, schools, other land managers, and the wider community) in enduring relationships to achieve ongoing conservation results.

- 5.4.3.4 Focus relationship building and volunteers in those areas where cooperative relationships are most needed to support priority conservation outcomes.
 - 5.4.3.5 Achieve recognition of the contribution that public conservation lands and waters within Northland make to the well-being and economic prosperity of the Northland region and beyond.
 - 5.4.3.6 Raise public awareness that intact functioning ecosystems underpin New Zealand's economy both directly and indirectly.
 - 5.4.3.7 Deliver national and local conservation messages to targeted schools that link or are near to sites with high biodiversity values.
 - 5.4.3.8 Enter into formal management agreements or contracts with established community groups to undertake conservation work on public conservation land.
 - 5.4.3.9 Reduce barriers to participation through effective communication, and acknowledge the contribution of tangata whenua and community groups with clearly articulated conservation goals.
-

5.5 Conservation gains from more business partnerships

Northland has a diverse economic base. Manufacturing, including the Marsden Point Oil Refinery, is the largest industry, accounting for around 17% of Northland's gross domestic product (GDP). The primary sector (agriculture, forestry and fishing) contributes around 14%, followed by business and property services at 11%. Tourism contributes 6% to the regional economy. The Northland economy is vulnerable to changes in the wider economy and trends in the large urban populations of the Auckland and Waikato regions.

Future new, large economic development opportunities have been identified in the aquaculture and mining industries. While potentially good for the economy, these have the potential to be a source of conflict with conservation values and the Department therefore needs to engage with any such proposals early on to achieve mutually beneficial outcomes.

The Department will seek to identify and promote new business opportunities and partnerships that deliver conservation gains while enhancing prosperity. To achieve greater conservation gains over the term of this CMS, the Department will work with business sectors that include farming, forestry, aquaculture, fishing, energy generation, tourism and mining.

Businesses are increasingly seeking to demonstrate how they can contribute to sustaining a healthy environment. The potential to engage in conservation partnerships makes sense for businesses as it can significantly improve their worth, value and reputation while helping to conserve natural, historic and cultural heritage values.

In encouraging and recognising the importance of establishing business partnerships, the Department will ensure that conservation values, including natural, historic and cultural values, are not compromised.

In terms of tourism, Northland has traditionally been seen as a major holiday destination. The Northland tourism industry has identified three sites as icons for the industry—the Bay of Islands, Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua and the large kauri trees at Waipoua. The Department is a key player in all of these areas. The NZ Transport

Agency has a key role in planning, designing and supporting the improvement of roading access to these tourism destinations, including maintenance of the road through Waipoua Forest.

Recreation and tourism concessions make an important contribution to the regional economy by providing transport to and from sites of visitor interest managed by the Department. Over 60 concessions are active, taking visitors to sites including Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua, the Bay of Islands and Waipoua Forest. Many additional opportunities exist for smaller scale operations around guided walks, multi-day tramping and kayaking.

Cultural tourism has been identified as a growth area where visitors gain an authentic appreciation of Māori tikanga and the Māori relationship with the environment at particular sites. This is being explored with Te Roroa at Trounson, Tāne Mahuta and elsewhere in Waipoua Forest. Similar opportunities are possible at Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua, the Bay of Islands, Kaipara Harbour and the other harbours of Northland.

The rapidly changing environment of Treaty settlements is generating opportunities for claimant groups to establish sustainable economic bases with the return of land, forests and sites of cultural significance. These could involve the establishment of collaborative arrangements with the Department, other agencies and business interests. Honey and beehives in particular have been identified as a potential new economic activity using public conservation land.

Ecosystem services are the benefits people obtain from ecosystems, such as clean air, fresh water, and the pollination of crops. Public conservation lands and waters play a vital role in the provision of ecosystem services for local and regional communities. Forested catchments provide services such as flood and storm protection, reduce shallow soil erosion, enhance water quality, provide habitats, filter nutrients and retain natural nutrient cycles, and play a key role in the sequestration of carbon. Wetlands can improve water quality and can play a role in drought and flood mitigation. Seagrasses, saltmarsh vegetation, and mangroves can reduce the height and force of waves and play a role in flood protection. The economic value of ecosystem services provided by public conservation lands and waters in Northland has not been quantified.

While Northland has a diverse economy, some sectors are particularly dependent on the supply of fresh water, healthy oceans and stable landforms. The developing aquaculture industry requires high-quality marine areas in which to operate and is dependent on maintenance of the quality of the surrounding catchments, many of which are wholly or partly managed by the Department.

The proposal to establish a marine recreational park on the Cape Brett to Bream Head coast is driven by community aspirations to improve economic opportunities and ensure long-term sustainability through kaitiakitanga (guardianship). These would occur from more people being attracted to and enjoying a higher quality marine environment.

The increasing numbers of landcare groups in rural communities indicates that there is growing support for habitat restoration, and waterway and wetland enhancement and protection in the farming sector. This needs to be coordinated and consolidated. Sectors such as manufacturing and oil refining stand to gain if they are seen as supporting conservation initiatives in their communities. The promotion of Brand New Zealand as clean and green and 100% Pure is beneficial to the long-term sustainability and value of business, and the Department will work to support and promote this image. The film industry is recognised as providing economic benefits from its use of

locations such as sandy beaches, dunes and waterfalls in Northland in its productions, some of which are on public conservation land.

Places in Part Two where outcomes identify new business opportunities include:

- Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua
- Cape Brett, Ipipiri and the Bay of Islands
- Trounson to Tāne Mahuta and Waipoua Forest (proposed Kauri National Park)
- Warawara Forest
- Hokianga Harbour
- Kaipara Harbour
- Pouto Lakes
- Whangaroa Harbour
- Bream Head reserves
- new and expanded campgrounds, including freedom camping opportunities
- marine recreational park, marine protection on the Tutukaka coast, and other initiatives such as in the Bay of Islands and Kaipara Harbour
- honey and beehives in forested areas.

5.5.1

OBJECTIVES

- 5.5.1.1 Work with concessionaires to enhance the conservation experience of their customers and build support for conservation.
 - 5.5.1.2 Work with regional tourism organisations, other promotional groups, concessionaires and businesses to create and develop opportunities to promote conservation products and services and build support for conservation.
 - 5.5.1.3 Identify and work with businesses that are looking for ways to demonstrate their commitment to and engagement with conservation, including identifying and promoting new business opportunities and partnerships that deliver conservation gains while enhancing prosperity and at the same time not compromising conservation values.
 - 5.5.1.4 Continue to work with other relevant agencies to seek ways to reduce duplication of regulatory controls on public conservation lands and to streamline and seek efficiencies in statutory processes.
 - 5.5.1.5 Work with tangata whenua to identify business opportunities with a conservation benefit.
 - 5.5.1.6 Foster recreation concession opportunities with small business, particularly eco-friendly tourism initiatives.
 - 5.5.1.7 Develop clear, transparent and efficient processes for interacting with stakeholders, tangata whenua, businesses and the public.
 - 5.5.1.8 Contribute to the protection of the quality of ecosystem services, and support research into ecosystem services provided by public conservation lands and waters to better understand and quantify these services, and make this information publicly available.
-

Part Two—Places

This section addresses Places that have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management (Conservation General Policy 2005) and which require some specific management direction. Each Place has a description, an outcome statement, policies and milestones:

- Outcome statements describe the future state of a Place, including its values and changes to that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used when making decisions. This applies whether or not there is a specific policy for a Place.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used when making decisions. Policies refer to public conservation land within a Place unless they are addressing matters of advocacy.
- Milestones are specific actions that are measurable steps towards achieving the outcome statement.

Part Two must be read in conjunction with Parts One and/or the policies in Part Three. Where the outcomes and policies in Part Two are more specific than the objectives in Part One and/or the policies in Part Three, the provisions of Part Two prevail.

The Places in Northland are:

- 6 Manawatāwhi/Three Kings—Te Paki Place
- 7 Parengarenga—Aupouri—Kaimaumu—Karikari Place
- 8 Ahipara—Herekino—Raetea—Warawara Place
- 9 Whangaroa—Cavalli Place
- 10 Puketi—Omahuta Place
- 11 Bay of Islands Place
- 12 Northern Kauri Coast Place
- 13 Pouto—Kaipara Place
- 14 Whangaruru—Mangawhai Coast Place
- 15 Mangakahia—Tutamoe—Tangihua Place

Refer also to Volume II, Map 5, Places overview and Places maps 5.1 to 5.10.

Place boundaries were determined by an assessment of communities of interest including iwi rohe, conservation values and issues, and management priorities.

6 Manawatāwhi/Three Kings—Te Paki Place

6.1 Description

This Place (see Volume II, Map 5.1) forms the northernmost section of the North Island of New Zealand, where the waters of the Tasman Sea merge with the Pacific Ocean between Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua and North Cape (Otu). The Deed of Settlement with the iwi of Te Hiku O Te Ika provides for this name to be changed to Te Rerenga Wairua/Cape Reinga. The settlement legislation is not expected until 2015. The area is a popular destination for domestic and international tourists alike. Although many travellers come to the area via State Highway 1, the access via Ninety Mile Beach and Te Paki Stream is also popular. The area provides secluded shrublands, walks and isolated beaches, often with tantalising glimpses of Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands in the distance.

Running through the area is the Ara Wairua (spiritual highway), along which the spirits of the dead travel on their way to Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua. Te Rerengawairua with its solitary pōhutukawa is a site of significance to Māori—from here spirits of the dead travel on to Hawaiki.

Māori habitation strongly influenced the culture and history of this Place. There are over 1000 recorded archaeological sites here, many of which contain evidence from the earliest periods of human occupation in New Zealand. The pā span many stages of fortification (pre- and post-musket), and feature camps, terraces, gardening systems, urupā (burial grounds), wāhi tapu, and middens containing the bones of whales, dogs, birds and fish. These sites are located both on reserves and on privately owned land, which is predominantly farmed or in pine (*Pinus* spp.) plantations.

This Place is one of New Zealand's and the world's hotspots for biodiversity. The complex geological history, climate and oceanic currents in conjunction with human influences have shaped unique aquatic and terrestrial environments, habitats and species. Refer to Appendices 2, 3, 4, 6 and 8.

The rare ecosystems and habitats of Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands and Te Paki are home to high numbers of endemic species, including an incredible diversity of nationally threatened species. Many of these species require intervention to bring their populations back to healthy levels. At present, nationally threatened species found in this area include 98 plants, 23 birds, 63 land snails, 6 beetles, 1 wētā, 1 moth, 1 slug, 1 earthworm, 1 spider, 2 freshwater invertebrates, 7 lizards and several freshwater fish. There are a further 83 regionally significant taxa that are considered rare or threatened in Northland (including 69 plants, 10 birds, 2 reptiles and 2 fish). The northernmost stand of kauri in New Zealand is found in Te Paki.

The Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Island group (which lies approximately 50 km northwest of Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua) has been separated from the mainland for at least 1.8 million years, resulting in the species that inhabit these islands becoming very different from their mainland cousins. This has implications for sourcing related populations and strengthening population numbers. These islands have not always been pest free and restoration is an ongoing process. The islands were occupied by Māori and largely denuded of trees by the time Europeans arrived. Goats were liberated in 1889 by the Ministry of Transport for shipwreck survivors. They were eradicated in the 1940s, at which point the vegetation started to recover. The islands are internationally renowned for the huge number of endemic species they contain, extensive seabird breeding areas (including the largest tākapu/Australasian gannet

(*Morus serrator*) colony in New Zealand), and the absence of the suite of pest plants and animals that occur on the mainland. Maintaining this pest-free status is a top priority for Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands.

Motuopao Island, near Cape Maria van Dieman, is also an important refuge for threatened species that were once common on the mainland, such as pūpū harakeke/flax snails and many seabirds. A programme to remove environmental weeds and undertake monitoring to ensure that rodents and other pest species do not invade the island are key priorities.

Recreation opportunities within Manawatāwhi/Three Kings–Te Paki are available only on the mainland, and include traditional remote backcountry tramping, camping, fishing and hunting. Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua is a popular destination for visitors, with many tourism and guiding concessions. At present, bus concessions predominantly travel to Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua and the current pattern is unlikely to change significantly, although in the future they may stop at a number of other destinations on the way to the Cape. Day visitors are also drawn to the easily accessible beaches of Tapotupotu and Spirits Bay (Piwhane Bay). More adventurous trampers can roam the coastal walkways and camp beside the many isolated beaches (such as Te Werahi). During the Christmas period, the campgrounds at Tapotupotu and Kapowairua are very busy. Tangata whenua, alongside the wider community, are actively engaged in protecting the environment and indigenous plants and animals, and in raising awareness of traditional values and relationships of Māori with the area.

In recognition of their outstanding natural values, Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands; and Te Paki and North Cape Reserves are included on New Zealand's tentative list of North-East Islands for World Heritage nomination.

6.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

6.2.1 OUTCOME

Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua is revered as part the spiritual pathway and as one of the most culturally significant sites in the country. The site is often busy with domestic and international visitors who gain an appreciation of the significance of the site to Māori, as the departing place for the spirits returning to Hawaiki. On their journey north following Te Ara Pou along State Highway 1, a sense of anticipation is finally realised for visitors at the tip of New Zealand, with the expansive vistas of the meeting place of the oceans at Columbia Bank/Te Nuku-o-Mourea, the long sweep of Te Werahi beach to Cape Maria van Dieman, and the views to Piwhane, Spirits Bay (Piwhane Bay) and North Cape (Otu). Just visible in the far distance are Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands, a tantalising outlier of the resilient endemic wildlife that lives on this extremity of Aotearoa/New Zealand.

Here, tangata whenua, the community, business and the Department together actively protect and manage the many priority ecosystem units and species across Te Paki. With its unique habitat, Surville Cliffs at North Cape (Otu) continues to support the highest concentration of threatened and endemic species in the country. Selected sites and species amongst the unique assemblage of native orchids and other rare plants are protected from fire, exotic weeds and feral pigs. The reserves of Te Paki East and Te Paki West (including Motuopao Island) with their remnants of northern forests, extensive secondary shrublands, regenerating forest, coastal dunelands, coastal lagoons and lush valley floor wetlands are actively managed for protection at priority ecosystem units. The outstanding marine assemblages off Spirits Bay (Piwhane Bay)

and Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands are protected. The quality and health of this internationally renowned Place is significantly enhanced, and visitors feel a strengthened connection to the rich variety of treasures it holds.

This Place retains its remote, wild, windswept and dynamic character. Visitors explore and experience, either independently or guided, the northernmost landscapes, ecosystems and spectacular beaches of New Zealand, while walking along the Icon Destination multi-day Cape Reinga Coastal Track (Te Paki Coastal Track) utilising basic campsites with minimal facilities at Twilight Beach and Pandora. Standard campgrounds at Tapotupotu and Kapowairua are starting points for a network of tracks that provide opportunities to experience the isolation and sheer undeveloped beauty of this part of the Far North. By the time they depart, visitors will have gained through their experiences, supported by appropriate interpretation, an appreciation of the enormous range of biodiversity, cultural and historic values of this Place, and an enthusiasm for its ongoing protection.

The remote and difficult-to-access Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands retain their priority ecosystem unit status for their unique habitats and array of threatened and endemic species. Naturally occurring indigenous species and ecosystem processes on the islands are protected from invasive species by active management. Through their involvement in the management of the islands, the relationship between the Department and tangata whenua is substantially enhanced. The islands remain pest free and free of commercial activities, development and built structures. Access to North Cape Scientific Reserve is by permit only.

There is no aircraft use except for management; landings for recreational purposes are not permitted on any islands in this Place.

Kauri forests remain free of PTA.

6.2.2 POLICIES

- 6.2.2.1 Control pest species numbers (including pigs (*Sus scrofa*), horses, cattle, possums (*Trichosurus vulpecula*) and rodents) in collaboration with local communities and local authorities to levels that allow native species and habitat recovery within Te Paki Recreational Reserve, Mokaikai Scenic Reserve and North Cape Scientific Reserve.
- 6.2.2.2 Advocate for responsible land-based rural activities that do not detrimentally affect the natural environments and ecosystems of Parengarenga Harbour in collaboration with iwi, relevant stakeholders, the Northland Fish and Game Council and Northland Regional Council.
- 6.2.2.3 Protect natural and historic conservation values and recreation facilities by maintaining fire risk reduction measures in Te Paki Recreation Reserve.
- 6.2.2.4 Work with the local communities of Te Hapua, Te Kao and Ngataki to align departmental conservation priorities with community conservation needs and priorities where practicable, and ensure there is active involvement concerning the management of Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua.
- 6.2.2.5 Respect local cultural practices that are not detrimental to ecosystem and species health.
- 6.2.2.6 Implement a high level of mainland biosecurity at Te Paki for departmental staff and their contractors, and strongly advocate for the adoption of biosecurity measures to other users in order to protect the priority ecosystems and threatened species of this Place.

- 6.2.2.7 Improve existing track systems in Te Paki and upgrade Rarawa and Kapowairua camping amenities to enhance the opportunity for visitors to appreciate the area's outstanding beauty and unique biodiversity.
- 6.2.2.8 Work together with local communities and tertiary institutions to identify knowledge and skill gaps to support effective conservation management through research.
- 6.2.2.9 Give effect to Treaty settlement legislation as it is enacted, and honour new relationship protocols and support any statutory boards arising from such legislation.
- 6.2.2.10 Raise awareness of the restrictions on landings, and the reasons for these on Motuopao Island Nature Reserve and Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands Nature Reserve. Permits to access for scientific and educational research will be considered on a case-by-case basis, provided that the proposal is consistent with section 12 of the Conservation General Policy.
- 6.2.2.11 Should not grant permits for non-research purposes to protect the islands' unique habitats and species, and maintain them in an undeveloped and essentially untouched state.
- 6.2.2.12 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land are subject to the aircraft zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.
- 6.2.2.13 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; and work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards.
- 6.2.2.14 Provide for vehicle access at Te Paki Stream and on formed roads consistent with motor vehicle policies in Part Three.

6.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 6.2.3.1 The biosecurity procedures for Motuopao Island Nature Reserve and Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands Nature Reserve have been reviewed.
- 6.2.3.2 A programme identifying priorities and opportunities for volunteers from the community/iwi and visitors to participate in conservation has been developed.
- 6.2.3.3 A recreational marketing plan that provides the community and visitors with a greater awareness of the recreation opportunities on offer has been developed.
- 6.2.3.4 Implementation of priority ecosystem unit and species conservation actions on Motuopao Island Nature Reserve and Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands Nature Reserve has begun.
- 6.2.3.5 Interpretation of the cultural, historic and ecological values at strategic locations along the Te Paki multi-day walk has been developed and installed in consultation with iwi.
- 6.2.3.6 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units in this Place are undertaken: Surville Cliffs and Three Kings Islands.

- 6.2.3.7 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway are undertaken: *Leptinella rotundata*, *Atriplex hollowayi*, *Hibiscus richardsonii*, *Frullania wairua*, *Paryphanta wattii*, *Meterosideros bartlettii* and *Placostylus ambagiosus*.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 6.2.3.8 Implementation of priority ecosystem unit and species conservation actions for Surville Cliffs and Te Paki has been initiated.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 6.2.3.9 Sponsorship/business partnerships have been secured for conservation projects to enhance priority ecosystem units and species.
- 6.2.3.10 Priority ecosystem units are demonstrating improved ecosystem health, through ongoing monitoring.
- 6.2.3.11 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to independent surveys.
- 6.2.3.12 Participation in recreation on public conservation lands in Te Paki has increased according to independent surveys.
-

7 Parengarenga–Aupouri–Kaimaumu–Karikari Place

7.1 Description

This Place (see Volume II, Map 5.2) represents one of the most diverse sections of Northland’s coast. It is dominated by one major peninsula/isthmus (Aupouri) and another smaller one (Karikari), and the extensive harbour systems of Parengarenga, Houhora and Rangaunu. Karikari Peninsula, with the rounded profile of Puwheke, includes beaches of white sand, prominent rocky headlands, and intimate, sheltered bays rimmed with groves of pōhutukawa and regenerating shrubland. The long, unbroken stretch of Ninety Mile Beach (Te Oneroa-a-Tohe) and a chain of wetlands and dunelakes contribute to the character of Aupouri Peninsula.

Two of New Zealand’s most outstanding harbour and estuarine habitats are present in this special area. Refer to Appendix 8. The drowned river valley of Parengarenga Harbour is high in biodiversity and is one of New Zealand’s most pristine harbours, with excellent water quality; while, the broad, shallow Rangaunu Harbour with seagrass (*Zostera capricorni*) and saltmarshes contains the largest area of mānawa/mangrove forest in New Zealand. Kaimaumu wetland is the third largest peat bog system in the country, and nearby are several shallow, ephemeral lakes, including Lake Ohia. The wetland’s bed of ancient kauri roots provides an important habitat for a variety of threatened ferns, mosses, orchids, freshwater fish (including the Northland mudfish) and birds such as moho pererū/banded rail (*Gallirallus philippensis*), matuku/Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*), mātātā/North Island fernbird (*Bowdleria punctata*) and pūweto/spotless crake (*Porzana tabuensis plumbea*). Simmonds Islands Nature Reserve is important for its tawāpou (*Pouteria costata*)/māhoe (*Meliccytus ramiflorus*) forest and coastal broadleaf shrubland, and a wide variety of coastal and seabirds. In addition, the forest of the eastern end of the Maungataniwha Range is notable for its largely unmodified stands of broadleaf podocarp forest with small enclaves of kauri. Rimu and Northern rātā (*Metrosideros robusta*) are conspicuous emergents, and Maungataniwha is a site of significance for iwi as a peak where both the west and east coasts can be observed.

The coastal areas of Kaimaumu and Karikari Peninsula, Rangaunu and Parengarenga Harbours, and the forests of the eastern end of the Maungataniwha Range are notable collectively for their high numbers of threatened plants, orchid communities, and the variety of coastal and forest birds they support. Of particular merit is the habitat continuum of sandy beach, consolidated dunes and ephemeral wetlands of peaty gumlands that span the base of Karikari Peninsula at Lake Ohia. The lake bed contains well-preserved 30 000–40 000-year-old subfossil kauri and silver pine (*Manoao colensoi*), and the area is a priority ecosystem unit supporting many threatened species. These gumlands are subject to frequent fires and need careful management to retain the values for which they are held.

Parengarenga and Rangaunu Harbours are outstanding habitats for national and international migratory wading birds. The harbours and adjacent coast support some of the largest concentrations of species of seabirds in New Zealand, including kuaka/bar-tailed godwits (*Limosa lapponica*), huahou/lesser knots, poaka/pied stilts (*Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus*), torea/South Island pied oystercatchers (*Haematopus finschi*) and eastern little terns (*Sterna albifrons sinensis*). Parengarenga Harbour is also known for its extensive eelgrass beds, saltmarsh, mānawa/mangrove forest and species diversity. Both harbours are important breeding areas for commercially significant fish species such as tāmure/snapper (*Pagrus auratus*) and mullet (*Mugli cephalus*). Threats to these harbours include potential habitat modifications as a result of the establishment of marine farms, sediment runoff from

farming and logging, and the spread of highly invasive species such as spartina (*Spartina* spp.) (a maritime grass) and sea squirts. Eradication of spartina is possible as long as iwi, communities, the Department and other agencies continue to work well together.

Contiguous with the Rangaunu and Houhora Harbours are the coastal and wetland habitats of Kaimaumau and Motutangi. This large and complex wetland system has an unbroken area of transition from seawater to freshwater. Its diverse habitats include sandy beaches, small dunes, estuarine peat bogs, semi-fertile swamps and stabilised dunes with native shrublands. These peat bogs and wetlands are a much-depleted habitat type within New Zealand owing to development and modification. The area provides important habitat for a number of threatened and regionally significant species, including weweia/New Zealand dabchick (*Poliiocephalus rufopectus*), matuku/Australasian bittern, pūweto/spotless crane, moho pererū/banded rail, māātātā/fernbird and Northland mudfish.

On its west coast, this area includes the long, sweeping Ninety Mile Beach (Te Oneroa-a-Tohe) and important offshore reefs, which are locally known as the Ahipara Banks. On the east coast lie the gleaming shores of Kokota (The Sandspit), Great Exhibition Bay, Simmonds Islands, Rangaunu Harbour and Doubtless Bay. Between these latter two embayments is Cape Karikari (Whakapouaka), which consists of rocky headlands and coastal ridges, and includes the Moturoa Islands. This area has been identified as being especially rich in reef fish species, with a range of subtropical species present, including spotted black grouper (*Epinephelus daemeli*). Doubtless Bay, in particular, contains very large areas of ecologically important shallow reefs. The combination of offshore reefs, complex coastal habitats and exposure make this part of the coast unique in New Zealand, and a favoured recreational area.

The culture and history of this Place are strongly influenced by early Māori inhabitation, and later by Europeans seeking kauri resin. Known as ‘Māori amber’, kauri gum was dug extensively by Māori, who originally used it for carving, and later by European settlers, including a large number of Dalmatian settlers attracted to the area by gum digging.

This area is the home of several iwi: Ngāti Kuri and Te Aupōuri in the north, Ngāti Takoto in the centre, and Ngāti Kahu to the east. Te Rarawa’s home is to the southwest, extending to Hokianga Harbour, with Ngāpuhi also having affinities to Maungataniwha and Hokianga. These iwi have marae at many settlements throughout the area, and strong cultural links to much of the land that the Department currently manages. Legislation associated with Treaty settlements is likely to acknowledge many of these customary connections. Many coastal areas contain wāhi tapu, areas which Māori choose to leave undisturbed. Archaeologists have identified some of these sites as being at least 800 years old, and a site at Houhora is 900 years old.

A major feature of this area is its population distribution, including the towns of Kaitaia and Mangonui, and the seaside resort zone stretching from Coopers Beach to Whatuwhiwhi. Attracted by popular coastal recreation opportunities, the population of these locations swells by 50% during summer months. The Department’s focus includes the provision of a range of coastal recreation opportunities that meet the needs of the area’s main visitor group—people from urban areas who want to recreate on the coast. Opportunities include short walks, longer, more challenging coastal tracks, family campgrounds, fishing and hunting. Day visitors are drawn to the white, sandy beaches of Maitai Bay and the numerous, easily accessible fishing spots on both coasts. In some cases, opportunities have been tailored to meet specific needs, such as the ability to walk dogs through a series of tracks at Taumarumaru. There is a growing

call for more vehicular recreation opportunities, including trail biking, quad biking and four-wheel driving.

The tangata whenua and communities of this Place are actively involved in conservation and restoration projects, including coast care groups undertaking dune restoration at Rarawa and Tokerau, and wetland enhancement around dune lakes such as Te Make, and developing proposals for the establishment of marine protected areas in Doubtless Bay.

7.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

7.2.1 OUTCOME

The Parengarenga–Aupouri–Kaimaumu–Karikari Place is a tombolo cluster of broad, sandy land-bridges, wetlands, dune lakes and coastal landforms linking an ancient archipelago of islands (including Te Paki, Tohoraha/Mt Camel, Puwheke and Karikari), beneath which lie buried kauri forests. The integrity of the distinctive landforms is protected.

The wairua of this scorched and modified coastal landscape has been restored by iwi and by the active participation of youth and communities. In so doing, they are also providing opportunities for sustainable economic development of the Far North.

The priority ecosystem units in the assemblage of dunes and relic coastal pōhutukawa forest at Te Arai, and the archaeological landscape and pā site at Te Ramanuka, with its clean dune lakes, lush wetlands and shrub-covered consolidated dunes, are being restored.

Natural landscapes continue to dominate the spectacular sweep of Great Exhibition Bay, from the gleaming silica sands of Kokota (The Sandspit) to Wharekapu/Paxton Point and Rarawa Beach. Dunelands and wetlands and dune lakes are being restored, now featuring thriving populations of native plants and animals. The nearby Motu-Purihi Island and Terakautuhaka (Simmonds Islands) priority ecosystem units continue to support a range of native species, which are protected from threats through active management. The family-oriented Rarawa Beach campground is a focal point for visitors to this part of the coast, and an introduction to conservation values and issues in the area.

The vast gumhole-pocketed wetland priority ecosystem unit of Motutangi/Waihuahua (Kaimaumu) is being progressively restored, and fire management enables communities of orchids, wetland plant associations and birdlife to flourish. The natural dune systems are maintained at East Beach.

Karikari Peninsula is a popular destination and visitors to the Maitai Bay campground enjoy a family-oriented stay in a sheltered, clean, safe location. By staying at this Gateway Destination campground, visitors gain an appreciation of the marine conservation values of the reefs and beaches surrounding the bays, and the significance of the Place and its forested headlands to tangata whenua. On their way to and from the campground, visitors may stop at Lakes Waiporohita and Ohia priority ecosystem units, where they experience the results of collaborative wetland restoration.

Together with Far North District Council, the Department is extending the Mangonui Heritage Trail to include Taumarumarū and Rangikapiti Pā.

The health of the Parengarenga, Rangaunu and Houhora Harbours and their catchments is improved through the cooperative efforts of tangata whenua, private

landowners, communities, the Department and other agencies. Spartina has been eradicated from the harbours in collaboration with the Northland Regional Council.

PTA-free sites remain disease free and the impacts of PTA are reduced within infected sites.

Aircraft are occasionally encountered here, but landings on Simmonds Islands are allowed only for management purposes.

7.2.2 POLICIES

- 7.2.2.1 Advocate for land-use management that protects the natural values of Parengarenga, Houhora and Rangaunu Harbours and their catchments and dune lakes.
- 7.2.2.2 Support community initiatives to investigate international recognition and protection provided by establishing Parengarenga and Rangaunu Harbours and Kaimaumau wetland as wetlands of international importance under the Ramsar Convention.
- 7.2.2.3 Explore the establishment of programmes that provide opportunities for young people to be included in conservation projects.
- 7.2.2.4 Raise awareness of national and international policies on the establishment of marine protected areas and provide technical support for community marine protection initiatives in this Place.
- 7.2.2.5 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies, four-wheel drive clubs and the community to promote initiatives designed to reduce the impacts of vehicles on beaches, including:
 - a) supporting the establishment of coast care groups in conjunction with Northland Regional Council to protect tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterels and encourage revegetation of dune systems; and
 - b) advocating for bylaws to limit speed and provide for defined access points, and the adoption of voluntary codes of practice for responsible beach use via district plans;
 - c) raising awareness of natural, recreation and historic values, to achieve the outcomes of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010⁷.
- 7.2.2.6 Preserve the values and fabric of actively conserved historic sites at Rangikapiti, Taumarumaru and Mangonui Courthouse in collaboration with the community.
- 7.2.2.7 Actively manage water levels, plant pests and fire risk in Lake Ohia and at Kaimaumau to protect wetland habitats by using weirs on public conservation land at Lake Ohia, and liaising with Northland Regional Council and Far North District Council over the Motutangi drainage scheme.
- 7.2.2.8 Liaise with neighbouring landowners to discourage activities that have negative impacts on public conservation land and encourage catchment protection on private land.

⁷ New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand. This New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement was issued by notice in the Gazette on 4 November 2010.

- 7.2.2.9 Work with forestry companies, iwi, Northland Fish and Game Council, and the local community to develop education and advocacy tools such as events, and create conservation projects and partnerships that protect and enhance high-value wetland systems throughout this Place.
- 7.2.2.10 Continue to actively engage with the community to reduce local fire risk and implement reduction measures wherever necessary, particularly at Lake Ohia and Kaimaumau.
- 7.2.2.11 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information, and work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards.
- 7.2.2.12 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.
- 7.2.2.13 Advocate for responsible land use activities that do not adversely affect the natural environments and ecosystems of Parengarenga and Rangaunu harbours and the Karikari Peninsula, their catchments and dune lakes, in collaboration with iwi, relevant stakeholders, the Northland Fish and Game Council and Northland Regional Council.

7.2.3 MILESTONES—Outputs

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 7.2.3.1 Youth-focused conservation projects have been identified and scoped.
- 7.2.3.2 The frequency of wildfires has been reduced through targeted advocacy programmes.
- 7.2.3.3 Local marine protection initiatives are actively encouraged.
- 7.2.3.4 Iwi are aware of and involved in conservation management of sites to be returned via Treaty settlement.
- 7.2.3.5 Taumarumarū and Rangikapiti reserves are included in the Mangonui Heritage Trail.
- 7.2.3.6 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units in this Place have been completed: Lake Ohia and Simmonds Islands.
- 7.2.3.7 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway have been completed: *Atriplex hollowayi*.
- 7.2.3.8 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 7.2.3.9 All prescribed ecosystem and species conservation actions on priority ecosystem units and species sites have been initiated.
- 7.2.3.10 Collaborative relationships with communities and others have enhanced the health and well-being of wetlands and dune lakes, and this has been demonstrated by ongoing monitoring.
- 7.2.3.11 Youth-focused conservation programmes have been established.

- 7.2.3.12 The frequency of wildfires has been significantly reduced compared with levels 10 years ago.
- 7.2.3.13 Collaborative relationships with iwi, agencies and the community have been established to protect and enhance catchment and estuarine habitats.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 7.2.3.14 Youth are actively engaged in conservation projects.
 - 7.2.3.15 Departmental priority ecosystem units are flourishing and demonstrating improved health through ongoing monitoring.
 - 7.2.3.16 NIWA and Northland Regional Council monitoring shows that catchment and estuarine habitat health is improving significantly.
 - 7.2.3.17 Kaimaumu wetlands are flourishing following a significant reduction in biodiversity threats implemented through conservation partnerships.
 - 7.2.3.18 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to independent surveys.
 - 7.2.3.19 Participation in recreation on public conservation lands in Maitai Bay has increased according to independent surveys.
-

8 Ahipara–Herekino–Raetea–Warawara Place

8.1 Description

This Place (see Volume II, Map 5.3) extends from Hokianga Harbour in the south, up to the start of Ninety Mile Beach (Te Oneroa-a-Tohe) at Ahipara, and reaches inland to the peak of Maungataniwha. Within this Place are hidden some of the best examples of forest, estuarine and coastal habitats in the Far North. Access to the area is from State Highway 1 via Kaitaia or Mangamuka, or via the Hokianga Ferry from Rawene. As visitors travel towards the west coast, the hidden character of the Place, and the mosaic of farmland and forest slowly reveals itself. This beautiful area is a sought-after destination for travellers seeking the isolation and wildness of the west coast of New Zealand.

Hokianga Harbour is a drowned river valley, now featuring large areas of mānawa/mangroves, saltmarsh and tidal mudflat, with prominent large dunes at its northern entrance. Refer to Appendix 8. Historically, the Hokianga has been the heart (and arteries) of the area, being the means of transportation that first enabled Māori, and later European, settlement and trade. The harbour margins, in particular, feature numerous archaeological sites. The impacts of kauri logging, milling and a thriving shipping industry are not only evidenced by the areas of cleared farmland and extensive sedimentation of the upper harbour, but also by relics such as driving dams, camps, tracks and bridges.

Many of these historic features can be found in the forests of Warawara, Raetea and Herekino. Despite the extensive logging, Warawara Forest still contains remnants of mature kauri, broadleaf, podocarp forest, and is a priority ecosystem unit. Several of the largest mature kauri in New Zealand can be found here, as well as a wide variety of wildlife, including North Island brown kiwi (*Apteryx australis mantelli*), pekapeka/short-tailed bats (*Mystacina tuberculata*), Northland green gecko (*Naultinus greyii*) and pūpū rangi/kauri snails. Warawara is also home to Northland's only population of the tiny tītipounamu/North Island rifleman (*Acanthisitta chloris granti*). Remnants of the sequence of mānawa/mangroves grading into coastal kauri hardwood forest occur at Tapuwae. PTA (kauri dieback disease) is a potential threat to the health of these ecosystems.

A focal point of this Place is the summit and forests of the Maungataniwha Range, the northernmost forest tract in New Zealand. It is composed of a few small stands of mature kauri amongst a full altitudinal sequence of areas of broadleaf and podocarp forest, with emergent rimu and northern rātā a distinctive feature for travellers on SH1.

Herekino Forest forms a natural link with the Ahipara plateau. The forest is composed of stands of mature kauri, second-growth kauri and extensive areas of broadleaf/podocarp forest, all of which have been partially logged. Numerous tracks cross the forest, including the Te Araroa Trail.

The Ahipara plateau is a perched wetland. It extends from the southern end of Ninety Mile Beach to the mouth of Herekino Harbour, and reflects a history of fire, logging and gum digging. The area is particularly rich in archaeological sites, including pā, terraces and middens, which span the entire period of Māori settlement. The trenches, ditches, dams, sluicing and gumholes provide rich evidence of the gum-digging history of this Place. Successions of low mānuka gumland, shrubland and small wetland areas cover the windswept plateau, while remnants of mixed coastal broadleaf, kauri forest linger in the gullies and valleys. This area is notable for its high number of threatened plants, diverse orchid communities, and variety of coastal and forest birds. Large, mobile and partly consolidated sand dunes have accumulated against the steep

bluffs along the plateau edges, and extend around the whole coastline. Extensive rocky reefs are a feature of Tauroa Point.

The seafloor along much of the west coast of Northland is gently sloping and sandy, with the 50 m contour located about 3–14 km offshore, and this Place is no exception. Most of the coastal reefs drop off to sand very quickly. At Mitimiti Beach, there are toheroa beds and green-lipped mussels (*Perna canaliculus*) on the rocky reefs.

Both Māori and European habitation have strongly influenced the culture and history of this area. The shores of the Hokianga were one of the earliest sites of Māori settlement, and this area is the kōhanga (nursery/nest) of iwi such as Te Rarawa and Ngāpuhi.

Settlement by Europeans has influenced the appearance of the land in this area. The processes of land purchase and clearance, and the establishment of farming and forestry have partitioned the land, leaving some of the reserves isolated compared with the neighbouring land use. This has heightened the need for the Department to ensure that this area's wildlife and historic sites are protected. There is a strong culture within both Māori and rural communities of this area that the bush and coastal habitats must be conserved. There are many within the community that regard this to be for the sustainable exploitation of its physical resources, perhaps in part due to the legacy of the social history within this area where, for many centuries, the communities lived, worked and sourced food from the bush. The opportunity to participate in and express their views around the future management of forests in these localities has led to calls for closer relationships with the Department and the provision of training and youth programmes. The relatively isolated settlements have very limited employment opportunities.

The recreational focus in this area reflects its two greatest assets: pristine, undeveloped coastal areas and dense, inland bush populated with a diversity of rare species. Backcountry tramping is well catered for, with opportunities including independent or guided walking on the Herekino Forest Track (15 km), which is part of the Te Araroa Trail; the Kaitaia Walkway, which allows for a shorter walk (4 km); the Mangamuka-Raetea track; and the Mitimiti-Pawarenga Track, which provides a good backcountry challenge in the form of a 2-day tramp through Warawara Forest. Camping is also catered for, with a basic camping site at Raetea North—an area that is popular with local families, picnickers and day visitors owing to its sheltered nature and pristine stream.

8.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

8.2.1 OUTCOME

The intricate, crumpled landscape of the north Hokianga, dominated by the Warawara plateau and Maungataniwha, contains priority ecosystem units, and the community is actively involved in the restoration of natural and cultural heritage values.

Communities, especially young people, are involved in enhancing natural and cultural values and in providing sustainable opportunities for their own cultural, recreational and economic aspirations.

The forested massif of Warawara is managed in collaboration with iwi, local communities and other agencies to maintain its wild, spectacular, isolated character and outstanding natural values. The Mitimiti-Pawarenga 2-day track through the forest enables visitors to experience a mature kauri, broadleaf, podocarp forest that is a priority ecosystem unit. Groves of large mature kauri are found here, as well as healthy

populations of native plants and animals, including threatened species. Visitors gain an appreciation of the significance of the forest to tangata whenua, its history, and its central place in community and spiritual identity. Warawara is the spirit forest.

The restoration of Tapuwae Scenic Reserve by the community, tangata whenua and the Department demonstrates what the margins of Hokianga Harbour were like before historic forest exploitation, and provides an opportunity for water-based recreation.

The Manganuiowae catchment on the Mangamuka Range is one of the northernmost high forest tracts. It is actively managed by the Department with the support of tangata whenua and the community. Collaboration with surrounding landowners and the community is resulting in pest control in the Maungataniwha Range outliers. Kūkupa/New Zealand pigeon soar overhead, the chorus of tūī (*Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae*) is deafening and North Island brown kiwi can be heard calling at night.

At Ahipara, the kaleidoscope of diverse shrubland, coastal forest remnants, relics of Dalmatian gum-digging history, dynamic dunelands and archaic archaeological sites is appreciated and respected by visitors and the local community. Tangata whenua, the community and the Department are actively managing historic sites, priority ecosystem units and threatened species.

Orowhana in Herekino Forest is recognised as part of Te Ara Wairua. A landcare group and the Kaitia community, supported by the Department, raise awareness of the forest's natural values and the need for their protection. Visitors enjoy walking tracks throughout the forest, including the Te Araroa Trail, which passes through stands of mature and second-growth kauri and extensive areas of broadleaf/podocarp forest.

PTA-free sites remain disease free and the impacts of PTA are reduced within infected sites. The spread of PTA is slowed in all kauri sites.

Aircraft are rarely encountered at Ahipara, Warawara, Herekino and Raetea.

8.2.2 POLICIES

8.2.2.1 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies, four-wheel drive clubs, and the community to promote initiatives designed to reduce the impacts of vehicles on beaches, including:

- a) supporting the establishment of coast care groups in conjunction with Northland Regional Council to protect tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterels and encourage revegetation of dune systems; and
- b) advocating for bylaws to limit speed and restrict access, and voluntary codes of practice for responsible beach use via district plans.
- c) raising awareness of natural, recreation and historic values to achieve the outcomes of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010⁸.
- d) providing for vehicle access at Ahipara gumfields subject to policies in Part Three for motor vehicle use.

8.2.2.2 Upgrade the easy-access walking experience at Soda Springs, Maungamuka Gorge.

⁸ New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

- 8.2.2.3 Actively manage threats to priority ecosystem units and species sites with support from other agencies and communities.
- 8.2.2.4 Upgrade and maintain the standard of the existing track network within Raetea, Warawara and Herekino Forests, and Te Araroa Trail tracks, to tramping track standards.
- 8.2.2.5 With the support of the community, preserve the structural integrity of the Kohukohu old school building, whilst having regard to the aspirations for community use.
- 8.2.2.6 Explore the establishment of programmes that provide opportunities for young people to be involved in conservation projects.
- 8.2.2.7 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards; and work with infrastructure companies, roading contractors, concessionaires and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt PTA hygiene standards for their people, machinery and equipment.
- 8.2.2.8 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land in this Place are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.

8.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 8.2.3.1 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 8.2.3.2 All priority ecosystem units and species conservation actions have been started.
- 8.2.3.3 The application of new pest control methods is improving the health of Warawara Forest, as demonstrated by ongoing monitoring.
- 8.2.3.4 The establishment of a Tapuwae community group has been achieved to restore the scenic reserve.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 8.2.3.5 Priority ecosystem units and species sites are flourishing, as demonstrated by ongoing monitoring.
 - 8.2.3.6 Te Araroa Trail tracks on public conservation land are maintained to tramping track standards, with interpretation in place at strategic locations to describe the ecological and historic values.
 - 8.2.3.7 The application of better pest control methods and community involvement are improving the health of Raetea Forest, and this is demonstrated by ongoing monitoring.
-

9 Whangaroa–Cavalli Place

9.1 Description

This Place (see Volume II, Map 5.4) has a dramatic scenic coastline and contains numerous islands scattered from the southern arm of Doubtless Bay around Whangaroa Harbour to the northern end of Takou Bay in the south. The original coastal vegetation, which was dominated by broadleaf, podocarp, kauri forest, has been severely modified by logging and clearance for farming. However, many endemic plants still thrive in the Wairakau catchment. The largest tracts of public conservation land include Whakaangi Scenic Reserve, Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve, St Pauls Rock Scenic Reserve, Kaeo Bush Scenic Reserve, Tauranga Valley Scenic Reserve, Whakarara Conservation Area, Mahinepua Peninsula Scenic Reserve and Motukawanui Island Scenic Reserve.

The background catchments of broken hill country, much of which is second-growth shrubland and kānuka (*Kunzea ericoides*) forest, are dominated by regenerating rewarewa (*Knightsia excelsa*), kauri and tānekaha (*Phyllocladus trichomanoides*). These remaining areas of habitat have a high degree of connectedness, particularly around Hihi, Totara North and Whangaroa. The land rises steeply from the coast to the skyline, where it is dominated by Mt Ohakiri, Whakaangi, Paikauri, Taratara, Akatere and Whakarara.

Whangaroa is a deep, sheltered harbour that was described by early European explorers as one of the finest, safest and most sheltered in New Zealand. Refer to Appendix 8.

The dramatic landscape of volcanic peaks and bluffs surrounded by diverse forest, together with golden sandy beaches beyond which stretch clusters of islands, speaks of a rich and interesting history and a strong heritage of conservation. Whangaroa Harbour is notable for its striking bush-clad rock formations and deep, safe, sheltered anchorages.

The coast to the north and south of the harbour is characterised by sweeps of golden sandy beaches fringed with pōhutukawa and scattered coastal settlements of both traditional kainga and newer developments. Matauri Bay overlooks the Cavalli Islands, offering superb vistas of a strikingly scenic and cultural landscape and an access point for diving on the wreck of the *Rainbow Warrior*.

The landforms of Whangaroa Harbour feature spectacular rocky bluffs and prominent ridge systems of eroded andesite volcanoes, clad in some of the last diverse coastal conifer, broadleaf, kauri forest in New Zealand. The area includes some unusual vegetation types and pōhutukawa is scattered throughout. Several species in the Berghan Point/Whakaangi area are at or approaching their northern limit, including miromiro/pied tit (*Petroica macrocephala toitoi*), North Island brown kiwi and hard beech (*Fuscospora truncata*).

There is considerable plant diversity, as demonstrated by the forest on the northern side of Whangaroa Harbour in Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve. This reserve contains over 300 indigenous plant species, including several species with a very restricted distribution, e.g. *Calystegia marginata*, *Pimelea tomentosa*, *Pseudopanax gilliesii* and *Coprosma neglecta* subsp. “Whangaroa”. Mānawa/mangroves have generally thrived in the upper Whangaroa Harbour, where there are small areas of saltmarsh. Freshwater wetlands are rare in this Place.

Extensive areas of regenerating forests provide habitat for the Northland green gecko (*Naultinus grayii*) and pūpū rangi/kauri snails. There are significant numbers of kiwi

throughout this area, some of which are actively protected by community groups. The threatened tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel can still be found on most sandy beaches, albeit in low numbers, and is actively protected at Taupo and Tauranga Bays.

The Cavalli Islands are a group of 28 islands with 82 associated rocks and 25 stacks. The largest of these islands, Motukawanui (350 ha), is public conservation land. Motukawaiti is also relatively large at 47 ha, but the remainder of the islands are small in area. Marine values are very high around the islands. The fish fauna includes widespread species (e.g. red moki (*Cheilodactylus spectabilis*)), as well as warm temperate (e.g. pōrae (*Nemadactylus douglasii*)) and subtropical/tropical (e.g. bluefish (*Girella cyanea*)) New Zealand species.

The island of Motukawanui offers considerable restoration potential if kiore/Pacific rats (*Rattus exulans*) can be eradicated. Re-introduced kiwi are breeding and flourishing on the island. The Māori-owned Wekarua Island off Motukahakaha Bay is rodent-free and has very high conservation values.

This Place has an abundance of historical features, particularly the Māori-influenced landscapes of Motukawanui, Mahinepua Peninsula and Ranfurly Bay. Typical of rich coastal areas, a wide variety of defended and undefended pā, archaic middens, terraces, gardening systems, urupā, wāhi tapu and other archaeological features are present.

The larger islands of the Cavalli group were extensively lived on in pre-European times, as evidenced in the archaeological landscapes of the north and south of the islands, which are exposed by grasslands. Residence was probably on a seasonal basis, with gardening and kaimoana supplementing the diet. Archaic middens are eroding steadily on the southern coast, exposing further information as the layers wash out. University field programmes are assisting with gathering information before these glimpses of the past are gone.

There are many opportunities for boat-based recreation (diving, snorkelling, fishing, kayaking and sailing) around the harbour and islands. Road access is limited and the best sites can often only be visited by boat. A tramping track from Totara North makes its way around the western arm of Whangaroa Harbour to the popular hut at Lane Cove. A steep climb from Whangaroa offers superb harbour and inland views from St Pauls dome. Day walks on Motukawanui and a hut provide a good base for marine activities and island exploration.

Strong community interest and involvement in conservation is a feature of this area, including interest from iwi/hapū groups. The Department is keen to support and build sustaining relationships. The Whaakangi Landcare Group north of Mangonui Harbour is working to protect an interlinked area of private and public conservation land predominantly for kiwi. A strong landcare group at Radar Hill has galvanised landowners who have interests in conservation activity; it carries out control of possums, rats and mustelids within Tauranga Valley Scenic Reserve. This group has successfully managed the kiwi population in their core area and undertaken advocacy such as free kiwi aversion training for dogs; it now intends to enlarge the managed area to include a tract of Mahinepua Peninsula that already receives possum control.

There are practical relationships with a restoration trust based at Takou Bay and an active, engaged community in Whangaroa. Coastal communities at Tauranga Bay and Taupo Bay have been actively involved in the protection of tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel.

9.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

9.2.1 OUTCOME

The Whangaroa-Cavalli coastline, with its dramatic sheltered harbour, sparkling clusters of islands and rock stacks, and prominent maunga (mountains), is beloved of all who live or visit here.

Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve is a priority ecosystem unit with coastal pōhutukawa-broadleaf forest ecosystems that are home to a range of threatened and endemic plants and animals. Progressive restoration of this forest, so that sites such as Pekapeka Bay and Lane Cove again echo with the dawn chorus, strengthens positive relationships between the Department, tangata whenua and the Whangaroa community.

Whakaangi is a priority ecosystem unit on the coast that supports several species at their northern limit. With the support of the Department, a community trust is actively restoring the area through pest and predator control. It has become a stronghold of North Island brown kiwi and other native species that once lived there.

The relationship of tangata whenua with the area is acknowledged and respected, and they are actively involved in the management of sites of special importance to them.

Coastal marine recreation opportunities are a particular feature, with many sites accessible only by boat. Recreational and tourism activities showcase and explore the marine, historic, cultural and natural values of the area. A kayak trail traversing the string of sheltered bays and beaches has become a visitor highlight of the Place. Marine protection initiatives have been explored with the community around Whangaroa and Cavalli coast. The community and other agencies supported by the Department are actively protecting water quality and freshwater biodiversity in the catchments of this Place.

Restoration of Motukawanui Island is occurring in partnership with Ngāti Kura hapū and the community. Advice and support are provided for hapū restoration initiatives, including work on the mainland coast adjacent to the Cavalli Islands. The serviced 12-bunk Motukawanui Hut, island walks and marine environment are enjoyed and appreciated by independent or guided island visitors and kayakers.

Communities actively participate in protecting and enhancing the special biodiversity values, including North Island brown kiwi, tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, landscapes and recreation opportunities along the coast. Community initiatives, including the Mahinepua-Radar Hill Landcare Group, are encouraged and supported with technical advice to improve ecosystem health.

The relationship of iwi with the area is acknowledged and respected, and they are actively involved in the management of sites of special importance to them. The historic and cultural heritage of the area is brought to life through guiding concessionaires.

PTA-free sites remain disease free.

Aircraft are rarely encountered in this Place.

9.2.2 POLICIES

- 9.2.2.1 Develop positive working relationships with iwi/hapū in the management of sites of cultural importance to them on public conservation land, such as at Motukawanui Island and Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve.
- 9.2.2.2 Work with the community by encouraging participation in ecological restoration work, including Kahili ginger (*Hedychium gardnerianum*) control and animal pest control, for the benefit of pōhutukawa coastal forest and threatened species including kiwi.
- 9.2.2.3 Provide and promote with concessionaires a range of recreational and cultural activities that reflect demand and encourage growth in visitor opportunities, and which enhance the understanding and protection of conservation values.
- 9.2.2.4 Work with the community and other agencies to achieve an integrated approach to managing possums and other pest plants and animals.
- 9.2.2.5 Undertake advocacy to raise awareness of the threat of dogs to kiwi.
- 9.2.2.6 Encourage recreational hunting and other initiatives (e.g. possum fur recovery) that benefit forest health.
- 9.2.2.7 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards; and work with concessionaires and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt PTA hygiene standards.
- 9.2.2.8 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land in this Place are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.
- 9.2.2.9 Maintain Wairakau Track to tramping track standard and Lane Cove Hut as a serviced hut; and maintain Motukawanui Hut as a serviced hut and Motukawanui Track to walking track standard.
- 9.2.2.10 Promote the establishment of ecological linkages and corridors of protected vegetation that connect priority ecosystem units, where they can add value to their healthy functioning.
- 9.2.2.11 Advocate for responsible land-based rural activities that do not adversely affect natural environments and ecosystems.

9.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 9.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway have been completed: *Hibiscus richardsonii*, *Rallicola (Aptericola) rodericki* and *Apteryx mantelli*.
- 9.2.3.2 The Department has worked successfully with iwi and community groups, and restoration is underway at Motukawanui to achieve:
 - the removal of kiore;
 - stoat-free status.
- 9.2.3.3 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 9.2.3.4 Priority ecosystem units and species conservation actions at Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve and Whakaangi have been implemented, and ecosystem health is improving, as demonstrated by ongoing monitoring.
- 9.2.3.5 Lane Cove Hut and associated tracks are well used and appreciated by local and regional visitors and concessionaires, as shown by visitor use surveys.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 9.2.3.6 Participation in recreation of public conservation lands has increased according to visitor use surveys.
 - 9.2.3.7 The quality of the Department’s engagement with key associates has improved according to the results of independent stakeholder surveys.
 - 9.2.3.8 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department’s activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to the results of independent surveys.
-

10 Puketi–Omahuta Place

10.1 Description

The Puketi–Omahuta Place (see Volume II, Map 5.5) contains a large contiguous tract of steep, broken native forest that is dominated in places by stands of mature kauri. Majestic kauri stands at Manginangina are visited each year by thousands of visitors, while from various vantage points Puketi Forest provides one of the few remaining continuous vistas of native forest in Northland. The forest spans an altitudinal sequence from sea level in the Waihou Valley to its highest point at 540 m on the Puketi plateau. It is the dominant feature on the skyline from the upper Whangaroa and Hokianga Harbours, and most of its catchment drains into the Hokianga via the Waipapa and Mangapa Rivers. The upper Hokianga Harbour is a drowned river valley with large areas of mānawa/mangroves, saltmarsh and tidal mudflats. It has high coastal/estuarine habitat values, with populations of moho pererū/banded rail, pūweto/spotless crane, matūkū-moana/white-faced heron and numerous other coastal and wading birds. It is bounded by large areas of vigorously regenerating shrubland and forest, and wetland. Lake Omapere is a major feature of community interest, while Ngawha Scientific Reserve is an ecologically significant wetland.

The diversity of forest types that occur over short distances and across a varied topography is a feature of this Place. Taraire (*Beilschmiedia tariaire*) with emergent podocarps is generally the dominant forest type at lower altitude, with pūriri (*Vitex lucens*) locally common. Above 300 m, tōwai (*Weinmannia silvicola*) becomes the dominant canopy species, with Hall's tōtara (*Podocarpus cunninghamii*) and miro (*Prumnopitys ferruginea*). Northern rātā and rimu dominate as emergent species in the higher country. Kauri is dominant mainly on the drier ridges, with kawaka (*Libocedrus plumosa*), monoao (*Halocarpus kirki*) and silver pine largely confined to higher altitudes. Makamaka (*Ackama rosifolia*) is abundant on forest margins at higher altitudes.

Threatened plants of interest include the wood rose *Dactylanthus taylorii* and the endemic fern *Davallia puketi*. Other species of note include a rare hard beech/kauri association and king fern (*Ptisana salicina*) in Omahuta Forest, *Hebe acutiflora*, and the fern *Grammitis rawlingsii*. The recent discovery of PTA (kauri dieback disease) has raised biosecurity issues around preventing the spread of this disease.

The Puketi Forest Trust was formed in 2002 as a community response to the serious decline in Puketi's bird fauna. Over 10 years of pest control has seen threatened bird species such as kūkupa/New Zealand pigeon and kiwi benefitting from the commitment of the Puketi Forest Trust. Kōkako were functionally extinct in Puketi Forest and a strategy aimed at restoring the population is underway.

Control programmes for possums, goats (*Capra hircus*) and weeds are underway in Puketi and Omahuta Forests. Other programmes in place to protect the kōkako, dactylanthus (wood rose), the fern (*Davallia puketi*), and pekapeka/short-tailed bats (*Mystacina tuberculata*) are monitored. The Oho Mai Puketi/Omahuta Integrated Management Plan has been developed to pool the efforts of these programmes to protect biodiversity in three areas within this forest. An alignment with the Puketi Forest Trust seeks wider biodiversity recovery and restoration. The Department works with a number of hapū who have connections with the forest and encourages participation in ecological restoration work, including pest control.

Puketi and Omahuta were logged extensively up until the 1980s and a railway transported logs down to the coast at Waipapa Landing. Remnants of kauri dams and

old logging bridges can still be seen. Trees were also bled for gum and many trees show the scars from old wounds. The New Zealand Forest Service managed both the extraction of timber and the protection of selected environmental and recreational values for over 60 years. Remnants of work camps and settlements are still to be found at Omahuta, Puketi and Otangaroa.

Tracks and walkways within the Puketi–Omahuta forest tract offer visitor experiences ranging from family walks to backcountry tramps, especially to visit the impressive kauri stands. Many thousands of tourists, both independent and guided, use the kauri boardwalk at Manginangina. The Waihoanga Gorge walk offers the rare experience of unlogged forest without having to enter the backcountry. A hut, cabins, camping and picnic areas are provided at Puketi Recreation Area adjacent to the forest. Pig hunting is popular. Mountain bikers make use of the old logging roads as an opportunity for adventure. A two-wheel drive road is maintained to take visitors to a short walk around the giant kauri trees in the Omahuta Sanctuary. Internal roads are subject to severe weather, low maintenance and damage from four-wheel drive use. Other roads within Puketi are for management purposes only (pest control, track maintenance and species protection).

The desire to restore species has resulted in a major community-led effort to control animal pests by the Puketi Forest Trust and the Piki Te Aroha Marae Committee. The Department values its relationship with both the Trust and the Marae Committee who are partners in Oho Mai Puketi—Awaken Puketi; a project to restore Puketi's dawn chorus.

There are other priority ecosystems in this Place. Utakura, a remnant of virgin podocarp, hardwood forest featuring kauri and northern rātā is managed in collaboration with Project Crimson and tangata whenua. Forming part of the Ngawha geothermal field, Ngawha Scientific Reserve is an area of acidic peatlands with a shallow lake on hydrothermally altered sandstone, and culturally significant to tangata whenua. Nearby is a 25 MWe geothermal power station and several hot springs that are suitable for swimming. The Wiroa Conservation Area adjacent to Kerikeri Airport encloses rare gumland and peat swamp habitats; home to native mudfish and green geckos.

The Hokianga Harbour catchment features numerous archaeological sites with high densities of middens and pā. In this area, sites associated with mission settlements can be found at Rawene and Mangungu, while sites associated with kauri logging, milling and shipping are located at Kohukohu, Horeke and Koutu. The forests contain some relics of logging, such as driving dams, camps, tracks, bridges and kauri gum-bleeding. Inland is the heartland of Ngāpuhi and the rich volcanic landscape of the Kaikohe/Ohaewai area, with pockets of pūriri. Significant battle sites of the New Zealand Wars can be found at Ohaewai and Lake Omapere, with an important pā at Okuratope, which has strong links to Kororipo Pā in the Kerikeri Basin.

10.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

10.2.1 OUTCOME

The serious decline in the priority kauri forest ecosystems of the Puketi–Omahuta Place has been reversed through the collaboration of the community, tangata whenua and the Department working to an integrated management plan. Ecological priority ecosystem units are subject to intensive pest and weed control. The solemn call of the kōkako has returned through the work of Oho Mai Puketi/Puketi Forest Trust and tangata whenua. Reintroductions of a variety of forest birds herald the return of forest health. Threatened plant and animal populations are growing steadily.

The community and visitors experience a healthy and vibrant forest and plentiful bird song. Clean water flows from the forest and native freshwater species are abundant in the rivers. The forest is an integral part of the community's identity and well-being, and provides opportunities for the renaissance in traditional cultural knowledge. A community initiative, Waiora Hokianga, is improving the health and quality of the waters of Hokianga Harbour.

As a Gateway Destination to all of Puketi–Omahuta, visitor facilities and concessionaires at Manginangina enable people to explore and experience the natural, historic and cultural heritage at this site, while protecting the values of the forest. The Manginangina boardwalk, which has limited visitor capacity, will be managed to enable all visitors, including those in tour parties with concessionaires, to easily enjoy a close-up experience of the kauri grove. Wider views of the forest can be seen from Puketi Recreation Area, where there is overnight accommodation, short loop tracks and the start of a longer walk through the centre of the forest. These enable visitors to savour the songs of forest birds, enjoy the impressive kauri, and gain a deeper understanding of the forest and its history, natural processes and cultural importance. There is overnight camping at the road end at Forest Pools, and alternative entry points at Waihoanga and Omahuta. Mountain biking is allowed on old logging roads along the Pirau and Mokau Ridges. The Te Araroa Trail passes through the forest, with entry points at Omahuta and Puketi Forest. Access to the Omahuta Forest Sanctuary is via the forest road.

Utakura is a priority ecosystem of mature podocarp forest remnant, which is actively managed by the Department and tangata whenua with the support of neighbouring communities.

Ngawha Scientific Reserve is a low-energy geothermal wetland and a priority ecosystem unit, and the community understands and appreciates its special ecological and cultural importance. The Department, tangata whenua and the community are actively managing threatened plants and animals that occur here.

The priority ecosystem unit of gumland wetland adjacent to Kerikeri Airport, Wiroa Conservation Area, contains a range of threatened plants and animals that are actively managed by the Department and supported by the community and tangata whenua.

The community and other agencies working with the Department are actively protecting water quality and freshwater biodiversity in the Bay of Islands catchments of this Place.

PTA-free sites remain disease free and the impacts of PTA are reduced within infected sites.

Aircraft are occasionally encountered in this Place.

10.2.2 POLICIES

- 10.2.2.1 Actively engage with tangata whenua and the community in conservation management in the Omahuta, Puketi, Utakura, Ngawha and Wiroa areas by:
- a) continuing to encourage participation in ecological restoration work;
 - b) encouraging and supporting conservation initiatives in long-term pest management;
 - c) supporting cooperative conservation projects and seeking to establish new initiatives; and
 - d) encouraging participation in the protection, promotion and interpretation of places of historic and cultural significance.
- 10.2.2.2 Work with tangata whenua, the community, Northland Regional Council and private landowners to control and eradicate animal and plant pests, focusing on:
- a) areas where animal and plant pests threaten the priority ecosystem units, local treasures and threatened species; and
 - b) preventing the establishment of new animal and plant pests.
- 10.2.2.3 Should include broad-scale aerial pest control in the integrated management plan for Puketi-Omahuta.
- 10.2.2.4 Permits to take dogs into the forest will contain conditions that require kiwi aversion training.
- 10.2.2.5 Should undertake social and engineering research to establish the carrying capacity of the boardwalk at Manginangina. May need to limit concession activity (numbers of concessions, frequency of visits and party sizes) to ensure that visitors have an uncrowded and safe experience and the natural values of the site are protected.
- 10.2.2.6 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards; and work with infrastructure companies, roading contractors, concessionaires and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt PTA hygiene standards for their people, machinery and equipment.
- 10.2.2.7 Should permit motorised vehicle access on Omahuta Sanctuary Road, and four-wheel drive use on Kauri Pa Road and Blackridge Road in Omahuta Forest, subject to motor vehicle access policies contained within Part Three.
- 10.2.2.8 Should not permit motorised vehicle use within Puketi Forest.
- 10.2.2.9 Allow recreational and commercial hunting by permit only so as to ensure the safety of other users of the forests.
- 10.2.2.10 May permit other initiatives that contribute to animal pest control (for example possum fur recovery) where there will be a demonstrable gain to forest health.
- 10.2.2.11 Improve and promote visitor opportunities through the provision and maintenance of the forest loop walks and the Te Araroa Trail to tramping track standards.
- 10.2.2.12 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land in the Place are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.

- 10.2.2.13 Encourage research to increase knowledge of native species, habitats, biodiversity, biosecurity threats, and ecosystems, to improve future management.
- 10.2.2.14 Consult with tangata whenua, communities, and user groups on the feasibility of establishing additional mountain biking routes within Puketi and Omahuta Forests subject to mountain bike Policy 16.3.2.6 and provided this would not increase the risk of spreading PTA.

10.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 10.2.3.1 The quality of the Department’s engagement with key associates has improved, as indicated by independent stakeholder surveys.
- 10.2.3.2 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department’s activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to the results of independent surveys.
- 10.2.3.3 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.
- 10.2.3.4 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place have been completed: Onekura-Puketi and Ngawha Springs.
- 10.2.3.5 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway have been completed: *Isoetes* aff. *kirkii*.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 10.2.3.6 Visitor satisfaction with the quality of experiences and opportunities at Puketi Forest has improved, as indicated by independent stakeholder surveys.
- 10.2.3.7 The feasibility of additional mountain biking routes in the Puketi and Omahuta Forests has been investigated and reported on.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 10.2.3.8 An increase in participation in recreation on public conservation lands has been identified through independent visitor monitoring surveys.
 - 10.2.3.9 An area of Puketi–Omahuta is restored with a healthy range of forest species, as identified in the Puketi/Omahuta Integrated Management Plan.
 - 10.2.3.10 The visitor facilities at Puketi Headquarters have been upgraded, and are well used by visitors, business and for education purposes.
 - 10.2.3.11 Healthy populations of Northland mudfish and *Baumea complanata* and their habitat are appreciated by the local community.
-

11 Bay of Islands Place

11.1 Description

The Bay of Islands (see Volume II, Map 5.6) is the cradle of the nation where the first significant contacts between Māori and Europeans occurred, and the subsequent religious, political and cultural events that shaped the nation permeate the character of the area. It is alive with stories of adventure, tragedy, passion and intrigue. It is within the context of this rich heritage, together with its beautiful coastal environment, that people are drawn to find out more about early New Zealand settlement.

The Bay of Islands has had a strong Māori presence since the earliest times. Prior to European contact, the peoples of the bay and hinterlands were engaged in a series of shifting alliances as chiefs asserted authority over different areas and resources through intermarriage and warfare. At stake was control over the fertile volcanic garden soils, such as the Taiamai plains, and access to coastal fishing areas. The arrival of the Christian missionaries in 1814 and the muskets acquired through trading changed these dynamics forever.

Within the Bay of Islands there are many outstanding historic sites associated with early contact between Māori and European. These sites include Marsden Cross, where the Reverend Samuel Marsden first preached in New Zealand in 1814; Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin, where Māori and missionaries interacted, and where the Stone Store (New Zealand’s oldest stone building) and Kemp House (New Zealand’s oldest wooden building) still stand today; the Treaty House and grounds at Waitangi, where the Treaty of Waitangi was signed in 1840, and which is considered the birthplace of the nation; and numerous sites on the Russell peninsula, including the country’s first capital at Okiato. Refer to Appendix 12.

The Kerikeri Basin, which is dominated by a renowned Māori site, Kororipo Pā, overlooking the Stone Store and Kemp House, is culturally and historically one of the most important sites in Aotearoa/New Zealand. Its significance is manifest in several ways, including the people that lived there or used the area and the events that unfolded there, and the quality of the remaining physical and historical fabric.

The coastal landscapes reflect early Māori settlement, with visually prominent archaeological features such as gardening areas, and the terraces and ditches of headland pā constructed to control strategic waterways. Latter-day defences are also evident in the form of World War II gun emplacements on several coastal cliffs.

The rich historic landscape of the bay also includes many other reminders of the stories of significant events and people in the nation’s early history, including Ngāre Raumati, Captain Cook, Marion du Fresne, New Zealand’s first kauri log-trading, Bishop Pompallier, Te Maiki flagstaff, the Battle of Kororāreka, Cape Brett Lighthouse settlement and Zane Grey’s big-game fishing camp on Urupukapuka Island. Paihia was the base of Henry Williams’ early mission activities, and there is evidence around the coast of some short-lived farming attempts by early settlers, and whale-hunting and processing at Whangamumu.

The Bay of Islands is a popular tourist destination that consists of a coastal marine environment of outstanding beauty, with historic icon sites, as well as many islands, headlands, inlets, bays and beaches with both open and sheltered coastlines. Numerous rivers wind their way to these waters. The estuarine habitats at Kaipatiki, Te Haumi, Waikino and Waikare are buffered by regenerating forested hinterlands. Inland broken hill country is interspersed with volcanic fields. The estuaries of the eastern Bay of Islands feature tidal flats with long fingers of freshwater wetlands

reaching well back into the forested interiors. A significant area of mānawa/mangrove forest and saltmarsh borders these inlets. The southern and eastern parts of the district feature large tracts of regenerating lowland forest, often dominated by emergent kauri within the Opuā, Waikino and Russell Forests and adjoining areas.

The Bay of Islands lies within parts of Kerikeri and Whangaruru Ecological Districts. Kerikeri Ecological District is characterised by fragmented remnants of lowland forest and shrublands that are important habitats for kiwi, sandy beach habitats for tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, and estuaries and wetlands for pāteke/brown teal, matuku/Australasian bittern and mātātā/fernbird. There is little remaining coastal forest, and so protection and restoration of this vegetation is a community priority. Wetlands at Purerua and in the Waitangi Forest area have resulted from ponding behind lava flows. Some of these kauri gumlands, including those at Kerikeri, are habitat for the nationally endangered Northland mudfish.

Whangaruru Ecological District is characterised by large tracts of indigenous forest. The Russell Forest complex extends to the Cape Brett peninsula, with its remnant coastal forest. Second-growth kauri, podocarp, broadleaf forest, and vigorously regenerating kānuka/mānuka shrublands cover many of the hills that have previously been logged, burned and, in places, farmed. Locally threatened plants include *Calystegia marginata*, *Hebe acutiflora* and *Fuchsia procumbens*. In many places, the forest forms continuous sequences running into freshwater swamps, saltmarsh and mānawa/mangrove forest, supporting a rich variety of birdlife including kiwi, pāteke/brown teal, pūweto/spotless crane and moho pererū/banded rail. Marine rocky and sedimentary habitats are particularly diverse, especially in the outer Bay of Islands.

Many coastal shrublands are notable for some of the highest kiwi densities in Northland, and these are often found in close association with human communities who are actively protecting them. Such areas include Russell Peninsula, Purerua peninsula, parts of the Waitangi River catchment, pockets of habitat in the Hupara area and the Rangitane–Opito Bay area. Dogs present an ongoing threat to kiwi populations.

Other threatened species present are pāteke/brown teal, kūkupa/native pigeon and pūpū rangi/kauri snails; an expanding population of reintroduced North Island weka (*Gallirallus australis greyi*) on the Russell peninsula and kākārīki/red crowned parakeet (*Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae*) on the rat-free, Māori-owned Motukokako Island (Piercy Island).

Long-term challenges for biodiversity include marine protection, maintenance of water quality, the protection of lowland forest tracts from possums and goats, and active management of shorebirds (particularly tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel), pāteke/brown teal, kiwi and Northland mudfish. The natural character and landscape values of the Bay of Islands are high and there is a strong drive for their protection from a number of community groups.

One such project is Project Island Song, a community-driven project to restore biodiversity to Ipipiri, the eastern Bay of Islands archipelago. This partnership involves collaboration between the Guardians of the Bay of Islands community group, Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū from Te Rawhiti, and the Department. The first phase of this project involved the eradication of rodents and stoats (*Mustela erminea*) from these islands in 2009. Since then, natural regeneration and species recovery has been observed, and outcome monitoring supports this. Ecological restoration on the islands is now underway, including species reintroductions. An intensive integrated pest management programme on the adjacent mainland, from Cape Brett to Tapeka Point,

is in progress through a collaborative approach by tangata whenua, the community, landowners and agencies.

Marine values in the Bay of Islands are very high and have been quantified by a 2010 NIWA baseline survey. More detailed survey work is being undertaken as part of a community-driven initiative for marine protected areas in the Bay of Islands as well as a rāhui (established in November 2010, extended to November 2014 and subject to 2-yearly reviews) at Mangonui Bay (Deep Water Cove), put in place by Te Rawhiti hapū. The Bay of Islands marine environment comprises subtidal reefs on greywacke coasts that are mostly moderately to steeply sloping and generally have highly irregular topography with ridges, channels, gutters and overhangs, and caves (refer to Appendix 8). The Cape Brett peninsula's deepest reefs extend to at least 30 m and a total of 98 species of coastal fish have been recorded. Many of these species are widespread and locally common on shallow reefs throughout New Zealand. The majority of species are warm temperate-subtropical species, including 29 subtropical indicator species; however, there have also been four species with predominantly southern distributions found on deep reefs. The presence of marine mammals, including terehu/bottlenose (*Tursiops truncatus*) and aihe/common (*Delphinus capensis*) dolphins, kekeno/New Zealand fur seals and whales provide a tourist attraction. Kekeno/New Zealand fur seals appear to be making a recovery, with increasing numbers spending winter in the bay. The impacts of tourism on marine mammals are actively managed.

Thanks to its rich history, warm climate and stunning scenery, the Bay of Islands is one of the most popular tourism destinations in New Zealand. The sheltered bays offer a year-round haven for boats, with an international fleet gathering annually, along with boating visitors from Auckland and further afield. An increasing number of large cruise ships stop over during summer months, with a recent marketing shift to include smaller eco-cruises. The nature of the cruise ship industry, with large numbers of visitors arriving into port at one time, can put considerable pressure on the Bay of Islands' infrastructure, including some visitor sites on public conservation land.

Local tourism operators offer a range of experiences both on and off the water, including sight-seeing tours, marine mammal viewing and swimming, horse trekking, cultural experiences, island stop-overs, sailing cruises and party boats. Many utilise public conservation land as a part of their offering, holding tourism concessions with the Department. Concessions associated with mountain biking may be granted in future.

Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin is an Icon Visitor Destination in the Bay of Islands and the Cape Brett Lighthouse is a proposed Icon Destination. Other notable sites include Te Maiki flagstaff and Marsden Cross, where the sites' historic values are combined with captivating landscape views. Kerikeri River is important as a site where early collections of plants were made and is a type locality for many species.

A steady increase in population is predicted for the Bay of Islands as a consequence of both natural increase, immigration and the many attractions of this area for retirement to the so-called 'winterless north'. The coastal communities, particularly, reflect a high proportion of older, skilled and experienced people, many of whom are actively involved in conservation volunteering.

11.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

11.2.1 OUTCOME

New Zealanders recognise and value the historic significance of the Bay of Islands as a place where New Zealand's nationhood has been shaped, through an ongoing collision and re-creation of cultural and heritage values.

The Bay of Islands is a popular visitor destination that captures the imagination of visitors with its intricate coastline of scenic islands, pristine beaches, sheltered bays and rugged peninsula. Departmental historic icon and gateway visitor destinations are valued as premier tourist and recreation sites.

The Department, and commercial and tourism operators are working with communities, including tangata whenua and others, to protect, enhance and showcase the Bay of Islands' attractive coastal setting, including its threatened species, marine mammals and natural habitats. Its historic and cultural sites associated with early New Zealand history are protected, respected and understood.

The marine environment is protected by a tangata whenua and community initiative across a range of habitats.

The community and other agencies supported by the Department are actively protecting water quality and freshwater biodiversity in the Bay of Islands catchments of this Place.

PTA-free sites remain disease free, the impacts of PTA are reduced within infected sites and the spread of PTA is slowed in all kauri areas.

Eastern Bay of Islands (Ipipiri/Cape Brett)

Island biodiversity is restored to complement and enhance the historic and cultural landscape, and provide additional nature and recreation opportunities.

The islands of Ipipiri are sanctuaries where biodiversity, historic and cultural heritage can be experienced in an inspirational setting. Birdlife is flourishing, and native plants and animals are thriving in a healthy and pest-free environment. The marine environment surrounding the islands is protected and enjoyed. People value the archipelago and are actively involved in its conservation management. The highly valued pest-free status of the archipelago is maintained, and the Department, tangata whenua and the community are actively engaged in island restoration with the assistance of business.

Urupukapuka Island is the recognised gateway to the island archipelago of Ipipiri through the main entry point at Otehei Bay. Here, visitors are welcomed and introduced to the area, and are encouraged to support the values of Project Island Song. Visitors have an island experience in an open archaeological landscape where they are able to camp in a sheltered bay, enjoy a range of walks, participate in ecological restoration and gain an understanding of the values of the Place.

Motuarohia Island provides a stunning day visitor experience. In cooperation with private landowners, biodiversity values are improved and native wildlife is flourishing. Visitor numbers are monitored and managed through concessions with commercial operators, who value and protect the island.

Moturua Island's natural biodiversity is restored as a result of ecological restoration through Project Island Song. The existing vegetation cover is enhanced and

restoration is supported by ongoing animal and plant pest control. This biodiversity, along with the island's rich history, is interpreted and enjoyed by visitors on the island loop walk. Visitor numbers are monitored and managed through concessions with commercial operators, who value and protect the island.

Waewaetorea Island's beautiful beaches and restoration planting are enjoyed by day visitors to the island. Commercial operators are encouraged to apply for a concession for guided walking, and will value and protect the island accordingly.

The lesser visited Okahu Island will be afforded greater protection as biodiversity values increase across the Ipipiri archipelago.

The Cape Brett Lighthouse is an Icon Visitor Destination and is recognised as the pou whenua for the southern entrance to the Bay of Islands. A collaborative approach with tangata whenua in the management of the Cape Brett peninsula provides a range of multi-day visitor experiences that increase understanding and appreciation of the natural, cultural and historic values of the area. The importance of biosecurity initiatives and mainland pest control are emphasised to support wider ecological restoration.

The predominantly natural setting of Deepwater Cove is retained, and any development is in keeping with the character of the marine and natural environment.

Whangamumu is a low-use visitor site with basic facilities, where visitors, including kayakers, enjoy and understand the natural values of the bay and its contribution to the whaling history of New Zealand.

Inner Bay of Islands

Russell Forest is part of a priority ecosystem. Tangata whenua, the community and the Department are working together to progressively restore its natural values, including populations of threatened species. The Te Araroa Trail passes through the Waikare catchment, providing visitors with some spectacular vistas of the Bay of Islands. Opuia Forest, which forms a scenic backdrop to the Paihia visitor hub, is being enhanced through sustainable community conservation initiatives, which are improving forest health and visitor awareness of the natural, historic, cultural and recreational values of the area. Tapeka Point Historic Reserve, Flagstaff Hill Historic Reserve and Okiato Point Historic Reserve are actively conserved historic sites.

Opportunities for new mountain biking routes have been explored.

Kerikeri

The Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin is an Icon Visitor Destination and is recognised as one of New Zealand's foremost Māori and European early contact sites. The Department, through its membership on the Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin Governance Group, contributes to the protection and management of the cultural and natural values of the basin. A network of easy-grade tracks through the healthy forested reserves surrounding the basin enables visitors to appreciate the unique setting of the historic buildings and Kororipo Pā. Kerikeri River is recognised as a site where early collections of plants were made and is a type locality for many species.

Awareness of the significance of Marsden Cross as the site of New Zealand's first sermon, mission station and permanent settlement is raised in the community.

The Department is working collaboratively with tangata whenua and community organisations to achieve priority conservation outcomes.

Healthy kiwi populations throughout the Place are valued and actively protected by the community with agency support.

Public walking access to Taronui Bay is maintained and enhanced. Opportunities for mountain biking tracks have been explored.

Aircraft are not regularly encountered on public conservation land throughout the Bay of Islands.

11.2.2 POLICIES

- 11.2.2.1 Actively engage with tangata whenua and the community in conservation management of the Bay of Islands and the Kerikeri area by:
- a) encouraging participation and planning input into ecological restoration work, including pest control, on public conservation lands and waters; and
 - b) encouraging participation in the protection, promotion and interpretation of places of historic and cultural significance.
- 11.2.2.2 Work cooperatively with tangata whenua, Waitangi National Trust, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, concessionaires and others to increase awareness and understanding of the historic significance and linkages between the key visitor sites of the Bay of Islands.
- 11.2.2.3 Undertake research to establish the social carrying capacity and the carrying capacity of facilities on the islands.
- 11.2.2.4 May limit cruise ship landings (numbers of concessions, frequency of visits and party sizes) to ensure that visitors have a relatively uncrowded experience and the natural values of the islands are protected. A process of limited opportunity concessions may be initiated for this purpose.
- 11.2.2.5 Work with commercial tourism operators who do not require a concession to ensure natural, cultural and historic values are protected and a high-quality visitor experience is maintained on the islands administered by the Department.
- 11.2.2.6 Where possible and practicable, improve public access to the coast with the assistance of local authorities, tangata whenua, landowners, community groups and the NZ Walking Access Commission.
- 11.2.2.7 Allow entry into the Cape Brett Lighthouse only through organised events and concessions to ensure the protection of the structure and for safety purposes.
- 11.2.2.8 Work with island landowners, agencies, commercial operators and the public to implement island biosecurity protocols.
- 11.2.2.9 Provide and promote with concessionaires a range of recreation and cultural activities that reflect demand and encourage growth in visitor opportunities that enhance the understanding and protection of conservation values.
- 11.2.2.10 Work with the community, Far North District Council and other agencies on the management of dogs and other animals on public conservation land, including for the protection of tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, kiwi and other vulnerable protected species, under the provisions of the Bay of Islands Maritime and Historic Park Bylaws 1985 and Policies 16.5.1.1–16.5.1.7 and 16.5.2.1–16.5.2.3 and 16.5.3.1, 16.5.3.2 in Part Three of this document.

- 11.2.2.11 Should include broad-scale aerial pest control to enhance priority ecosystem unit and species protection.
- 11.2.2.12 May recommend appointments to committees to control and manage reserves where those areas are more appropriately managed by tangata whenua, other agencies or groups.
- 11.2.2.13 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards; and work with infrastructure companies, roading contractors, concessionaires and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt PTA hygiene standards for their people, machinery and equipment.
- 11.2.2.14 Upgrade and maintain the Te Araroa Trail on public conservation land to tramping track standard.
- 11.2.2.15 Promote the establishment of ecological linkages, corridors of protected vegetation that connect priority ecosystem units, where it can add value.
- 11.2.2.16 Collaborate with councils to promote pet-free subdivisions in high density kiwi zones.
- 11.2.2.17 Work with councils to investigate mechanisms for the control of dogs on foreshore areas in the Bay of Islands where threatened species are present.
- 11.2.2.18 Advocate for responsible land use activities that do not adversely affect natural environments and ecosystems.
- 11.2.2.19 Consult with tangata whenua, communities, landowners and user groups on the feasibility of establishing a mountain biking route to Taronui Bay and to Oromahoe Road subject to mountain bike policy 16.3.2.5.

Eastern Bay of Islands

- 11.2.2.20 Develop an operational plan for integrated management of the islands of Ipipiri in collaboration with hapū and key stakeholders.
- 11.2.2.21 Work with project partners, including the Guardians of the Bay of Islands, Patukeha and Ngāti Kuta, and with Bay of Islands' tour operators and the community on the implementation of Project Island Song.
- 11.2.2.22 Support hapū, the community, other agencies and eastern Bay of Islands landowners in pest control being carried out on the mainland coastline of Ipipiri (Cape Brett to Tapeka Point), to provide a buffer zone for Project Island Song and to enhance biodiversity on the mainland.
- 11.2.2.23 Work with the leaseholder at Otehei Bay and other concessionaires to ensure that natural, cultural and historic values are protected, the range of island-style visitor experiences is promoted, and a high-quality visitor experience is maintained on Urupukapuka Island.
- 11.2.2.24 Restrict aircraft landing to management and emergency purposes subject to those conditions specified in the Bay of Islands Maritime and Historic Park Bylaws 1985. Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.
- 11.2.2.25 Work with Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū on opportunities for development that achieve conservation outcomes, including promotion of the Cape Brett

Hut and walk, and the related predator fence, and support the relationship between Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha hapū and Ngā Whenua Rāhui.

Kerikeri

- 11.2.2.26 Build and maintain relationships with hapū, the community and businesses in the Kerikeri area, with emphasis on management of the Kerikeri Basin and surrounding reserves, Taronui, Opito Bay/Rangitane area, Purerua, and Waitangi wetland, including plant pest and predator control and revegetation.

11.2.3

MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 11.2.3.1 The number of visitors to the Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin has increased and it is recognised as an iconic day visitor site according to independent surveys.
- 11.2.3.2 The feasibility of a mountain biking route to Taronui Bay and Oromahoe Road has been investigated and reported on.
- 11.2.3.3 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.
- 11.2.3.4 Te Araroa Trail tracks on public conservation land are maintained to tramping track standard with interpretation at high-use sites to describe ecological and historic values.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 11.2.3.5 The number of visitors to Cape Brett Lighthouse/Hut has increased according to visitor surveys.
- 11.2.3.6 Visitor satisfaction with the quality of experiences and opportunities at Urupukapuka Island has increased according to independent surveys.
- 11.2.3.7 An operational plan for integrated management of the islands of Ipipiri has been completed in collaboration with hapū and key stakeholders.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 11.2.3.8 Visitor satisfaction with the quality of experiences and opportunities at Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin and Cape Brett Lighthouse/Hut has been increased, as identified by independent visitor surveys.
- 11.2.3.9 The quality of the Department’s engagement with key associates has improved according to independent surveys.
- 11.2.3.10 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department’s activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to independent surveys.
- 11.2.3.11 The islands of Ipipiri are under active ecosystem restoration, which is being led by the hapū and community and supported by business.
- 11.2.3.12 The feasibility of a mountain biking route for the Oromahoe Road Traverse has been investigated and reported on.
-

12 Northern Kauri Coast Place

12.1 Description

The Northern Kauri Coast Place (see Volume II, Map 5.7) extends from the southern shores of Hokianga Harbour, with its eastern border along the Tutamoe Range, and its western margin along the coastline of Ripiro and the Tasman Sea, to Mahuta Gap. There is a continuous sequence of diverse forest and shrubland spanning from the highest points in Northland to the rugged coastline. This area contains the largest expanse of mature kauri forest in New Zealand and the largest mature kauri.

Te Roroa has been kaitiaki of Waipoua Forest and its surrounds for hundreds of years. This relationship with Waipoua Forest is intrinsic to the identity and mana of the Te Roroa people, who see the records of the interaction of their tūpuna/ancestors with this Place in the landscape.

Te Roroa settled its historical Treaty claims with the Crown via the Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act 2008 (the Settlement Act). The Settlement Act provides for the recognition of the traditional, historic, cultural and spiritual associations Te Roroa has with places and sites managed by the Department. The Settlement Act establishes Te Tarehu, a classification that overlies much of Waipoua Forest and provides for specific protocols in engaging with Te Roroa to ensure that its values are protected in the Department's work in the Te Tarehu area.

The steep, deeply dissected Waima Range in the north rises to the highest points in Northland (Te Raupua 780 m above sea level (a.s.l.), Ngapukehau 762 m a.s.l., and Mt Misery 728 m a.s.l.). The gently southwestward-sloping plateau incorporating the Parataiko Range, Tutamoe Range and Maunganui Bluff reaches its highest point at Tutamoe (770 m a.s.l.) within Kaihu Forest in the southeast. This is formed of deeply weathered basaltic lava that was erupted from a large shield volcano centred west of Maunganui Bluff. (Note: Kaihu Forest and Marlborough Forest are within the adjacent Mangakahia-Tutamoe-Tangihua Place, section 15.)

The most outstanding ecological feature of this Place is the large forest tract comprising Waipoua, Mataraua and Waima Forests. This is the largest tract of old-growth kauri forest in New Zealand—a type now reduced to less than 2% of its original cover—and contains the largest mature kauri in the world. It is the largest contiguous area of high-altitude kauri and forest associations in Northland, and is the largest remaining indigenous forest north of Auckland. Other features include high-altitude swamp forest, the distinctive cloud forest of Waima Forest, and Waipoua River, the most pristine full catchment river system in Northland. The coastal belt with extensive rocky reefs features several dune lakes and wetlands, and vigorously regenerating mānuka, kānuka, tōwai shrubland with scattered mature kauri remnants.

This forest continuum is an important refuge. Fauna and flora values are extremely high, including 36 nationally threatened and 64 regionally significant plants, and 46 threatened and 4 regionally significant animals, including a diversity of invertebrates such as the *Notoreas* moth, insects and the carnivorous pūpū rangi/kauri snails. In the last two decades, three endemic plants have been discovered in Waima Forest: *Ackama nubicola* or *Turoa onamata*, *Coprosma waima* and *Olearia crebra*. It is likely that further discoveries will be made in this ecological hotspot. The forest supports the largest North Island brown kiwi population and the only viable population of North Island kōkako in Northland. North Island kākā (*Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis*) are rarely seen, but sightings are increasing.

The Hokianga Harbour entrance is rich in history dating back to the arrival of Kupe. It is a part of Te Wahapū, the place of beginnings. Arai Te Uru Recreation Reserve (refer to Appendix 12) on South Head provides not only a variety of outstanding landscape views of the harbour, but also a sense of history for Māori and Europeans.

The Kai Iwi lakes are a group of three freshwater lakes—Taharoa, Waikere and Kai Iwi—that are administered by Kaipara District Council. The lakes are dune lakes, which formed within coastal sand dune systems over 5000 years ago. They have outstanding ecological value, supporting communities of native aquatic plants and freshwater animals, including the rare aquatic plant *Hydatella inconspicua*. An endangered species of native freshwater fish, the dune lakes galaxias, lives in Lakes Waikere and Taharoa and is found nowhere else in the world. Other native freshwater creatures living in the Kai Iwi lakes include kōura/freshwater crayfish (*Paranephrops planifrons*), bullies, and dragonfly larvae.

Other freshwater values of this Place include the many streams and rivers that drain from the hills down to the sea. Many of these waterways support native fish communities made up of species such as tuna/long-finned eel (*Anguilla dieffenbachia*) and short-finned eel (*Anguilla australis*), inanga (*Galaxias maculatus*), and banded kōkopu (*Galaxias fasciatus*). Waipoua River, which is almost entirely on public conservation land, is the most pristine river in this area, and supports a diverse population of freshwater fish, including inanga, kōaro (*Galaxias brevipinnis*), bullies, shortjaw kōkopu (*Galaxias postvectis*), banded kōkopu, kanakana/lamprey (*Geotria australis*), piri-piri-pōhatu/torrentfish (*Cheimarrichthys fosteri*) and tuna/long-finned eel (*Anguilla dieffenbachia*).

This coastline is characterised by open, exposed sandy beaches interspersed by stretches of rocky platforms, bluffs and outcrops. Deeper subtidal reefs are widespread between Kawerua and Hokianga Harbour. The plateau is drained by three main catchment systems—the Waimamaku, Waipoua and Waima/Kaihu Rivers. The extensive sandy beaches are important habitats for toheroa and some green-lipped mussels and pāua (*Haliotis iris*) are present on the rocky reefs. The subtidal reef fish fauna outside Hokianga Harbour is low in diversity compared with other sites in northern New Zealand, and is notable for the absence of subtropical species. Refer to Appendix 8.

This Place is rich in human history. Sheltered by ancient forests, it is the home of Te Roroa, who for hundreds of years has occupied the river valleys of Waimamaku, Waipoua and Kaihu, as well as other contiguous lands between Hokianga and Kaipara Harbours. According to tribal narratives, Te Roroa descend from Ngāi Tuputupuwhenua, who was resident in the district when the famous Māori navigator Kupe arrived; the combined peoples adopted the name Te Roroa (the Tall Ones) in the time of Manumanu 1; and Hokianga Harbour bore witness to the arrival of Kupe and other waka of the migration, becoming one of the earliest sites of Māori settlement. Hokianga is known as the kohanga (nursery/nest) of Te Rarawa and Ngāpuhi. Unique archaeological landscape features such as pā, middens, pits, terraces, urupā and wāhi tapu exist here.

The first European expeditions to this coast sought kauri spars. Bleeding the trees or probing for gum came soon after, followed by the clearance and decimation of kahikatea forests and drainage of the wetlands for farming. Flax was exported and used for rope, and toheroa and tuatua (*Paphies subtriangulata*) were exported from the beaches. As early as 1859, the scientist Ferdinand von Hochstetter complained that the northern kauri forests were being ransacked and ravaged with fire and sword and European colonisation threatened their existence—hence the public agitation to have the best of these remnants, Waipoua Forest, reserved.

An area of 35 000 acres at Waipoua Forest was acquired by the Crown in 1874 and was gazetted as a State Forest in 1885. When the State Forest Service was set up in 1920, the plans formulated for Waipoua Forest were for permanent kauri management. Subsequently, Waipoua was the site of one of New Zealand's first major conservation battles. Conflicting interests between logging and forest protection reached a peak at Waipoua in the mid-1940s. A vigorous campaign led by Associate Professor W.R. McGregor and the Royal Forest & Bird Protection Society, supported by eminent botanist Leonard Cockayne, led to the establishment of the Waipoua Forest Sanctuary in 1952.

Trounson Kauri Park's history is slightly different. In 1890, when the timber industry threatened to virtually wipe out Northland kauri forests, 3.34 ha was initially set aside by the Government of the day. An early settler and sawmiller James Trounson added a further 22 ha to this initial gesture. Following the establishment of a Scenic Preservation Club, Mr Trounson offered to sell another 364 ha of forest land to the Government for the value of the trees alone. Trounson Kauri Park was officially opened in 1921.

Aspects of historical interest in this Place include water channels, gum diggings, horse trails and the coastline, which was the scene of numerous shipwrecks. The first pioneers used horses for transport. Formed roads such as the Waoku Coach Road followed. A railway line connected Dargaville with Donnelly's Crossing, and in 1910–1920 the formation of State Highway 12 through Waipoua Forest linked southern and northern communities. It was not until 1995 that the last section of the highway—Waipoua Bridge to Wairau summit—was sealed with tarmac.

Internationally recognised as a destination, Waipoua Forest attracts high numbers of domestic and international visitors, who come to visit the largest kauri trees, Tāne Mahuta and Te Matua Ngahere, or take the opportunity for a leisurely 2–3 hour walk on other tracks.

The backcountry tracks in the Waima and Mataraua Forests are visited by the more experienced and keen trampers, plant and bird lovers, training marathoners, and dedicated locals looking to fill the freezer with a leg of pork or kill a couple of goats to feed the dogs.

Trounson Kauri Park is a regularly visited site. Visitors can walk the 40-minute loop track, stay overnight to enjoy the evening in the campground, or utilise it as a base for a couple of days to visit the Kai Iwi lakes or other attractions in the district. Guided night walks are available in Trounson and Waipoua.

A traditional New Zealand summer holiday at campgrounds is provided for at the Kai Iwi lakes and the Waipoua Visitor Centre, as well as Trounson.

Recreational use is increasing in this Place. Motorised vehicle use ranging from four-wheel drive, quads, to motorcross riding occurs on private land and roads. Jetskis and power boating are popular in the harbour and off the coast. More traditional recreation opportunities include fishing, mountain biking and horse trekking along the coast. The rivers and lakes are popular for waka ama, kayaking and picnicking. These activities complement those recreational opportunities provided by the Department in the forests. The challenge to expanding the range of recreational opportunities offered by the Department is to do so without causing adverse impacts on the values protected on or in public conservation lands and waters. A large part of that challenge will be providing appropriate tracks and facilities, and ensuring that campsites are available and that rubbish and sewerage management is handled professionally. PTA (kauri dieback disease), which is a rapidly spreading lethal fungus of kauri trees, is a significant risk to the health and functioning of the kauri forest ecosystems and can be

spread by human activity as well as by animals. Management of this disease may require some significant changes to the established patterns of forest access and use. (Refer also to section 5.1.)

During 2012 to 2013 an investigation under section 8 of the National Parks Act 1980 into the proposal to establish a Kauri National Park was undertaken. The park proposal includes forests within the rohe of Te Roroa: Waipoua Forest and some adjacent reserves and conservation areas, Katui Scenic Reserve, Trounson Kauri Park Scenic Reserve and Maitahi Wetland Scientific Reserve. No decision had been made to establish a national park at the time this CMS was approved.

The Nationally Critical Māui dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori maui*), a subspecies of Hector's dolphin, is the world's smallest and rarest marine dolphin. The population of around 55 dolphins over the age of one year is found only on the west coast of the North Island. They are occasionally seen at the mouth of the Kaipara Harbour and are also known to use the harbour. Entanglement in set nets is a major threat to this species, as is trawling, seabed mining, marine pollution and disease.

The West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary, which extends from Maunganui Bluff south and encompasses Kaipara Harbour, was established in 2008 to provide protection from seabed mining and acoustic seismic survey for this critically endangered species. Restrictions on set net and trawl fishing under the Fisheries Act 1996 also exist within the sanctuary area to help the recovery of Māui dolphin within its natural range. The Review of the Maui's Dolphin Threat Management Plan undertaken in 2012 has resulted in a package of protection measures that will be implemented in 2014/15 and also identified research priorities to focus efforts prior to a further review due in 2018.

12.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

12.2.1 OUTCOME

The forests of the Waipoua/Mataraua/Waima continuum are priority ecosystem units, and are nationally significant for their outstanding natural heritage values and as the largest remaining tract of kauri-dominant forest in New Zealand. Here, tangata whenua, communities and the Department are working closely together to maintain and progressively improve the healthy functioning of this forest ecosystem and its diverse range of threatened and endemic plants and animals.

Visitors flock to enjoy a unique visitor experience at Trounson and Waipoua that provides the only inherently Te Roroa kauri experience on Earth. The focal points of this iconic tourism destination for domestic and international visitors are the giant kauri trees near SH12—Tāne Mahuta and Te Matua Ngahere. Developed with Te Roroa, local authorities, tourism interests and the New Zealand Transport Agency, boardwalk tracks, viewing platforms and allied facilities are designed to protect the forest and enhance visitor enjoyment and understanding.

Visitors can expect one way-walking systems, some background traffic noise from SH12, and silent parked buses and other vehicles. Visitors gain an appreciation of Te Roroa's relationship with the forest and the importance of the Te Tarehu. They learn of the history of the Place and its significance in conservation history. This complements their experience of other visitor and community enterprises that celebrate the heritage of kauri and its importance to the identity and development of this Place and the nation. The deep connection of Te Roroa to the forest is a highlight of the Waipoua experience, including the night-time sounds of the forest. Opportunities for more

remote experiences in the forests are provided for, including walking tracks to Waiotemarama Waterfall and Hauturu Highpoint and night-time sounds of the forest while camping or with a guide. The remote routes in the Waima and Mataraua forests, including to Framptons Hut, are maintained to a standard consistent with a true backcountry experience.

The priority ecosystem unit of Trounson Kauri Park Scenic Reserve is a Gateway Destination where visitors gain an understanding of, and enjoy the benefits of, the intensive pest control aimed at restoring the healthy natural functioning of kauri forest ecosystems. Visitors get a glimpse into the richness and diversity of what kauri forests were once like, and what they could be in the future with widespread community support and involvement.

PTA-free sites remain disease free, the impacts of PTA are reduced within infected sites and the spread of PTA is slowed in all kauri sites.

The high-altitude, wet plateau forest of Mataraua is home to a thriving and expanding population of North Island kōkako and provides a source of birds for translocation to other sites. Visitors on the Waoku Coach Road, which passes through this forest and is now part of the national cycleway, experience a more diverse forest as a result of animal pest control programmes.

Arai Te Uru Recreation Reserve provides not only outstanding landscape views of the Hokianga Harbour entrance, but also conveys a deep sense of history spanning back to the arrival of Kupe. As a site of great significance to Māori, the community is working with the Department to enhance visitor appreciation and understanding of its wide-reaching connections. The natural heritage values of the site are enhanced through fencing and animal pest control, and the protection of an ōi/grey-faced petrel (*Pterodroma macroptera*) colony and threatened plants.

The Omamari Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve wetland and the nearby Maitahi Wetland Scientific Reserve are priority ecosystems. The focus of tangata whenua and community interest is on their restoration and the threatened plants and animals that occur there.

A Kauri National Park is established covering the forests of Waipoua and Trounson. The park is managed in co-operation with Te Roroa, with the involvement of community interest groups and adjacent landowners.

Te Tarehu (Appendix 14) ensures that the traditional, cultural, historic and spiritual values and associations of Te Roroa with Waipoua are protected.

The population of the Nationally Critical Māui dolphin is recovering and is effectively protected.

Aircraft may be encountered occasionally in this Place.

12.2.2

POLICIES

- 12.2.2.1 Develop an effective and enduring working relationship with Te Roroa as provided for in the Deed of Settlement and Te Tarehu that recognises their active role as kaitiaki in their rohe to achieve integrated conservation management (Appendix 14).
- 12.2.2.2 Develop effective and enduring working relationships with other iwi that have manawhenua in this Place by recognising their active role as kaitiaki in their rohe to achieve integrated conservation management.
- 12.2.2.3 Actively engage with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies and the community in conservation management in this Place, and encourage and

- support conservation initiatives by tangata whenua and the community, particularly those that:
- a) restore native habitats on public conservation land;
 - b) enhance ecological functioning of public conservation land; and
 - c) control or eradicate plant and animal pests in priority ecosystem units.
- 12.2.2.4 Carry out sustained predator and animal pest control in the forest continuum using appropriate tools to achieve maximum conservation benefits.
- 12.2.2.5 Attempt to eradicate plant pests from priority sites around State Highway 12, Waipoua River and other rivers, and Maitahi Wetland Scientific Reserve using appropriate tools to maximise conservation benefits.
- 12.2.2.6 Fence boundaries of public conservation lands to exclude stock and goats entirely or partially from priority ecosystem units.
- 12.2.2.7 Carry out intensive and sustained control of all plant and animal pests within Trounson Kauri Park to maintain the kiwi population, trial new predator control techniques and tools, and ensure that the knowledge gained from these trials is made available to managers of other priority ecosystem units and others with an interest in conservation management.
- 12.2.2.8 Continue to prioritise intensive control of all animal pests at the Mataraua/Waipoua and Waima North Island kōkako sites, and may seek to extend the boundaries of this control.
- 12.2.2.9 Encourage continued research to increase knowledge of native species, habitat, biodiversity, biosecurity threats and ecosystems so as to improve future management.
- 12.2.2.10 Work with Te Roroa, concessionaires and others to provide a complementary visitor experience between Trounson and Waipoua Forest Sanctuary that is of international renown.
- 12.2.2.11 Include Māori place and species names, make appropriate use of Te Reo Māori, and draw attention to tangata whenua values in public information and interpretation about sites of cultural importance in consultation with tangata whenua when they support this.
- 12.2.2.12 Manage recreational and concessionaire activities, and provide information and interpretation to enable visitors to experience and gain a greater understanding of the unique natural features of the kauri forest, and the historical importance and significance to iwi of the Place.
- 12.2.2.13 Close tracks and other facilities and discourage access where necessary to minimise or eliminate damaging impacts on kauri forest ecosystems from changes in hydrology or from PTA.
- 12.2.2.14 Upgrade and provide appropriate tracks, amenities and facilities (car parks and toilets) to meet visitor demand in a manner sympathetic with the area and minimising impact on its natural character.
- 12.2.2.15 Monitor visitor numbers with the aim of establishing a carrying capacity for higher use sites, especially at the giant kauri trees.
- 12.2.2.16 Ensure that concessions are not inconsistent with the Te Roroa Values and Protection Principles set out in Te Tarehu (Appendix 14).

- 12.2.2.17 If places or resources are of significance to ethnic groups with historical or cultural associations with this Place, e.g. Yugoslavian/Croatian or Chinese, consider using appropriate terminology and language when drawing attention to their values, in consultation with them.
- 12.2.2.18 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards; and work with infrastructure companies, roading contractors, concessionaires and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt PTA hygiene standards for their people, machinery and equipment.
- 12.2.2.19 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land in this Place are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.
- 12.2.2.20 Work with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local government, tangata whenua, fishers and others to implement the Maui's Dolphin Threat Management Plan.

12.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 12.2.3.1 The number of visitors to Trounson has increased and they have greater satisfaction with the quality of experiences and opportunities according to independent visitor surveys.
- 12.2.3.2 The quality of the Department's engagement with key associates has improved according to independent surveys.
- 12.2.3.3 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to independent surveys.
- 12.2.3.4 Conservation actions have been initiated at the Trounson priority ecosystem unit.
- 12.2.3.5 The Research Advisory Group for Māui dolphin is established.
- 12.2.3.6 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.
- 12.2.3.7 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place have been completed: Trounson Kauri Park, Waima Forest and Waipoua.
- 12.2.3.8 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway have been completed: *Leptinella rotundata* and *Baumea complanata*.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 12.2.3.9 The awareness of visitors of the Waipoua Giant Kauri Walks and Tāne Mahuta has significantly increased from levels found in the Rakau Rangatira Visitor Experience Study (Visitor Solutions 2013)⁹.

⁹ Visitor Solutions 2013: Rakau Rangatira Visitor Experience Study, On-Site and Off-Site Survey Report.

- 12.2.3.10 The backcountry tracks on public conservation land have been maintained to tramping track standard.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 12.2.3.11 Participation in recreation on public conservation lands in the Northern Kauri Coast has increased according to independent surveys.
 - 12.2.3.12 Priority ecosystem units and species sites are demonstrating improved health through ongoing monitoring.
 - 12.2.3.13 The Māui dolphin population is stable or increasing.
-

13 Pouto–Kaipara Place

13.1 Description

Kaipara Harbour (see Volume II, Map 5.8) is New Zealand's largest enclosed harbour and protected estuarine area. Covering 947 km², it is also one of the largest harbours in the southern hemisphere, with over 800 km of coastline. The harbour mouth is approximately 8 km across and substantial sand accumulation occurs at the heads. The coastline is deeply indented, with sheltered rocky shores and low cliffs. Sand and mudflats are extensive at low tide (43% of the area). The harbour contains highly productive intertidal sand flats with a mosaic of estuarine habitats, including saltmarsh, salt meadows and reed swamps, and about 10% is covered with mānawa/mangroves.

The area covered by this CMS runs through the harbour entrance, dividing the Kaipara in two and includes all public conservation land and waters north of Oruawharo River. The area south of this is covered by the Auckland CMS.

Kaipara Harbour is of national and international ornithological significance, attracting tens of thousands of migratory birds each year from the South Island and the arctic and subantarctic regions. The harbour's extensive tidal flats, mānawa/mangroves and saltmarshes attract wading bird species, making this Place internationally important as a major roosting and breeding area for coastal and estuarine wading birds such as kuaka/bar-tailed godwits and tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterels. Refer to Appendix 8.

The Nationally Critical Māui dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori maui*), a subspecies of Hector's dolphin, is the world's smallest and rarest marine dolphin. The population of around 55 dolphins over the age of one year is found only on the west coast of the North Island. They are occasionally seen at the mouth of the Kaipara Harbour and are also known to use the harbour. Entanglement in set nets is a major threat to this species, as is trawling, seabed mining, marine pollution and disease.

The West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary, which extends from Maunganui Bluff south and encompasses Kaipara Harbour, was established in 2008 to provide protection from seabed mining and acoustic seismic survey for this critically endangered species. Restrictions on set net and trawl fishing under the Fisheries Act 1996 also exist within the sanctuary area to help the recovery of Māui dolphin within its natural range. The Review of the Maui's Dolphin Threat Management Plan undertaken in 2012 has resulted in a package of protection measures that will be implemented in 2014–15 and also identified research priorities to focus efforts prior to the next review due in 2018.

Other marine mammals that are occasionally seen include terehu/bottlenose dolphins, kera wēra/orcas (*Orcinus orca*), a variety of whales and kekeno/New Zealand fur seals. Turtles and sea snakes are also a frequent find during certain months of the year.

Pouto Peninsula is an outstanding large mosaic of mobile dunes, consolidated dunes, sand flats, impounded wetlands and dune lakes, with patches of coastal scrub and forest. This is one of the largest unmodified duneland systems remaining in New Zealand. The dune lakes are an outstanding feature of the freshwater environment of this Place, having formed in the West Coast sand dune systems over 5000 years ago. They are internationally and nationally significant freshwater ecosystems, supporting communities of native freshwater plants and animals, including threatened and uncommon species.

This Place contains a high density of archaeological sites and several areas within the harbour confines are recalled in the histories of many of the tribes of Taitokerau. Part

of this Place is covered by the Te Uri o Hau – DOC Protocol, as defined in the Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002 (see Appendix 13). Te Uri o Hau has particular cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional associations with Pouto Conservation Area. The Kirihipi is a statutory overlay relating to Pouto Conservation Area; it acknowledges the important values this area holds for Te Uri o Hau (see Appendix 13).

The Kauri Museum at Matakoho is a popular attraction for domestic and international tourists. Here the stories of kauri forest logging and milling, coastal shipping, and gum digging are illustrated. The museum includes a centre for dendrochronology (research linking climate change with tree growth ring patterns).

The focus of domestic visitors to this Place includes surfing, boating, swimming in freshwater lakes, rivers and the sea, walking, lying on the beach and having a family picnic, and accessing fishing spots. In this Place, people value the opportunity to provide their children with a traditional New Zealand camping summer holiday. Recreational use is increasing. Motorised, recreational vehicles used include four-wheel drives, quads, motorcross bikes, jetskis and powered boats. Traditional recreation includes fishing, cycling, horse trekking, recreational hunting and walks.

The Pouto harbour entrance at the southwestern end of the peninsula, and immediate open coast are a dynamic landscape with extensive mobile sand dunes and no established vegetation. This area is suitable for responsible four-wheel drive activity. Immediately adjacent areas, just inland, with any type of established vegetation or dune lakes are sensitive and vulnerable to disturbance. Off road vehicle use is not compatible with the values of this area and, therefore, is not permitted here.

The Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group, which was established in 2005, was initiated by Te Uri o Hau, a hapū of Ngāti Whātua. This group called upon central, regional and local government agencies, and community stakeholders to assist in managing Kaipara Harbour. The group recognises the challenge of managing the competing and sometimes conflicting uses of Kaipara Harbour's resources, particularly the very large and diverse catchment. Section 15 (Mangakahia–Tutamoe–Tangihua Place) and section 12 (Northern Kauri Coast Place) in this CMS, and Kaipara Harbour–Te Arai/Pakiri Place in the Auckland CMS acknowledge this. Some of the key issues for the future are the potential impacts of tidal turbines, a proposed wind farm, and changes in the form and shape of dunes and the harbour margins.

The vision of the group is a healthy and productive Kaipara Harbour: *Ka mau tonu nga taonga tapu o nga matua tupuna koinei nga taonga tuku iho, na te Atua—Hold fast to the treasures of the ancestors for they are treasures that have been handed down to us by God.*

13.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

13.2.1 OUTCOME

The highly dynamic geomorphic sites, sandfields, dune lakes and dunefield ecosystems of Kaipara Harbour are protected. The priority ecosystems of the freshwater, dune lake and wetland habitats on Pouto Peninsula are protected and habitat quality is being progressively improved. Kaipara Harbour's outstanding wildlife values are recognised, and populations of threatened shorebirds and Māui dolphin are increasing. Pukekohe Hill, Smokey Hill and Pukekaroro Scenic Reserves are thriving examples of kauri forest remnants that are priority ecosystems protected and managed by the Department with the support of tangata whenua and the community. The health of other forest remnants valued by the community and tangata

whenua is improving due to their efforts. Through a collaborative relationship with tangata whenua, communities, local government and others, the distinctive harbour habitats, natural character and landscape values of Kaipara Harbour are protected and its coastal environment is preserved.

Historic and cultural heritage, particularly archaeological sites on public conservation land, are conserved, protected and respected. The Department works with tangata whenua and the community to identify and protect sites of special cultural, maritime and historic interest. Pukekaroro Scenic Reserve is a cultural site of significance to Te Uri o Hau and Ngāti Whatua.

A constructive working relationship is maintained between the Department and Ngāti Whātua, including Te Uri O Hau and Ngāti Whātua O Kaipara. Treaty settlements create new opportunities for the collaborative management of resources and issues within the harbour catchment.

The Department works cooperatively with tangata whenua, in collaboration with other agencies with a statutory role and the community, to foster conservation initiatives and enable sustainable business opportunities on public conservation land that contribute to the well-being and future growth of the community.

People are attracted to the Kaipara area for its distinctive landscapes, abundant wildlife and rich cultural history. Visitors enjoy a range of recreational activities in a predominantly rural and coastal setting. Recreation opportunities are supported only by basic facilities. Options for enhancing the protected status of Pouto Conservation Area have been evaluated and investigated.

The Department works cooperatively with other land managers to provide a range of well-managed recreation opportunities that complement those available on public conservation land, and protect natural, cultural and historic values. Inappropriate off-road vehicle use on Pouto Peninsula is curtailed through collaboration with tangata whenua, communities, local government and others. Responsible off-road vehicle use on Pouto Peninsula is provided for in clearly identified mobile dune areas and is subject to a motorists' care code and a care code for Pouto.

Recreation, tourism and infrastructure concessions complement the protection of natural and historic heritage. They also enhance the awareness of natural, cultural and historic values, and the connection of visitors with this Place and its communities.

The Department advocates for sustainable management of adjoining land, resulting in significant net conservation benefits to this Place.

The population of the Nationally Critical Māui dolphin is recovering and is effectively protected.

PTA-free sites remain disease free and the impacts of PTA are reduced within infected sites. The spread of PTA is slowed in all kauri areas.

Aircraft may be encountered occasionally in this Place.

13.2.2 POLICIES

- 13.2.2.1 Maintain and further develop an effective and enduring working relationship with Te Uri o Hau (which reflects the spirit of the Deed of Settlement) and Kirihipi (Appendix 13) and recognises their active role as kaitiaki in their rohe, to achieve integrated conservation management.
- 13.2.2.2 Participate constructively in the Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group by actively supporting partnerships that advance the aims of the group.
- 13.2.2.3 Actively engage with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies and the community in conservation management in the Kaipara, and encourage and support conservation initiatives by tangata whenua and the community, particularly those that:
- a) protect shorebirds and their habitats;
 - b) restore native habitats on public conservation land;
 - c) enhance the ecological functioning of public conservation land;
 - d) control or eradicate animal and plant pests at priority ecosystem units;
 - e) allow natural processes to proceed largely without intervention.
- 13.2.2.4 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies, the community and the Northland Fish and Game Council to minimise the impact of aquatic pests on the dune lakes.
- 13.2.2.5 Continue to work with tangata whenua, communities and agencies to promote the motorists' care code for Pouto and restrict vehicle access to clearly identified locations on public conservation lands to minimise adverse impacts on fragile dunes, historic and archaeological sites, nesting birds, threatened plants, and the safety and enjoyment of other users. Refer also to Policies 16.3.1.1–16.3.1.11 in Part Three of this CMS.
- 13.2.2.6 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies and the community to promote initiatives that are designed to reduce the impacts of vehicles on west coast beaches to achieve the outcomes of the NZ Coastal Policy Statement 2010¹⁰.
- 13.2.2.7 May allow concessions for commercial activities such as guided walking, wildlife viewing, horse trekking and filming on public conservation lands where these have a low impact. Concessions should only be authorised if they are consistent with the values of the Place and do not detract from other visitor experiences.
- 13.2.2.8 Applications for authorisations that are inconsistent with Te Uri o Hau values in its area of interest, as set out in the Kirihipi overlay area for Pouto Stewardship Area, will generally not be granted.
- 13.2.2.9 Should not allow aircraft landings on public conservation land including adjacent intertidal areas of the harbour at times when indigenous and migratory wildlife are roosting or flocking.
- 13.2.2.10 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor

¹⁰ New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

information; work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and adoption of PTA hygiene standards; and work with infrastructure companies, roading contractors, concessionaires and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt PTA hygiene standards for their people, machinery and equipment.

- 13.2.2.11 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three and subject to the proviso in Policy 13.2.2.9.
- 13.2.2.12 May allow authorisations for nationally and regionally significant infrastructure that are consistent with the outcomes and policies for this Place and meet the requirements of relevant policies in Part Three.
- 13.2.2.13 Work with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local government, tangata whenua, fishers and others to implement the Maui's Dolphin Threat Management Plan.
- 13.2.2.14 Advocate for responsible land use activities that do not adversely affect natural environments and ecosystems.
- 13.2.2.15 Undertake an investigation to establish the appropriate land classification for the Pouto Conservation (Stewardship) Area.

13.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 13.2.3.1 The quality of the Department's engagement with key associates has improved according to independent surveys.
- 13.2.3.2 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to independent surveys.
- 13.2.3.3 The Research Advisory Group for Māui dolphin is established.
- 13.2.3.4 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.
- 13.2.3.5 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place: Kaipara North Head.
- 13.2.3.6 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway: *Baumea complanata*.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 13.2.3.7 Priority ecosystem units and species sites are demonstrating improved health through ongoing monitoring.
- 13.2.3.8 Reclassification of Pouto Conservation (Stewardship) Area.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 13.2.3.9 Participation in recreation on public conservation lands in this Place has increased according to independent surveys.
 - 13.2.3.10 The Māui dolphin population is stable or increasing.
-

14 Whangaruru–Mangawhai Coast Place

14.1 Description

For many Northlanders, the view north from the top of the Brynderwyn Hills is greeted with elation as the first real sign of home. This spectacular natural landscape and mosaic of natural and developed areas captures the essence of this Place (see Volume II, Map 5.9). The main features of Manaia, Bream Head, Bream Bay coastal fringe, the Poor Knights Islands and the Hen and Chickens Islands are all public conservation lands. This view can inspire residents and visitors into improving their quality of life, protecting the region's rich natural and cultural heritage, and valuing and enjoying the associated recreation opportunities.

The character of this geologically diverse area is dominated by the ruggedly eroded columns, ridges and peaks of Manaia and Bream Head. Greywacke ridges form Bream Tail and low hills surround the harbour. Numerous young scoria cones surround the outskirts of Whangarei. The long sweeps of Ocean Beach and Bream Bay are comprised of Holocene dune sands. Other features are the broken, indented coast from Whananaki to Taiharuru with its stretches of sandy beaches and dynamic spit/dune systems at river mouths. Other lands administered by the Department on this coast comprise small headland reserves, often with pā, covered in coastal pōhutukawa and broadleaf forest—Whangaruru North Head Scenic Reserve and Mimiwhangata Scenic Reserve are typical examples. Dunelands are present at Ocean Beach, and along Bream Bay and Mangawhai, with Ngunguru Spit a feature of particular landscape value.

Archaeological sites are concentrated along the coastal margins, with numerous middens and impressive pā on local headlands and promontories. Further inland, Ruapekapeka Pa Historic Reserve, which is arguably New Zealand's premier gun fighter pā, remains well preserved. Historic sites associated with Whangarei City and surrounding smaller settlements include early industries, such as a cement works on Limestone (Matakohe) Island and meat works at Reotahi, flax milling, gum digging, coal mining at Kamo, timber milling, and aspects of coastal shipping and navigation. Waipu and Whangarei Heads contain sites of early Nova Scotian settlement, while Bream Head contains one of the best-preserved World War II installations in New Zealand. Refer to Appendix 12.

On the Poor Knights and Hen and Chickens Islands Nature Reserves, each island has a variety of archaeological sites, such as kāinga (small settlement), mahinga kai, pā, urupā and wāhi tapu. All of these islands were permanently or seasonally occupied by Māori and remain of high value to them. Taranga Island and the Poor Knights Islands, for example, have extensive historical/archaeological landscapes, with stone terraces, embankments, walls and mounds associated with long-term occupation and gardening. Features of more recent historic significance are lighthouses and evidence of attempts at farming.

This Place lies within the Eastern Northland Ecological Region. The Poor Knights Islands, Hen and Chickens Islands and Bream Islands are nature reserves. They are important refuges for threatened species as they provide isolation from human influences and the impacts of introduced pests. Islands such as the Poor Knights have high numbers of endemic plants and animals because they have been isolated from the mainland for a long time. All the offshore islands contain diverse coastal broadleaf forest dominated by pōhutukawa along with pūriri, kohekohe (*Dysoxylum spectabile*), karaka (*Corynocarpus laevigatus*) and puka (*Meryta sinclairii*). Birdlife is generally diverse, with both mainland forest birds such as kākā and kākāriki, and a wide variety of seabirds including shearwaters, prions and petrels. On the Hen and Chickens group,

little spotted kiwi have been introduced to Taranga Island and tīeke/North Island saddlebacks to the Chickens Islands. Several species of lizard are common and some invertebrates, including wētā, beetles and snails, are distinctive. Tuatara populations are healthy on the Poor Knights Islands and rapidly recovering on the Chickens Islands following the removal of kiore. Landing on the nature reserves is prohibited other than for scientific and management purposes, when a permit is required.

The coastal conifer, broadleaf, and kauri forests on Manaia Ridge and Bream Head are priority ecosystems, with several threatened plants, kākā, kākāriki, kiwi and pūpū harakeke/flax snails present. Whangarei and Whangaruru Harbours are major, shallow estuarine habitats with extensive mudflats and mānawa/mangroves, which support a wide variety of coastal and wading birds such as tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, ngutuparore/wrybill (*Anarhynchus frontalis*), moho pererū/banded rail, taranui/Caspian tern (*Hydroprogne caspia*), kōtuku-ngutupapa/royal spoonbill (*Platalea regia*) and kuaka/bar-tailed godwit. There is a marine reserve on two sites in Whangarei Harbour. Estuaries and associated dunelands on the coast provide important feeding and roosting areas for waders. Ruakaka is a migratory habitat for kuaka/bar tailed godwits and huahou/red knot (*Calidris canutus*), Waipu and Mangawhai are significant as breeding grounds for tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel and taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern. Mangawhai is also a culturally significant site and contains many wāhi tapu as well as history of tupuna for Te Uri o Hau.

At Mimiwhangata Scenic Reserve, entire catchments are protected, from kauri-clad ridgelines down to the intricate coastline, the shallow diverse rocky reef system and offshore islands. Mimiwhangata is one of the few mainland sites actively managed for the recovery of pāteke/brown teal. Several forested remnants that are now surrounded by farmland, including Whangaruru North Head Scenic Reserve, Manaia Ridge Scenic Reserve, Tutukaka Forest Conservation Area, Motatau Scenic Reserve, Riponui Scenic Reserve, Aponga Settlement Scenic Reserve, Purua Scenic Reserve, Bream Head Scenic Reserve and Marlow Conservation Covenant, form the Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary. At these sites, an active programme is well underway to recover the North Island brown kiwi.

This coastline is on the path of many species of marine mammals, some of which strand during most years, necessitating rescue operations to be undertaken by the Department, tangata whenua and volunteers.

Mimiwhangata Marine Park is located approximately halfway between Cape Brett and Whangarei Harbour. The area comprises an impressive range of open coastal features including beaches, small islands, rock stacks, intertidal and shallow subtidal reefs, and subtidal soft sediments. The offshore reefs of Mimiwhangata have been mapped and are extensive, stretching across a wide area to the north and south, and extending out to and beyond the 100 m depth zone. Mimiwhangata has been the subject of considerable scientific study and was proposed for a marine reserve site in 2005.

The marine environment of the Whangaruru–Mangawhai Coast Place consists of a diverse, complex and valued coastline that is interrupted by Whangarei Harbour and the smaller estuaries of Taiharuru, Pataua, Horahora, Ngunguru, Whananaki, Whangaruru and Whangamumu. Refer to Appendix 8. Northland’s estuaries provide a critical link between terrestrial and marine ecosystems and are sites of both early Māori and early European settlements.

The Poor Knights comprise two large islands (Tawhiti Rahi and Aorangi) and several small islets and rock stacks (including Sugarloaf Rock and High Peak Rocks (The Pinnacles)) to the southeast of the main islands. The marine area around the islands to 800 m offshore is an 1890 ha marine reserve (Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve).

Landscapes and seascapes are steep and rugged. There are few shallow rocky reefs, with most places fringed by steeply sloping subtidal rocky reefs, which drop to depths of almost 100 m close inshore. There are numerous submerged pinnacles and many caves, tunnels and archways providing a profoundly diverse range of habitats. The marine reserve receives high visitation due to the excellent diving opportunities. It contains several tropical species that are rarely found elsewhere in New Zealand.

The open coast running from Cape Brett to Bream Tail is a complex coastline of exposed rock and cliffs interspersed by a number of medium- to coarse-grained sandy beaches, spits and estuarine harbours. The coastline is dominated by steep cliffs of high-resistance greywacke that are exposed to the full fetch of the Pacific, although the prevailing winds are offshore. Small islands and rock stacks are scattered along this coast, including a chain of very small islands on the seaward side of Taiharuru Estuary.

Whangarei Harbour has some significant harbour features and estuarine habitats, ranging from upper harbour mud and sand flats to deep channels, islands, extensive shellfish sand banks and deep holes near the harbour entrance. Whangarei Harbour Marine Reserve comprises two sites—Waikaraka and around Motukaroro (Passage) Island at Reotahi.

The establishment of a marine recreational park between Cape Brett, Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve and Bream Head has been proposed as a means of making the most of the spectacular coastline to provide multiple sustainable economic benefits for Northland. The intention of a marine recreational park is to align Māori values of long-term sustainability and kaitiakitanga with enhanced conservation outcomes and recreation opportunities.

Visitor use is moderate to high in this Place, especially in summer when camping and boating are very popular, along with the active use of the many sandy beaches for fishing, swimming and surfing. Snorkelling and scuba diving are also popular along the coast, particularly at the Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve. There are four camping grounds administered by the Department, all of which are heavily used over the height of the summer months, especially since many private camps have been converted into coastal subdivisions. Tracks and walkways through many of the reserves supplement those provided by the local authority. The Te Araroa Trail follows close to the coast for its entire length through this Place. The attractions and activities are primarily used by locals, but domestic and international tourism is increasing.

The Whangarei community shows high commitment and a strong desire to be actively involved in conservation activities. This is evidenced by the growing list of community conservation groups, which include, as at 2013, Bream Head Conservation Trust, Bream Bay Coast Care Trust, Friends of Limestone Matakoho Island, Ngunguru Sandspit Protection Society, Pukenui Forest Restoration Trust, Tutukaka Landcare, Whangarei Heads Landcare and iwi/hapū groups, including the Ruapekapeka Pa Management Trust.

Whangarei, the major urban area and administrative centre for the Northland region, is the location for principal sites of industrial processing. It includes the only oil refinery in New Zealand, a large forestry port, cement and fertiliser works, transport systems, and other planned or existing activities adjacent to Whangarei Harbour such as at Marsden Point and lower Port Road. All of these have the potential to cause adverse impacts on natural and historic values if not closely monitored. Three pipelines carrying gas and petroleum products from the Marsden Point Oil Refinery pass through land administered by the Department, and require ongoing inspection and maintenance. The Marsden Point Oil Refinery, deep water export port and new manufacturing plants lie immediately adjacent to recreation areas, kiwi and shorebird

habitat, sites important for biodiversity, historical and archaeological sites, and marine reserves. Extensive flat land and improved transport links with Auckland are creating opportunities for economic growth that are increasing pressure on natural values and the types of visitor experience.

14.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

14.2.1 OUTCOME

The Whangaruru–Mangawhai Coast Place is a diverse and highly used coastline centred on Whangarei, where the population and industrial and economic activity in Northland are concentrated. The Department works collaboratively with tangata whenua, other agencies, business interests and the community to achieve a net conservation benefit wherever possible.

The Department actively engages with tangata whenua in achieving their conservation, educational and cultural goals, such as access to resources, including native bird pelts, whale bone and kiore, through collaborative relationships at places that are special to them. Treaty settlements create new opportunities for collaborative management.

The Icon Visitor Destination – Ruapekapeka Pa Historic Reserve – is managed by tangata whenua through the Ruapekapeka Pa Management Trust. Interpretation reflects its significance in being the final battle site of the war in the north and in the design of other pā sites throughout the passage of the New Zealand Wars.

PTA-free sites remain disease free, the impacts of PTA are reduced within infected sites and the spread of PTA is slowed in all kauri areas.

Opportunities to work with other agencies on conservation of urban reserves, such as Onoke Scenic Reserve, have been explored.

Aircraft are rarely encountered in this Place.

Mimiwhangata and Whangaruru

Mimiwhangata and Whangaruru Scenic Reserves are Gateway Destinations—popular places that demonstrate integrated conservation management. Here, complete catchments are managed so that threatened plants and animals such as kiwi and pāteke/brown teal flourish. The archaeological landscape, including selected pā, gardening sites and middens, are protected and interpreted. Farming systems that are sympathetic with the protection of natural and archaeological sites are in place. The quality of the marine environment and the health of the inshore islands are improved. Visitors enjoy this experience through a network of generally easy-grade walking tracks that provide access to coastal and marine recreation, and include interpretation, and educational opportunities. Many stay at the basic facility, family-oriented campgrounds at Puriri Bay, Waikahoa Bay and Otamure Bay, or the built accommodation at Mimiwhangata. These sites become very busy over the summer holiday season, but at other times visitors can enjoy the peace and tranquillity of these very special places. Russell Forest is part of a priority ecosystem where tangata whenua, the community and the Department are working together to progressively restore its natural values, including populations of threatened species. The forest is a backdrop to this coastal holiday paradise, offers road access to sheltered picnic sites at Punaruku and more difficult walks in kauri forest to the Ngaiotonga Saddle, with occasional spectacular views of the coast.

Offshore nature reserves

The condition of the natural ecosystems and habitats of the Poor Knights Islands, Hen and Chickens and Bream Islands Nature Reserves continues to improve as a result of collaboration between Ngāti Wai and the Department. The islands provide a safe haven and refuge for their threatened plants and animals. The islands are pest free and the potential for reinvasion is tightly controlled through advocacy and biosecurity standards, including intensive weed control and surveillance. As a result, all islands have secure populations of native species and are suitable for the reintroduction of species that were once found there. Any landing on these islands is by permit only following an evaluation of potential benefits and impacts, and subject to stringent biosecurity conditions. Mauitaha and Aarara Islands still retain kiore through a management agreement with Ngāti Wai and the Department.

Tutukaka coast

With the support of communities and tangata whenua, the Tutukaka coast, from Sandy Bay to Taiharuru, continues to be ranked in international ecotourism surveys as one of the top coastal visitor destination sites in the world. Drawing on the attraction of the world-renowned diving opportunities around the Poor Knights Islands, sustainable ecotourism ventures highlight the spectacular scenery, coastal walkways and easily accessible beaches. The character of the predominantly natural landscape is enhanced, with a flourishing coastal ecosystem supporting threatened plants and animals. A family-oriented campground at Otamure Bay is a Gateway Destination that highlights the values of the surrounding marine environment and complements visitor accommodation provided by the private sector on private land. The Whananaki to Ngunguru section of the Te Araroa Trail is a popular and highly used section of the trail. The Department works with the community to protect the significant values of this coastline.

Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary

The Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary corridors are expanded to additional areas of native habitat beyond Whangaruru to Bream Head, as a result of collaborative arrangements with landowners, and community and landcare groups.

Whangarei Heads

The Bream Head and Manaia Ridge Scenic Reserves are ecological gems where visitors get a real feel for what the nearby offshore islands are like without accessing them. Species from the neighbouring island nature reserves have returned naturally, such as kākā and kōpara/bellbird (*Anthornis melanura*) or have been assisted through translocation programmes, for example pōpokatea/whitehead (*Mohoua albicilla*) and toutouwai/North Island robins (*Petroica longipes*). Bream Head Scenic Reserve is a Gateway Destination where visitors also enjoy coastal vistas, coastal defence historic features and pā sites from a network of generally easy-grade walking tracks. The secluded Peach Cove Hut enables a special experience of coastal biodiversity. Opportunities for visitors to participate in education, research and restoration programmes are provided by a community trust, community groups and concessionaires. In these reserves, as well as at Bream Islands Scenic Reserve and Ocean Beach, the community and tangata whenua are working together with the Department to restore and manage natural, cultural, recreational and historic values.

Bream Bay and Mangawhai

Private landowners, tangata whenua, the community and the Department are actively restoring ecosystems in this area, enabling species such as kākā and kōpara/bellbird to

return to the mainland from the nearby islands. The Te Araroa Trail and another popular walkway pass near/through it, providing spectacular views of the islands of the Hauraki Gulf, Bream Bay and Bream Head.

The Mangawhai, Waipu and Ruakaka Wildlife Refuges are features of this coast, and are highly valued by the community and visitors. Mangawhai Wildlife Refuge is a priority ecosystem unit and is also highly valued by tangata whenua. The specific needs of the wildlife, especially taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern, are given particular consideration by tangata whenua and the community, and are actively managed. The community is enthusiastically involved in the protection and enhancement of the dunelands of Bream Bay and Mangawhai. The scenic backdrop of Mareretu Forest is actively managed by the community, tangata whenua and the Department as a thriving native forest supporting threatened plants and animals.

Public access to the beaches is via access points managed in collaboration with Whangarei District Council and Northland Regional Council to protect the foredunes. New recreation opportunities have been developed to enable increasing numbers of visitors to enjoy basic-facility campgrounds, walking and cycle trails, bird-watching hides, and guided tours. There is a collaborative approach between the Department, tangata whenua, local authorities and communities to ensure that recreational, residential and industrial expansion does not compromise and, wherever possible, enhances the natural, cultural and already established recreational values of the area. The long, unbroken stretch of white sandy beach at Bream Bay and Mangawhai, and the vista across the water to the islands and Bream Head are valued, enjoyed and appreciated by all.

Marine Protected Areas

The ecosystems at the internationally ranked diving destination at the Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve and the Whangarei Harbour Marine Reserve have recovered, and both sites are enjoyed by many who strongly defend their values. The marine reserves sustain diverse populations of native plants and animals. Their conservation values are recognised and valued for their contribution to the biodiversity of the wider marine environment. Visitors leave the reserves with an enhanced understanding and appreciation of the value of no-take reserves and long-term protection of the marine environment. Public enjoyment and scientific research are encouraged in marine reserves.

Human activities in marine reserves and on adjoining public conservation lands are not detrimental to scientific study or conservation values, and do not detract from the visitor experience. The Department continues to advocate for the appropriate use of land within marine reserve catchments to reduce land-based effects on marine reserves. Biosecurity measures are established where practicable and maintained to prevent the establishment of viable populations of new marine pests within marine reserves.

Through tangata whenua leadership and community support, a marine reserve and complementary taipure or maitaitai are established at Mimiwhangata. Further areas on the Whangarei coastline have been identified for marine conservation initiatives and everyone enjoys a restored food-basket as a result. In conjunction with regional and district councils, tangata whenua, the community and tourism organisations, a marine recreational park is investigated to protect, enhance and increase sustainable coastal and marine tourism and recreation opportunities.

14.2.2 POLICIES

- 14.2.2.1 Work collaboratively with tangata whenua to achieve conservation gains that can also assist them in meeting their cultural, economic and education aspirations, including protection of cultural values and increased conservation knowledge.
- 14.2.2.2 Work collaboratively with tangata whenua in the protection of recorded and new sites of cultural and historic heritage on public conservation land.
- 14.2.2.3 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land in this Place are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.
- 14.2.2.4 Manage Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary with landowners, tangata whenua and communities to effectively control animal threats including dogs.
- 14.2.2.5 Promote the provision of kiwi aversion training for dogs.
- 14.2.2.6 Undertake advocacy and conservation law compliance, with particular emphasis on wandering dogs in kiwi and shorebird habitats, and fishing in marine reserves.
- 14.2.2.7 Encourage community research initiatives for more effective management of the natural, historic, cultural and recreational values of the Place.
- 14.2.2.8 Introduce and maintain PTA (kauri dieback disease) biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control and the adoption of PTA hygiene standards; and work with infrastructure companies, roading contractors, concessionaires and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt PTA hygiene standards for their people, machinery and equipment.
- 14.2.2.9 Seek to improve water quality and ecological values of Mimiwhangata Scenic Reserve and Whangaruru North Head Scenic Reserve with intensive predator control programmes and revegetation of riparian and coastal zones.
- 14.2.2.10 Vehicle access will be permitted to day visitor areas.
- 14.2.2.11 Investigate opportunities for off-road vehicle clubs to access, in a managed way, sites at Mimiwhangata and Whangaruru subject to Part Three Motor Vehicle policies 16.3.1.1 to 16.3.1.11.
- 14.2.2.12 Manage island biosecurity in accordance with the Island Biosecurity Plan (2004)¹¹ or any subsequent biosecurity plan.
- 14.2.2.13 Work cooperatively with Maritime New Zealand in their management of the lighthouses on Taranga, Coppermine and Tawhiti Rahi islands.
- 14.2.2.14 Increase public understanding and appreciation of the island nature reserves without the need to visit the islands; for example, by web information.
- 14.2.2.15 Consider applications for access to the island nature reserves for management, scientific and educational research on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the following criteria:

¹¹ Department of Conservation 2004: Island Biosecurity Plan, Northland Conservancy, Department of Conservation, Whangarei, New Zealand.

- a) the research is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place; and
 - b) the research is consistent with the Department’s Island Strategy 2010¹²; and
 - c) benefits of the research to island ecosystems and species conservation outweigh any adverse effects; and
 - d) tangata whenua are recognised as kaitiaki.
- 14.2.2.16 Through interagency collaboration and application of the Northland Reserve Bylaws 2007, exclude recreational vehicle use on dunelands and advocate for the beach area between the high- and low-tide marks to be for pedestrians and wildlife, especially shorebirds, to support the outcomes of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010¹³.
- 14.2.2.17 Carry out advocacy and compliance to ensure that the values in marine protected areas are protected.
- 14.2.2.18 Work with tangata whenua, the community, fishers and the tourism industry to increase awareness of marine biodiversity values, manage any adverse impacts on the marine ecosystem, and promote positive involvement in, protection and enjoyment of marine protected areas.
- 14.2.2.19 Advocate and work with other agencies, tangata whenua, boat and ship operators, and the community to manage the threats of bioinvasion in order to reduce or mitigate any harmful effects on the marine environment that are the responsibility of the Department.
- 14.2.2.20 Contribute to any investigation by the Northland Regional Council for the establishment of a marine recreational park between Cape Brett, Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve and Bream Head to achieve enhanced protection for marine mammals, the Poor Knights Islands and marine reserve, and wildlife.
- 14.2.2.21 Actively engage with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies and the community in conservation management in this Place, and encourage and support conservation initiatives by tangata whenua and the community, particularly those that:
- a) restore native habitats on public conservation land;
 - b) enhance ecological functioning of public conservation land;
 - c) control or eradicate pest plants and animals at priority ecosystem units;
 - d) enable translocations of threatened species;
 - e) advocate for control of animal pest threats, shorebird protection, enhanced biosecurity and new recreation opportunities.

¹² Department of Conservation 2010: The Island Strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation. Ecosystems Management Group, Department of Conservation, Christchurch, New Zealand.

¹³ New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

14.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 14.2.3.1 The Northland Reserve Bylaws 2007 have been extended to include reserves not already covered in the Whangarei area.
- 14.2.3.2 The implementation of conservation actions in priority ecosystem units and species sites has begun.
- 14.2.3.3 A strategy for integrated island management that provides a framework for consistently managing the islands in this Place.
- 14.2.3.4 Effective control measures are in place for all PTA-infected sites.
- 14.2.3.5 Maintain the Te Araroa Trail to tramping track standards with interpretation at high use sites describing ecological and historic values.
- 14.2.3.6 Taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern population is stabilised.
- 14.2.3.7 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place: Bream Head, Bream Islands, Marotere Islands, Poor Knights Island Group, Taranga Island and Whangaruru North Head Scenic Reserve.
- 14.2.3.8 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway: *Hibiscus richardsonii*, *Anaticola* sp., and *Anas chlorotis*.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 14.2.3.9 The establishment of a new campground in the Bream Bay area has been investigated and reported on.
- 14.2.3.10 Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary has been extended to include public conservation lands south of Bream Bay.
- 14.2.3.11 Number of taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern breeding pairs has doubled from 2014.
- 14.2.3.12 Priority ecosystem units and species are demonstrating improved health according to ongoing monitoring.
- 14.2.3.13 The satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them in maintaining cultural relationships with their taonga has improved according to independent surveys.
- 14.2.3.14 Public participation in recreation on public conservation lands in the Whangaruru–Mangawhai Place has increased, according to independent surveys.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 14.2.3.15 Taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern numbers exceed 100 by maintaining protection at key coastal sites through active tangata whenua and community support.
 - 14.2.3.16 Priority ecosystem unit sites and species are demonstrating improved health according to ongoing monitoring.
-

15 Mangakahia–Tutamoe–Tangihua Place

15.1 Description

This Place (see Volume II, Map 5.10) forms the land-locked central hill country of Northland and covers the upper catchments of waterways that flow into each of the main harbour systems. Nga Kiekie Whawhanui a Uenuku Scenic Reserve, southeast of Kaikohe, acts as a watershed for the Bay of Islands, and Hokianga and Kaipara harbours. The Wairua, Mangakahia and Manganui rivers all converge into the Wairoa River, which is the largest tributary of the whole Kaipara Harbour catchment.

Mangakahia Forest, whose peak—Te Tarai o Rahiri (the topknot of Rahiri)—has one of the highest altitudes in Northland (697 m), contains numerous exposed rocky bluffs and razor-backed ridges. The area is significant for all those who claim descent from Rahiri. This forest is largely modified kauri, broadleaf, podocarp forest, although there are areas of unmodified forest. At higher altitudes, tawa (*Beilschmiedia tawa*), a relatively uncommon forest type in Northland, is dominant. The forest has limited recreational use because of difficult access.

The Tangihua Forest is a very prominent landmark in the region, with sequences of modified kauri, broadleaf, podocarp forest. The forest is valued by local trampers and hunters with outstanding views from the Horokaka Repeater. The Tangihua Hut is a basic backcountry hut used by those who prefer basic facilities and a quiet backcountry experience. Numerous school groups use the Tangihua outdoor education lodge. Secured legal public access to the forest is limited to an accessway on the southern side of the forest.

Kaihu Forest covers a distinctive high-altitude plateau rising to Tutamoe (770 m), the second highest point in Northland. The forest is modified broadleaf, podocarp, and kauri, with areas of unmodified kauri. The distinctive plateau swamp forest contains emergent rimu, northern rātā and pukatea (*Laurelia novae-zelandiae*) over a canopy of kiekie (*Freycinetia baueriana*), piritā/supplejack (*Ripogonum scandens*), tōwai and maire tawake/swamp maire (*Syzygium maire*). Several plants that are uncommon in Northland are restricted to these high-altitude habitats. The lower slopes contain regenerating forest and the relics of early kauri logging. Tutamoe is a significant site for Ngāti Whātua and the summit can be reached by a maintained track.

Marlborough Forest occupies a gently sloping plateau covered in modified kauri, podocarp, broadleaf forest with a central core of unmodified forest. The forest supports a good population of kiwi. Its plateau, which is dominated by tōwai (*Weinmannia silvicola*) is an extension of the Tutamoe Range. It retains relics of old logging operations but there are no tracks through its interior.

North and west of Whangarei are several significant forest areas, such as the 325 ha Motatau Forest Reserve, which, since 1996, has been managed as a mainland island by Ngāti Hine who also contribute to catchment management and biodiversity protection. Other forested reserves in the area, including Riponui Scenic Reserve, Aponga Settlement Scenic Reserve and Purua Scenic Reserve, are part of the intensively managed Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary (see also 14 Whangaruru–Mangawhai Coast Place). This special Place contains one of Northland's most important wetlands—the priority ecosystem unit Wairua River Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve, a remnant wetland of the once-extensive Hikurangi Swamp. This reserve is notable for supporting populations of two distinct nationally threatened plants; one of these, *Pittosporum obcordatum*, is the second largest population in the country, while the other, *Hebe* aff. *bishopiana*, is a species of hebe that is new to science and was

discovered for the first time in this wetland in 1991. These wetlands and river systems are important habitat for tuna; shortfin eel (*Anguila australis*) and longfin eel (*Anguila dieffenbachii*), whose migratory routes may be obstructed by flood control hydro pump stations on the Wairoa River and its tributaries.

On the western side of Whangarei City, Whangarei District Council manages a forested water supply catchment, and scenic and recreation reserves, together with showgrounds, historic buildings and a regional museum. Contiguous with this area is a relatively unmodified lowland podocarp, hardwood forest, with scattered mature kauri, stands of taraire, tōtara, kahikatea, hard beech and kawaka, and king fern, which is managed by the Department. Threatened species include pekapeka/long-tailed bats, North Island brown kiwi and kūkupa/New Zealand pigeon. Miromiro/pied tit, kākā, kākāriki and tūī, and a variety of introduced bird species are also present. Goats are a threat to ecosystem health and a priority for control. Known collectively as Pukenui Forest, this is a priority ecosystem unit. A community trust assists with management of the area.

The nearby, easily accessible Maungatapere Hill Scenic Reserve covers a prominent symmetrical basalt dome and contains taraire broadleaf forest with tōtara and mixed podocarps, and with maire tawake/swamp maire in its crater. A pā site and pits are found nearby.

The Manganui River complex is the best example of a naturally functioning backwater oxbow riverine flood forest system in Northland and contains substantial areas of original floodplain that still functions as a natural wetland. This is a departmental priority ecosystem unit. The complex supports a diverse range of habitats, from riverine, which includes rare flood forest associations, to forested hill slopes. A high density and diversity of waterbirds utilise the river ecosystem, including threatened and regionally significant species. A number of nationally and regionally rare species of plants are present at the site, including possibly the northernmost occurrence of *Crassula ruamahanga*, narrow-leaved houhere (*Houheria angustifolia*), weeping māpou (*Myrsine divaricata*) and *Carex gaudichaudiana*. The reserve area is a soil site of regional importance, containing good examples of Whakapara soils, which are uncommon.

Communities that interface with the public conservation land in this Place are rural by nature. Positive relationships exist between the Department and its neighbours, especially where landcare groups have been formed. Landowners associated with Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary continue to be particularly supportive and helpful. The Northland Fish and Game Council manages the Wairua wetland, and the owners and managers of Hancock Forests are supportive of work on kiwi protection.

The Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group was initiated by Te Uri o Hau, who called upon central, regional and local government agencies and community stakeholders to assist in managing Kaipara Harbour and its catchment. The group recognises the challenge of managing the competing and sometimes conflicting uses of Kaipara Harbour's resources. The vision of the group is a healthy and productive Kaipara Harbour: *Ka mau tonu nga taonga tapu o nga matua tupuna koinei nga taonga tuku iho, na te Atua—Hold fast to the treasures of the ancestors for they are treasures that have been handed down to us by God.* The Department is represented on the steering committee of the group.

15.2 Outcomes, policies and milestones

15.2.1 OUTCOME

Positive working relationships between tangata whenua, councils, landowners, business, communities and the Department have enabled the riverine systems, forests and wetland habitats of the Northern Wairoa and Hikurangi floodplain to thrive as diverse and healthy functioning ecosystems. Public access to these ecosystems is improved and their diverse values are enjoyed and appreciated by all.

The priority ecosystem units of Wairua River Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve, and the associated nearby Papakuri Scenic Reserve and Otakairangi Swamp have been progressively restored as healthy functioning wetlands that support threatened plants and animals, including healthy tuna/eel populations, and are valued by the community and tangata whenua.

The quality of the Manganui River complex priority ecosystem unit is substantially improved, and the waterway and floodplain is valued, protected and appreciated for its natural, cultural and recreational values. The forested catchments that flow from the peaks of Tangihua, Tutamoe and Mangakahia through the typical Northland rural landscapes contain restored wetlands and riparian zones that connect with Kaipara Harbour.

Pukenui Forest, which is a priority ecosystem unit, is restored in collaboration with Whangarei District Council and the Pukenui Forest Trust, and is a focus of conservation education interest in the Whangarei community. The network of walking tracks throughout the forest including the Pukenui forest loop track and Taraire loop track are upgraded, enabling visitors to enjoy the natural, cultural and historic values of the area.

Maungatapere Hill Scenic Reserve is an easily accessible priority ecosystem unit and forest remnant, where the community and tangata whenua actively work with the Department to enhance the natural and cultural values of the area. A basic walking track is provided.

Kaihu Forest, a priority ecosystem unit and prominent landscape feature of the northern Kaipara catchment, is managed by the Department with the support of tangata whenua and the community. Research into the history of the forest, and the surrounding areas, leads to increased community appreciation and understanding of and support for forest restoration. The walking track to the summit of Tutamoe is a 'must do' experience for visitors to the area.

A positive working relationship is maintained with members of the Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group and the quality of water in waterways flowing into Kaipara Harbour is improved.

The community and other agencies, supported by the Department, are actively protecting water quality and freshwater biodiversity in the Bay of Islands catchments of this Place and this includes catchment management strategies of iwi/hapū.

Opportunities to develop collaborative management of Te Tarai o Rahiri are achieved through Treaty settlement. These forests are enjoyed and appreciated by the community for their recreational and natural values via a track system that caters predominantly for backcountry users and recreational hunters. Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary is extended to areas in the west and south that have traditionally held kiwi

in the past, and links with other lands administered by the Department and communities.

Tangihua Forest is a priority ecosystem unit managed with the support of tangata whenua and the community. Tracks in the forest are maintained and well signposted.

The Tangihua Lions Trust Lodge at Tangihua Forest is fully utilised by a range of education providers as an integral part of their environmental studies and recreation.

Kauri sites remain free of PTA.

Aircraft are rarely encountered in this Place.

15.2.2

POLICIES

- 15.2.2.1 Actively manage biodiversity threats to priority ecosystem units in partnership with tangata whenua, statutory agencies and communities.
- 15.2.2.2 Improve knowledge of the natural and historic values through survey and inventory to ensure effective prioritisation of future management.
- 15.2.2.3 Work in partnership with rural landowners, tangata whenua, the Northland Fish and Game Council and local communities to protect and enhance priority ecosystem unit wetlands throughout this Place, such as Wairua River Wildlife Management Reserve, Manganui River and Otakairangi Swamp.
- 15.2.2.4 Encourage supportive measures that contribute to the aims of the Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group.
- 15.2.2.5 Retire the riparian margins of the upper Wairua River catchment (flood control land) from grazing and revegetate by working with landowners and local authorities.
- 15.2.2.6 Advocate for significant reductions in hydro/pump station obstructions to tuna/eel movements in the Wairua catchment which is an important habitat and migratory route for tuna/eels.
- 15.2.2.7 Introduce and maintain PTA biosecurity and forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points and in all visitor information; and work with pig hunters and pig hunting clubs to raise awareness of and prevent the spread of PTA by targeted pig control.
- 15.2.2.8 Aircraft landings at any location on public conservation land in this Place are subject to the zoning on Map 4, and relevant provisions in Part Three.
- 15.2.2.9 Assist the NZ Walking Access Commission in negotiating legal access to the Tangihua Hut area of Tangihua Forest.
- 15.2.2.10 Seek opportunities for partnerships with organisations interested in maintenance of all tracks in the Tangihua Forest to tramping track standard.
- 15.2.2.11 Support local authorities and landowners in developing best practice management to prevent flooding and for soil stabilisation.

15.2.3

MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 15.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place have been

- completed: Pukenui Forest and Wairua River Wildlife Management Reserve.
- 15.2.3.2 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway have been completed: *Hebe* aff. *bishopiana* (Hikurangi Swamp).
- 15.2.3.3 Wairua wetland is enclosed by stock-proof fencing.
- 15.2.3.4 Through community engagement, goats have been eradicated from Pukenui Forest and control has been undertaken to reduce other animal pests to below 5% population indexing.
- 15.2.3.5 Effective measures are in place to control PTA.
- 15.2.3.6 Existing tracks and recreational opportunities are maintained in Tangihua Forest.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 15.2.3.7 The Department is supporting the Pukenui Forest Trust in achieving a high degree of animal pest control over a large portion of the Pukenui Forest and possums, rats, and mustelids in the forest are maintained to below 5% population indexing.
- 15.2.3.8 Conservation actions for priority ecosystem units and species management prescriptions are underway.
- 15.2.3.9 The quality of the Department's engagement with key associates has improved according to independent surveys.
- 15.2.3.10 Partial upgrades of Pukenui Forest loop tracks are completed.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 15.2.3.11 Priority ecosystem units and species are demonstrating improved health through ongoing monitoring.
-

Part Three

16 Specific policy requirements for Northland

16.1 General

This section implements the requirements of the Conservation General Policy 2005 and other legislative requirements. The policies of this section apply to all public conservation lands and waters covered by this CMS. Where the provisions in Part Three are different from the provisions in Part Two—Places, the more specific provisions in Part Two prevail.

Changes to this CMS may be required from time to time during its term. This may require changes to be made by the amendment or review processes under sections 17H or 17I of the Conservation Act 1987. These situations may include where additional land area is to be managed under a CMS, or limitations changed on an activity that occurs on land or waters managed under the CMS.

16.1.1 POLICIES—GENERAL

16.1.1.1 In interpreting the policies in this strategy the words ‘will’, ‘should’ and ‘may’ have the following meanings:

- a) policies where the legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions ‘will’ be undertaken.
- b) policies that carry with them a strong expectation of outcome without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister, and other decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions ‘should’ be undertaken.
- c) policies intended to allow flexibility in decision-making state that a particular action or actions ‘may’ be undertaken.

16.1.1.2 Manage public conservation lands and waters to be consistent with the purpose for which they are held.

16.1.1.3 Manage public conservation lands and waters to be consistent with the outcomes, objectives, and policies of this CMS.

16.1.1.4 Adopt an integrated management approach to the application of this CMS and the cross-boundary management of other public conservation lands and waters.

16.1.1.5 Ensure the classification or statutory purpose of public conservation lands and waters reflects its values, such as the Pouto Conservation (Stewardship) Area.

16.1.1.6 Where a change to the CMS is required to impose or increase limits on any use or activity or include new species or land, the relevant process under the provisions of the Conservation Act 1987 will be followed.

16.1.1.7 Restrict or close access to reserves consistent with the conditions and restrictions of use of the reserve, and to conservation areas where necessary to:

- a) protect natural, historic or cultural heritage;

- b) protect public safety;
 - c) control biosecurity risks;
 - d) enable the eradication of pests using aerial bait operations;
 - e) allow military exercise operations;
 - f) protect a species, or a historic or cultural site; or
 - g) allow tree felling.
- 16.1.1.8 When undertaking work or activities that are covered by Appendix 1, determine if they meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemption from land use consents.
- 16.1.1.9 Establish or review bylaws and regulations where necessary to enable better management of public conservation lands and waters (including departmental wharves) in Northland.
-

16.2 Authorisations (General)

Unless authorised by other legislation¹⁴, anyone wishing to undertake an activity for specific gain or reward (including carrying out a trade, occupation or business) on public conservation lands and waters, or to undertake other activities such as research or collection of resources of any kind, or the construction of a structure, requires an authorisation. The most common authorisation is given as a concession under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987. The Department aims to allow for a range of authorisations that are consistent with relevant legislation and policy, the protection of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage, and the recreational settings and planned outcomes for specific Places. Authorisations can add value to visitors' experiences by connecting them with natural, historic and cultural heritage, and providing opportunities to visit places that may not otherwise be easily accessible. They can also offer those living in isolated communities the opportunity for local business ventures.

There are a number of opportunities for high-quality guided walks, coach tours and ecological interpretation journeys.

There has been research into the relationship between user numbers, activities and people's behaviour, and the environmental impacts they have¹⁵. Attempts have been made to identify the sensitivity of different landscapes to recreational impacts and the thresholds at which these impacts begin to occur. However, there are still considerable gaps in our knowledge. There are currently no areas in Northland where formal concession opportunity limits have been placed on activities, although a number of areas are monitored to ensure that adverse effects are not evolving (e.g. number and location of beehives at Te Paki, visitor 'hotspots' such as Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua). The Department is committed to ensuring that sound methods are used to measure social and physical effects to ensure that decisions around concessions and their effects are fair and informed.

In considering an application for a concession, the Minister must take into account a number of statutory criteria. These include the purpose for which the land is held,

¹⁴ Examples are the Electricity Act 1992 and the Cadastral Survey Act 2002.

¹⁵ Kearsley, G. W., Russell, S., Croy, W. G., & Mitchell, R. D. (2001). Recreational and tourist use of New Zealand's accessible natural areas: activities, motivations and social impacts. Research Paper No. 9. Centre for Tourism, University of Otago.

effects of the activity, mitigation measures and (if a concession application has been notified), public submissions. The aim is to ensure that the use is compatible with the protection of natural and historic resources and, where appropriate, with recreational use.

Often, concessions can be mutually beneficial for the Department and the concessionaire in providing good land management. Grazing is an example of this where it is required for fire and weed control, archaeological management purposes, or to facilitate open space recreation.

Within Northland, the Department administers a number of leases, licences, easements and permits for the use of areas managed by the Department under the Conservation Act and the Reserves Act. The most common applications are for grazing, beehives and telecommunication sites. Applications for community facilities such as a lease for a fire station and an easement for a coastguard radio station have also been granted.

A key issue in assessing applications for a structure or facility is that a concession cannot be granted if the Minister considers that the activity could reasonably be undertaken in another location outside public conservation land where the potential adverse effects would be significantly less.

The Department monitors activities occurring on conservation lands to ensure that they are authorised by a concession and compliant with it.

The monitoring of authorised activities is required due to the potential effects on natural resources and on the experience of other visitors to those Places. Monitoring may also be required for authorised activities in areas that are rarely visited or are managed for remote experiences. Where authorised activity is beginning to reach, or has already reached, the environmental and/or social carrying capacity of a Place, the Department may limit the amount of activity that can occur in that Place.

16.2.1 POLICIES—AUTHORISATIONS (CGP 11)

- 16.2.1.1 Issue authorisations in accordance with the relevant legislation and provisions of the Conservation General Policy 2005, and the General Policy for National Parks where applicable.
- 16.2.1.2 Monitor authorised activities and their effects, including cumulative effects, on a regular and ongoing basis.
- 16.2.1.3 Establish limits for authorisations where demand approaches or exceeds the environmental or social carrying capacity of a Place and/or cumulative effects are becoming unacceptable, and manage through an allocative process.
- 16.2.1.4 Should not grant authorisations which are inconsistent with the objectives in Part One, or the outcomes and policies for Places in Part Two—Places or the policies in Part Three.
- 16.2.1.5 The following criteria will be used when considering applications to erect or retain structures or utilities or for the adaptive reuse of existing buildings on public conservation lands and waters:
 - a) The purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) the outcomes and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) whether the structure could reasonably be located outside public conservation lands;

- d) whether the structure could reasonably be located in another location where there are fewer potential adverse effects;
 - e) whether the structure adversely affects conservation and recreational values;
 - f) whether the structure is readily available for public use;
 - g) whether the structure is consistent with the visitor management zone in Map 3 and as described in Appendix 11;
 - h) whether the structure enhances the visitor experience;
 - i) whether the activity promotes or enhances the retention of a historic building;
 - j) whether the activity is a suitable adaptive reuse of an existing building; and
 - k) consistent with policies 16.6.1.1 to 16.6.1.7.
-

16.3 Vehicles

Vehicle use is part of the range of recreation opportunities that are only allowed on public conservation lands and waters where identified in this CMS. In this context, vehicles include motorised and non-motorised land vehicles; fixed-wing, helicopter and non-motorised aircraft; and motorised and non-motorised watercraft. Further discussion about vehicle use can be found in Part Two—Places.

16.3.1 **MOTORISED VEHICLES** (other than aircraft and watercraft and electric power-assisted pedal cycles not exceeding 300 watts)

Motorised vehicle use is not generally allowed off formed roads on public conservation land. Given the fragile nature of many of Northland’s conservation lands, opportunities for the recreational use of motorised four-wheel drive vehicles, all terrain vehicles and motorbikes are limited. The general rule in Northland is that the use of vehicles should be restricted to tracks formed for vehicle use, roads and designated areas, which may include car parks, campgrounds and specific mountain bike tracks.

Requests for off-road use and vehicle use on unformed paper roads that bisect public conservation land are often received; however, in most cases, this is incompatible with the statutory purpose for which the land is held, the use or classification of the area, and its natural and historic values.

Where opportunities for off-road vehicle use are identified, the careful management of all recreational initiatives offered is paramount, with management strategies addressing protection and harmonious and safe use by all.

Northland’s sand dunes are renowned for their natural, cultural, historic and recreational values. Vehicle use on dunes administered by the Department will generally not be allowed except at Te Paki Stream, where there is established historical vehicle access onto Ninety Mile Beach (Te Oneroa-a-Tohe). On other dune areas, such as at Pouto, the Department will work with tangata whenua, agencies and the community to limit vehicle use to designated accessways and to manage conflicts with natural, recreational, cultural and historic values.

Biosecurity risks may be associated with vehicle use through the transportation of water, soil, mud and animal or plant materials, e.g. spreading weeds, Argentine ants (*Linepithema humile*) and PTA (kauri dieback disease). At vulnerable sites it may be necessary to restrict vehicle access to reduce the risk of contamination and new incursions.

In 2007, bylaws under the Reserves Act 1977 were established in some areas to help manage some of our most popular reserves better—to help ensure that everyone who uses them and lives near them can continue to enjoy them. The bylaws generally prohibit vehicles in a range of highly used and popular recreation scenic and historic reserves unless the person is authorised by legislation, there is a sign indicating that it is allowed or there is a permanently surfaced area suitable for vehicle access. The intention is to extend the bylaws' coverage to all reserves in Northland and to establish regulations for lands managed under the Conservation Act 1987.

The purpose of the Freedom Camping Act 2011 is to encourage responsible freedom camping while reducing the negative effects of freedom camping, by enabling land managers to ensure freedom campers camp in appropriate places. Campers also need to be responsible with their refuse, including human waste. Freedom camping is permitted on public conservation land, except in areas where it is expressly prohibited or restricted to self-contained vehicles. Freedom camping is prohibited in the following areas, including but not restricted to: Cape Reinga, Paxton Point Conservation Area, Tapotupotu, Hongi Hika Recreation Reserve and Pitt Street Recreation Reserve. Restrictions on freedom camping on public conservation land will only generally apply to areas (normally near roads) where there has been a history of problems caused by inappropriate freedom camping or there is a conservation management reason that warrants restricting camping (e.g. ensuring equitable access to a site or where sensitive native species are present).

POLICIES—MOTORISED VEHICLES—GENERAL (CGP 9.5(b))

- 16.3.1.1 Should allow motorised vehicles only on roads purposefully formed and maintained for vehicle use and in car parks on public conservation land unless otherwise stated in Part Two—Places. Note that any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes, and sand groomers) taken onto public conservation land must be registered and licensed. Access may be restricted at any time in the following situations:
- a) there is a health and safety risk;
 - b) there is a fire risk;
 - c) adverse effects are evident on conservation resources;
 - d) priorities change for the maintenance of the formed road or designated vehicular route;
 - e) where damage to the structure of the road is evident or likely; or
 - f) there is risk of the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease) and other biosecurity risks.
- 16.3.1.2 Consider provision for motorised vehicles outside areas provided for by Policy 16.3.1.1 only where it is identified at sites listed in Part Two—Places and subject to Policy 16.3.1.4.
- 16.3.1.3 May allow motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters for the construction and/or maintenance of utilities, farming operations, the maintenance of visitor facilities, and restoration activities.
- 16.3.1.4 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the purpose for which the land is held;
 - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, route or site is located;

- c) is consistent with the visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 11;
 - d) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the road, route or site and surrounding natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised;
 - e) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users are avoided, or otherwise minimised (including conflicts between vehicles, mountain bikes and horses);
 - f) risks of fire and biosecurity are avoided;
 - g) the ongoing management implications of providing vehicle access (e.g. in terms of ongoing maintenance costs) are taken into account; and
 - h) adverse effects on the qualities of solitude, remoteness, peace and natural quiet, are avoided or otherwise minimised.
- 16.3.1.5 Liaise with four-wheel drive and other motorised vehicle user groups and may enable these groups to maintain the roads they are permitted to use.
- 16.3.1.6 Work with councils and the New Zealand Police to manage motorised vehicle use on beaches to protect conservation values.
- 16.3.1.7 Establish bylaws and/or regulations, where necessary, to control the use of motorised vehicles within Northland.
- 16.3.1.8 Monitor the effects of motorised vehicles on natural, historic, and cultural values, and on other recreational users.
- 16.3.1.9 Review the use of motorised vehicles on roads where monitoring shows that unacceptable impacts are occurring, in consultation with recreational users and other interested groups.
- 16.3.1.10 Work with other conservancies, tangata whenua, conservation boards, councils, other organisations, the community and other recreational users to provide for designated sites for motorised vehicles, consistent with Policy 16.3.1.4.
- 16.3.1.11 Work with Land Information New Zealand, district councils, other agencies and communities to stop unformed legal roads running through public conservation lands in the following locations: Bream Head, Ranfurly Bay and other sites yet to be identified.

16.3.2 MOUNTAIN BIKES (NON-MOTORISED)

POLICIES—MOUNTAIN BIKES

- 16.3.2.1 Should allow mountain bikes on the following tracks, roads or other areas, subject to the criteria and policies specified: Mokau Ridge Road, Puketi Forest; Pirau Ridge Road, Puketi Forest; four-wheel drive road to Pandora, Te Paki; and four-wheel drive roads in Mokaikai Reserve, Te Paki.
- 16.3.2.2 Require people using mountain bikes to adhere to the 'Mountain Bikers' Code' and, where mountain biking is restricted to identified tracks or roads, require mountain bikers to remain on the track or road formation at all times.

- 16.3.2.3 Establish bylaws or regulations to enable enforcement of the mountain biking provisions.
- 16.3.2.4 Promote opportunities for mountain bike use on tracks identified in this CMS as being available for mountain bike use on public conservation lands via the Department’s website, and through liaison with tourism information providers and cycling advocates.
- 16.3.2.5 Meet the following criteria when considering the use of mountain bikes on public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the statutory purpose for which the land is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place in which the mountain biking application will occur;
 - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic or cultural heritage values and other recreational users of the track or road are avoided or otherwise mitigated—this may include (but is not limited to) restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers and one-way flow; and
 - d) the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight mountain bike opportunities, are taken into account.
- 16.3.2.6 May consider further opportunities for mountain bike use on public conservation land during the term of this CMS by updating the list of tracks and roads in Policy 16.3.2.1 after consultation with cycling clubs, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs and the public, and in accordance with the following criteria:
- a) is consistent with the statutory purpose for which the land is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome for the Place where the formed track or road is or will be located;
 - c) potential adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic or cultural heritage values and other recreational users of the track or road can be avoided or otherwise minimised;
 - d) there are measures to manage the use of mountain bikes, which may include, but are not limited to, restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers and one-way flow;
 - e) there is the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight cycle opportunities; and
 - f) avoidance of biosecurity risks, including potential for the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease) and Argentine ants.
- 16.3.2.7 Monitor the effects of mountain bike use on natural, historic, cultural and heritage values, and on other recreational users.
- 16.3.2.8 Review mountain bike use on tracks or in places where monitoring shows that unacceptable impacts are occurring.
- 16.3.2.9 Should not allow downhill styles of mountain biking where they will result in conflicts with other users, and/or impacts on natural, historic, or cultural values.
-

16.4 Aircraft

All aircraft (powered and unpowered) require a concession to land on, take off from, or hover above (collectively referred to as landings) any public conservation lands and waters that are not a certified aerodrome, other than for search and rescue, departmental management purposes, emergency situations, maritime navigational-aid management, or land survey work, or aircraft operated by the New Zealand Defence Force or the Civil Aviation Authority. The Department, acting under delegated authority from the Minister, manages aircraft landing concessions under provisions of the National Parks Act 1980, the Reserves Act 1977 and the Conservation Act 1987, in accordance with Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987 (in particular, section 17ZF).

Aircraft can facilitate the use and enjoyment of public conservation lands and waters by providing access to difficult-to-reach places and allowing quick access for people with limited time. They are also an important tool for managing public conservation lands and waters, and for search and rescue.

Conversely, aircraft activity—even scenic flights that do not involve landings—can have adverse effects on users of public conservation lands and waters, impacting on values such as amenity, natural quiet, wildlife and remoteness. It can also be incompatible with or adversely impact on land use activities on adjacent private land, particularly in residential areas. Effects most often relate to the presence, behaviour and noise characteristics of aircraft, and to the frequency of activity. They can also relate to conflicts between people and their activities where some have used aircraft for access and others have not.

Historically, few concession applications for aircraft use have been received in Northland. Aircraft activity is highest around Whangarei Airport and the Bay of Islands Airport at Kerikeri, where there are regular commercial flights, and to a lesser extent at Kaitaia. Scenic flights in small aeroplanes or helicopters are available from many locations. Private helicopters are often seen travelling between Auckland and the Bay of Islands, and to privately owned tourist resorts, usually on the eastern coast. Heli-fishing, which involves landing in isolated coastal locations, is gaining popularity. Unauthorised landings on public conservation land are becoming more frequent. In order to manage the effects of aircraft landings on public conservation lands and waters, four aircraft access zones (as shown on Map 4) have been developed and applied nationally. These zones reflect the different management methodologies required, and the likelihood of granting concessions, for aircraft landings:

- Red Zone—areas where a concession application to land an aircraft would most likely be declined. However, concessions may be granted for aircraft landings associated with the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems) or to support research. This zone may apply where:
 - a) legislation provides strong direction that concessions should not be granted for aircraft landings (e.g. gazetted wilderness areas);
 - b) there is a need to protect conservation and/or recreational values from the effects of aircraft landings (e.g. nature and scientific reserves, threatened species habitat, high-use picnic and camping areas);
 - c) the area is readily accessible by other means;
 - d) aircraft activity would be incompatible with adjacent land use activities on private land (e.g. residential areas); or
 - e) aircraft activity may interfere with management activities.

POLICIES—AIRCRAFT (CGP 9.5(b))

- 16.4.1.1 Should apply (but not be limited to) the following criteria when assessing all concession applications for aircraft landings¹⁶:
- a) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place in which the activity is proposed to occur;
 - b) is consistent with the aircraft zoning provisions in this CMS and the aircraft access zones on Map 4;
 - c) is consistent with the statutory purpose for which the lands and waters are held;
 - d) adverse effects on conservation values, including adverse effects on natural quiet, are avoided, mitigated or remedied;
 - e) adverse effects on other visitors (taking into account the size of the zone and the proximity of other ground users) are avoided, mitigated or remedied;
 - f) the requirement to hold and comply with certifications approved by the Department, including those addressing noise management in specified locations;
 - g) the need for monitoring the activity using new technologies; and
 - h) landings near tracks, huts, campsites and car parks (unless otherwise specified in an outcome or policy for a Place) are avoided.
- 16.4.1.2 Should not grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Red Zone unless it is for the following purposes:
- a) the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems); or
 - b) to support authorised research.
- 16.4.1.3 Should only grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Yellow Zone that meet the limits of:
- a) two landings per operator per day at any one site (defined as any landing site within a 1 kilometre radius of the initial landing site) and a maximum of 20 landings per site per operator per year; and
 - b) avoidance of biosecurity risks, including potential for the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease) and Argentine ants.
- 16.4.1.4 May grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Green Zone that avoid biosecurity risks, including potential for the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease) and Argentine ants.
- 16.4.1.5 May grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Orange Zone that actively take into account the following criteria:
- a) avoidance of biosecurity risks, including potential for the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease) and Argentine ants;
 - b) sensitivity of cultural sites;
 - c) proximity to urban areas, airports and state highways; and
 - d) aspirations of Treaty partners for the site, including the relevance of a site to a Treaty settlement;
 - e) compliance with Bay of Islands Maritime and Historic Park Bylaws 1985.

¹⁶ This includes landings, take offs and hovering.

- 16.4.1.6 May grant concessions for aircraft landings associated with a sporting event or filming activity that does not meet the limits and/or criteria for the Yellow, Green or Orange Zones and/or the prescriptions for visitor management zones in Appendix 11 based on its merits and subject to an assessment of:
- a) the activity being consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place in which it is proposed to occur;
 - b) the adverse effects and the extent to which it is possible to avoid, remedy or mitigate those effects—examples of mechanisms that may be used to address any adverse effects include:
 - i) informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the activity is to occur or is occurring;
 - ii) avoiding peak visitation times; and
 - iii) avoiding or protecting sites with high natural or historic values;
 - c) cumulative effects on the values at the site; and
 - d) the need for public notification.
- 16.4.1.7 May grant concessions for aircraft landings on public conservation lands and waters for the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems) that do not meet the limits and/or criteria for an aircraft access zone and/or the prescriptions for visitor management zones in Appendix 11, based on its merits.
- 16.4.1.8 Advocate to aviation controllers and aircraft operators to manage flight paths to avoid adverse effects on public conservation lands and waters, such as Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua due to spiritual values, and Kaipara North Head during periods of bird migration.
- 16.4.1.9 Undertake a cooperative approach with aircraft operators overflying public conservation lands and waters, to establish voluntary codes of conduct that reflect the visitor management settings of those lands and waters.
-

16.5 **Animals¹⁷**

Animals are not permitted to be taken onto public conservation land unless it is consistent with legislation and provided for in a conservation management strategy or plan. Domestic animals and pets can have adverse effects on the natural, historical and cultural values of public conservation lands and waters, and can detract from visitor appreciation and enjoyment. Potential effects include killing wildlife, introducing pest plants, browsing indigenous vegetation, increasing erosion and conflicting with other user groups.

16.5.1 **DOGS**

The Department controls the use of dogs for recreational activities, including hunting, on public conservation lands and waters to protect both indigenous wildlife and people's rights of use and enjoyment. It is illegal to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters without a permit unless the area is identified as an 'open dog area'

¹⁷ See separate sections for game animals, wild animal control activities, and sports fishing and game bird hunting.

where no permit is required pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987. The only dogs that do not require permits on public conservation land are those used for police, customs, conservation management, and search and rescue purposes, and disability assist dogs.

The New Zealand Gazette No. 169 Controlled Dog Areas and Open Dog Areas for the Northland Conservancy 2004 pursuant to section 26ZS of the Conservation Act 1987 was established to protect wildlife that is considered vulnerable to attack or disturbance by dogs. A secondary aim was to minimise potential conflicts between dogs and other users of land. Most public conservation land in Northland is subject to this Gazette notice, which identifies the following: controlled dog areas—no access; controlled dog areas—entry by permit only for management and/or recreational hunting subject to conditions; open dog areas—entry on a lead subject to conditions; and open dog areas—entry free subject to conditions.

Dogs can assist hunters to target populations of introduced animals such as game birds, pest birds, possums, rabbits (*Oryctolagus cuniculus*), goats and pigs. Animal pests damage public conservation lands and waters by modifying habitats, preying on ground-dwelling fauna and threatening ecosystem integrity. A dog used for hunting must be properly trained, under the control of its handler and authorised by hunting permit. Hunting permits have special conditions included in relation to dogs, including kiwi aversion training for the dog and its handler.

The Department is strongly advocating for avian aversion training for all dog owners and hunting dogs and farm dogs on properties adjacent to kiwi habitat. The avian awareness and avoidance training programme for dogs and their owners is free of charge, and is designed to educate owners of the dangers their dogs can pose to ground-dwelling native birds and to teach the dogs to avoid these birds. Within a year of initial training, the dog is tested for its learned avoidance and, if required, the dog is retrained. This testing or training is required annually until the dog consistently demonstrates strong avoidance. When a dog achieves this standard, the dog is certified for periods longer than 1 year.

The Bay of Islands Maritime and Historic Park Bylaws 1985 prohibit the taking of any animals, including dogs, onto 56 reserves in the Bay of Islands and the wider area from Mimiwhangata to Ranfurly Bay.

The Northland Reserve Bylaws 2007 prohibit dogs in a number of popular and highly used recreation, scenic and historic reserves on the eastern coast of Northland unless the dog is a disability assist dog or the reserve is an open dog area.

POLICIES—DOGS (CGP 9.6(a))

- 16.5.1.1 Manage dog access in accordance with already established controlled and open dog areas.
- 16.5.1.2 Inform the public of the location of controlled and open dog areas on public conservation lands and waters through the Department's website.
- 16.5.1.3 Ensure that permits to take dogs onto public conservation lands and waters contain conditions that protect the values for which those lands and waters are held.
- 16.5.1.4 Educate the community about the threats dogs can pose to conservation values.
- 16.5.1.5 Work with local authorities to ensure consistency in dog control in areas containing protected wildlife and important wildlife habitats.

- 16.5.1.6 Where a person has been authorised to take a dog into public conservation lands, that authorisation may be subject to the following conditions:
- a) owners required to keep the dog under control at all times;
 - b) dogs must not go into or be under public buildings, including huts; and
 - c) dogs must be currently certified by an approved bird aversion trainer where there are ground-dwelling or nesting birds (except for disability assist dogs).
- 16.5.1.7 Work with pig hunting clubs to encourage responsible pig hunting through:
- a) a permit system;
 - b) promoting the use of high quality hunting dogs;
 - c) offering avian aversion training;
 - d) aiming for targeted control of pigs in priority ecosystem units; and
 - e) containing the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease).

16.5.2 HORSES

In some cases, the use of animals such as horses can enhance the recreational experience of visitors. However, they can have adverse effects as identified in the previous section, including the spread of plant pests and PTA. Authorisation is required to take horses onto public conservation lands and waters.

Horses are an issue where they impact on walking tracks, shorebird nesting sites and wildlife refuges. In an area at Tip Road, Bream Bay, a concession has been granted to provide the opportunity for horse riding in a managed and contained way that minimises the impacts on natural, cultural and other recreational values.

The level of horse riding use on public conservation land in Northland is currently low and not causing any discernable adverse effects. Other opportunities for horse riding are provided in local council reserves, Crown forests and private arenas, and on beaches and farms.

POLICIES—HORSES (CGP 9.6(a))

- 16.5.2.1 Should authorise the use of horses only at Tip Road (Uretiti, Bream Bay) and on sites where grazing is authorised.
- 16.5.2.2 Meet the following criteria when considering the use of horses on public conservation lands:
- a) is consistent with the purpose for which the land is held;
 - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) the potential for horses to introduce or spread new weed species or PTA into the area is avoided;
 - d) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur
 - e) the potential for horses to accelerate erosion or cause other damage to the area is avoided;
 - f) potential adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and

- g) potential adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.

16.5.2.3 Should monitor the level of horse riding on public conservation land. If monitoring indicates that horse riding is causing adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values or the visitor experience, will manage these animals to reduce or avoid these effects.

16.5.3 OTHER ANIMALS INCLUDING PETS

POLICIES—OTHER ANIMALS (CGP 9.6(a)) INCLUDING PETS

- 16.5.3.1 Should not permit livestock, other than horses in accordance with Policies 16.5.2.1–16.5.2.2, on public conservation lands unless under a grazing concession.
- 16.5.3.2 Should not permit any other types of animals, including pets, on public conservation lands or waters.

16.6 Private accommodation

The Department is implementing a phase out of private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation land. In Northland, this has included the removal of houses at Whangaruru, Mitimiti and Matapouri. Baches remain on conservation land at Pahi Domain, Tauroa Point, Urupukapuka Island, Paparahi Point and Mokaikai. In each case, a process is underway to resolve the occupation issues in a fair and transparent way within the term of this strategy.

16.6.1 POLICIES—PRIVATE ACCOMMODATION (CGP 10)

- 16.6.1.1 Should not authorise new private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters.
- 16.6.1.2 Should phase out all existing private accommodation on public conservation land that is not specifically allowed or provided for in legislation by either:
 - a) phasing in public use of the building(s) (refer Policy 16.6.1.4a); or
 - b) removing the building(s) at the end of the phase-out period (refer Policy 16.6.1.4b), unless retained by the Department for public use.
- 16.6.1.3 Should consult the Northland Conservation Board and the concession applicant when assessing a concession application for existing private accommodation, to determine whether it should be granted and, if so, which of the two phase-out methods (16.6.1.2a or 16.6.1.2b) is most appropriate for each individual circumstance.
- 16.6.1.4 If private accommodation is to be authorised in accordance with Policy 16.6.1.3, concession conditions should specify that:
 - a) the building(s) are to be made available, where appropriate, for use by the public—with specific details on how this requirement will be phased in over time stated in each individual concession (if option 16.6.1.2a is chosen) including the requirement that any costs charged to the public are reasonable; or

- b) the building(s) are to be removed¹⁸ within 18 months of the death of the person named on the authorisation at the time this CMS is publicly notified, or within 20 years of CMS approval, whichever occurs first (if option 16.6.1.2b is chosen); and
 - c) the style and character of all buildings are to remain largely unmodified; and
 - d) the floor area and footprint of all buildings is not to increase beyond that existing at the time of CMS approval; and
 - e) all buildings must comply with the Building Act 2004 and relevant local authority requirements; and
 - f) transfer/assignment to another party should not be authorised (i.e. the building(s) cannot be sold or transferred to anyone else); and
 - g) an indemnity to protect the Department be given by the concessionaire and the concessionaire holds adequate insurance (e.g. general public liability insurance, statutory liability insurance and for the removal of buildings) to cover this indemnity.
- 16.6.1.5 Should only grant the renewal¹⁹ of authorisations for private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters to the existing authorisation holder²⁰, if:
- a) the existing authorisation contains a right of renewal; and
 - b) the right of renewal is exercised by the authorisation holder before the existing authority expires; and
 - c) the person holding the authorisation has complied with all of the terms and conditions of the authorisation; and
 - d) any new authorisation is granted before the existing authorisation expires.
- 16.6.1.6 Should not authorise replacement of private accommodation if:
- a) a building falls into such a state of disrepair that it needs work requiring a building consent under the Building Act 2004 (note: minor repair and maintenance using comparable materials does not require building consent under this Act); or
 - b) buildings are destroyed or so damaged by an event (e.g. fire, flood) as to render them untenable.
- 16.6.1.7 Remove buildings not authorised in accordance with Policy 16.6.1.2 from public conservation lands and waters during the term of this CMS.
-

¹⁸ Unless retained by the Department for public use or active management of historic and cultural heritage values.

¹⁹ Where the existing/previous concession does not contain a right of renewal and is due to expire (or has expired) and the authorisation holder applies for a new concession, the application should be considered against the other policies in this section and the relevant general policy.

²⁰ That is, should not grant transfers/assignments to other parties.

16.7 Marine mammal viewing

Marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992. Commercial activities involving marine mammals must be authorised by the Director-General of Conservation.

Four species of cetaceans are regularly observed in Northland waters (kera wēra/orca, terehu/bottlenose dolphins, aihe/common dolphins and Bryde’s whales (*Balaenoptera brydei*)), especially in summer months. Terehu/bottlenose dolphins that frequent Northland’s east coast are the main target species for marine mammal tourism in Northland and these animals are part of a population that ranges from Northland to the Bay of Plenty. The marine mammal tourism industry in Northland grew significantly in the 1990s, with most commercial marine mammal tourism permit holders conducting operations to view dolphins and whales in waters around the Bay of Islands. Most marine mammal viewing operations in the Bay of Islands also offer swimming with dolphins.

Marine mammal tourism research carried out in Northland since 1994 has conclusively demonstrated that marine mammal tourism impacts on terehu/bottlenose dolphins, with the amount of resting behaviour decreasing in the presence of permitted vessels, which may unduly stress the animals. Because this could lead to long-term detrimental effects at a population level, the Department implemented measures limiting the interaction of permitted vessels with terehu/bottlenose dolphins in 2004. In 2009, a 5-year moratorium was introduced on the issuing of any new permits for the interaction with whales and dolphins in Northland. In July 2013, the moratorium was extended until 2016. At the end of 2014, research results will be considered and the moratorium will be reviewed to determine its effectiveness.

16.7.1 POLICIES—MARINE MAMMALS

- 16.7.1.1 Support research into and require monitoring of the impacts of human interactions with marine mammals.
 - 16.7.1.2 Take a precautionary approach to the number of commercial operators involved in marine mammal operations, including seeking a moratorium on the issuing of new permits if research and monitoring indicates that such a step is required.
 - 16.7.1.3 Ensure all commercial operators viewing marine mammals are authorised to undertake that activity, and that they understand their responsibilities under marine mammal protection legislation and regulations.
 - 16.7.1.4 Require commercial operators viewing marine mammals to provide a high standard of education and interpretation.
 - 16.7.1.5 Review at regular intervals, and implement, a marine mammal tourism site plan for Northland, which sets out desired objectives for management of the marine mammal tourism industry.
 - 16.7.1.6 Review the 2009 5-year moratorium on issuing marine mammal viewing permits and assess the research results to determine its effectiveness.
 - 16.7.1.7 Work with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local government, tangata whenua and others to implement the Maui’s Dolphin Threat Management Plan 2013.
-

16.8 Commercial eeling

The Department is responsible for protecting and preserving tuna/eel and their habitat within public conservation lands and waters as far as practicable. Tuna/eel have an important role to play in ecosystem functioning, being the top predators in freshwater ecosystems. Commercial eeling, habitat loss and hydro-development can all have potential adverse effects on tuna/eel populations. The lakes of Northland are especially at risk from proliferations of aquatic weeds such as the oxygen weeds *Elodea canadensis*, *Lagarosiphon major* and *Ceratophyllum demersum*, which have the potential to disrupt lake ecology. Long-finned eels are now categorised as At Risk in the Declining category²¹.

The Ministry for Primary Industries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996, the Fisheries (Commercial Fishing) Regulations 2001 and other associated regulations. Commercial eel fishers require a concession to access public conservation lands and/or take tuna/eels from waters whose beds are public conservation land. Within areas administered under the Conservation Act 1987, other legislative requirements can limit the ability to lawfully grant concessions for commercial tuna/eel fishing. For example, an ecological area must be ‘managed as to protect the [ecological] value for which the land is held’. Areas held under the Conservation Act 1987 in general are required to be managed so that their natural resources are protected, and tuna/eels are part of those natural resources where they are present.

The commercial take of indigenous fauna such as tuna/eels from reserves administered under the Reserves Act 1977 is also subject to exceptions contained within section 50(1) of that Act.

16.8.1 POLICIES—COMMERCIAL EELING

- 16.8.1.1 Should not authorise commercial eeling on public conservation lands or waters, to ensure the preservation of tuna/eel species.
 - 16.8.1.2 Work cooperatively with the Ministry for Primary Industries, tangata whenua and the community to protect indigenous tuna/eel populations and their habitats on public conservation lands and waters.
-

16.9 Sports fish and game bird hunting

Waters on public conservation lands are often recognised as a valuable recreational asset for anglers. Where sports fish are legally present, they may be retained. However, in certain circumstances they may be eradicated or controlled with the agreement of the relevant regional fish and game council. There is limited Rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdnerii*) and brown trout (*Salmo trutta*) habitat in the Northland region, and river and lake populations are consequently of low abundance compared with other parts of New Zealand. This is due to the combination of limited gravelly hard-bedded habitat, low summer flows and water temperatures that are, at times, above the optimum range preferred by trout. Trout fishing is carried out in the following waterways: Lake Taharoa/Lake Waikere, Waima River, Mangatu River, Kaihu River, Punakitere River, Waitangi River, Waipapa River / Waihoanga Stream, Lake Manuwai, Mangahahuru Stream, Kirikiritoki Stream, Kaikanui River, Kaimamaku River, Whakapara River,

²¹ Goodman, J.M.; Dunn, N.R.; Ravenscroft, P.J.; Allibone, R.M.; Boubee, J.A.T.; David, B.O.; Griffiths, M.; Ling, N.; Hitchmough, R.A.; Rolfe, J.R. 2014: Conservation status of New Zealand freshwater fish, 2013. *New Zealand Threat Classification Series* 7. 12 p.

Waiotu River, Whau Valley Earth Dam, Waipapa Stream, Kerikeri River, Tirohanga Stream and Wilsons Dam. Tench and perch are also sports fish and are found in some localities. A licence issued by Fish and Game New Zealand is required to fish for sports fish.

The Northland Fish and Game Council also manages game bird hunting. The Department, however, has a responsibility to provide for game bird hunting on public conservation lands and waters where such hunting is consistent with the purposes for which the lands and waters are held and does not have adverse effects on protected indigenous species.

16.9.1 POLICIES—SPORTS FISH AND GAME BIRD HUNTING (CGP 11.4)

16.9.1.1 Work with the Northland Fish and Game Council to:

- a) preserve indigenous freshwater fisheries,
 - b) to protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats at risk of loss or decline, and
 - c) to provide for sports fishing and game bird hunting on public conservation lands.
-

16.10 Prospecting, exploration and mining

Under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Minister of Conservation has an approval role for access arrangements and minimum impact activities for all public conservation land. The Minister of Energy and Resources also has an approval role for access arrangements that relate to Tier 1 permits (as defined in the Crown Minerals Act) and significant variations to those access arrangements.

There has been renewed interest in more accurately quantifying the size and location of mineral resources within Northland. An aerial geomagnetic survey was undertaken in 2011, which provided more detail on potential sites for further investigation. An increase in the number and extent of mineral prospecting and exploration permits is anticipated.

No access arrangement may be issued by the Minister of Conservation for land in Schedule 4 of the Crown Minerals Act, except in very limited circumstances which are set out in the Act. In Northland these areas are: Lake Waiparaheka Scientific Reserve, Three Kings Islands Nature Reserve, Motuopao Island Nature Reserve, North Cape Scientific Reserve, Simmonds Islands Nature Reserve, Kaimaumuau Scientific Reserve, Whatitiri Mountain Scientific Reserve, Poor Knights Islands Nature Reserve, Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve, Whangarei Harbour Marine Reserve, Bream Islands Nature Reserve, Hen and Chickens Islands Nature Reserve, Warawara Forest Sanctuary Area, Waipoua Sanctuary Area, and Omahuta Forest Sanctuary Area. Additional areas may be added as Schedule 4 is updated.

16.10.1 POLICIES—MINING (GCP11.4(a))

- 16.10.1.1 Consider applications for access arrangements on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the criteria set out in the relevant section (i.e. s61 or s61A and s61B) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991.
- 16.10.1.2 Assess applications for access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, in accordance with (but not limited to) the following matters:
 - a) whether or not the site is listed on Schedule 4 of the Act.

- b) whether the activity is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place(s) where the activity is proposed to occur, the objectives in Part One and the other relevant policies in Part Three;
 - c) the significance of the conservation values and recreation opportunities present, and the effect the proposal will have on those values;
 - d) the adequacy and achievability of the proposed site rehabilitation work;
 - e) the adequacy or appropriateness of compensation offered for loss or damage to conservation values as a result of the access arrangement, where those losses cannot be safeguarded through other measures;
 - f) any direct economic or other benefits as well as any direct economic or other detrimental effects (such as a decrease in tourism) that the activity will have in relation to the area; and
 - g) whether a mining-related application will be classified as a ‘significant application’ (in accordance with the criteria set out in the Crown Minerals Act 1991), which would require public notification.
- 16.10.1.3 Review the conditions of access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 if monitoring reveals that the effects of mining activities on conservation values and recreation opportunities are greater than expected or new effects are discovered.
-

16.11 Sand and shingle extraction

Sand and shingle extraction from riverbeds and beaches is managed and allocated by regional councils under the Resource Management Act 1991. On public conservation lands and waters, however, these activities also require authorisation from the Department. Sand has historically been mined at Uretiti, and a permit to extract gravel from a quarry at Te Hapu is currently active.

16.11.1 POLICIES—SAND AND SHINGLE (CGP 11.4(c))

- 16.11.1.1 Should only authorise sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands and waters where adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated and the resource cannot be reasonably accessed elsewhere off public conservation land.
 - 16.11.1.2 Will use the following criteria when considering applications for sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands and waters:
 - a) is consistent with the purpose for which the land is held;
 - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) is consistent with visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 11;
 - d) potential adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
 - e) potential adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.
-

16.12 Commercial filming and photography

Commercial filming and photography (filming activity) is defined as any photography or filming undertaken on public conservation land for any specific gain or reward. Filming activity has a specific set of effects, which need to be managed. Key issues with filming is use of aircraft to access remote areas or highly protected areas such as nature reserves, and management of conflict with other users of public conservation land.

16.12.1 POLICIES—COMMERCIAL FILMING AND PHOTOGRAPHY (CGP 11.5)

- 16.12.1.1 Concession applications for commercial filming and photography (filming activity) on public conservation land should be assessed against the following criteria:
- a) conflicts between recreation/tourism uses and filming activity should be avoided (e.g. separated in space and time) or otherwise minimised;
 - b) conservation values, including sites of significance to tangata whenua, should be protected from adverse effects of filming and associated activities;
 - c) aircraft use for filming activity purposes should comply with the CMS aircraft provisions, including the aircraft zone provisions;
 - d) vehicle use for filming activities should comply with the CMS vehicle provisions; and
 - e) animal use for filming should comply with the CMS animal provisions; and
 - f) filming activity should be compatible/consistent with the outcomes and policies for Places in which the activity is proposed to occur.
- 16.12.1.2 All filming concessions should include reference to and compliance with the latest version of the ‘Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands’ (jointly developed by the Department and Film New Zealand).
-

16.13 Collection of material

Applications for the collection of material for research and information needs are addressed in, and must be consistent with the Conservation General Policy 2005 (chapter 12: Research and information needs).

The collection of material from public conservation lands and waters also includes customary activities of significance to tangata whenua (refer section 4 Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities). Treaty settlement legislation also recognises the significance of customary activities to tangata whenua and in many cases specifies processes for customary use of materials managed under conservation legislation.

16.14 Wild Animal Control Activities

The Minister of Conservation has responsibility for implementing the statutory purpose of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 through:

- the grant of concessions for wild animal recovery operations;
- issuing permits for ground hunting;
- provision of recreational hunting (with the Director-General);
- research;

- the grant of permits for holding wild animals in captivity in safari parks or deer farms.

The Minister also manages aspects of deer farming in Northland through the Deer Farming Notice No.5 2008 which specifies:

- the areas where deer can be farmed either for all or some species;
- the areas where deer farming is prohibited, either totally or by species;
- fencing requirements for deer farms;
- conditions for a permit to farm deer.

Any Regulations promulgated under the Game Animal Council Act 2013 are also relevant. Refer also to Appendix 5 Threats, pests and wild animals present in Northland.

16.14.1

POLICIES—WILD ANIMAL CONTROL ACTIVITIES

- 16.14.1.1 Concession applications and activities on public conservation land under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 should be tested against the following criteria:
- a) the contribution to concerted action to control wild animals (achieving the purpose of the Wild Animal Control Act);
 - b) the outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is to occur;
 - c) relevant aircraft zoning provisions;
 - d) relevant visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 11;
 - e) the purpose for which the land is held;
 - f) effects on conservation values, including national priority ecosystem units for ecosystems and species, surrounding lands, and natural quiet;
 - g) effects on other visitors, including safety;
 - h) the presence or otherwise of a TBfree New Zealand tuberculosis control programme;
 - i) cumulative effects;
 - j) frequency, timing and location of the activity; and
 - k) other relevant matters.
- 16.14.1.2 Carry out biannual inspections of deer farms to minimise frequency of escapes, and exterminate any escaped or liberated deer from any land, regardless of tenure.
- 16.14.1.3 Work with pig hunting clubs to encourage responsible pig hunting through:
- a) a permit system;
 - b) promoting the use of high quality hunting dogs;
 - c) offering avian aversion training;
 - d) aiming for targeted control in priority ecosystem units; and
 - e) containing the spread of PTA (kauri dieback disease).
-

16.15 Game animals (see also Wild Animals)

Game animals are those animals defined as such in the Game Animal Council Act 2013 for the purposes of the Act, i.e. chamois, deer, tahr, and wild pigs (see Glossary for full definition). Game species are also defined at Schedule 1 of the Wildlife Act 1953 (see Glossary for full definitions of game, and game animals). With respect to game animals, the Minister of Conservation may designate any species of game animal in a specified area on public conservation land to be a herd of special interest (see Glossary for definition) if the required criteria are met, including that the Minister considers that (i) the animals are of special interest to hunters; and (ii) the animals can be managed for hunting purposes; and (iii) management of the animals for hunting purposes is consistent with the overriding considerations (See Glossary for definition). A herd management plan is developed for each herd of special interest proposed for designation, setting out the objectives and strategies for the management of the herd to achieve the expected benefits to be gained from managing the animals for hunting purposes.

The Game Animal Council has a range of functions associated with the hunting of game animals. In relation to herds of special interest to hunters specifically, and hunting generally, the Department will work with the Council for the effective management of game animals in a manner that is compatible with the management of public conservation land and resources generally.

16.15.1 POLICY— GAME ANIMALS

16.15.1.1 Work with the Game Animal Council to facilitate the hunting of wild animals (that are also game animals) on public conservation land as defined by the Game Animal Council Act²² to achieve the purposes of the Wild Animals Control Act 1977 and the Game Animal Council Act 2013.

16.16 Fire management

Under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, the Minister of Conservation is a rural fire authority for all state areas, which generally includes all public conservation lands, and a 1 kilometre safety margin around any defined state areas. Some Crown and public conservation lands have been included within Rural Fire Districts, bringing them under the jurisdiction of Rural Fire District Committees as the rural fire authority rather than the Department. This has occurred where conservation values are not threatened and makes for more effective fire management.

Fire is a significant threat to natural, cultural, historic and recreational values. Fire fuel reduction can be a preventative measure to reduce fire threat. Fire can also be used as a means of ecological management. Dry conditions are prevalent in Northland throughout the year but especially in summer and autumn, and extensive areas of vulnerable vegetation including some large areas of young exotic forest adjoining public conservation land, and high recreation use in some areas, make fire prevention and control a critical issue. In particular the coastal sand dunelands, gumlands and wetlands of Northland are at risk from arson and non-permitted fires such as careless use of camp fires, mechanical equipment and smoking.

²² Public conservation land means land that is—
(a) held, managed, or administered by the Department of Conservation under the Conservation Act 1987 or an enactment listed in Schedule 1 of that Act; and
(b) owned by the Crown.

Public conservation land in the Far North District is included in the Northern Rural Fire Authority District for the purposes of more effective and efficient fire management and a single agency for the public to interact with on rural fire matters.

16.16.1 POLICIES—FIRE MANAGEMENT

- 16.16.1.1 Carry out restoration plantings, grazing, fire breaking and boundary adjustments where necessary to minimise the risk of fire in areas of high fire hazard.
 - 16.16.1.2 Controlled burning may be used to manage invasive plant pest impacts on fire-induced ecosystems and to manage the threat of wildfire impacts from elevated fuel loads in these ecosystems.
 - 16.16.1.3 Work with the Northern Rural Fire Authority and territorial authorities to implement an active fire awareness campaign to reduce causes of fire ignition in Northland such as arson, careless behaviour, and discarded lighted cigarettes.
-

16.17 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 16.17.1 Review and report on existing mountain biking opportunities and assess demand for new tracks and facilities.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 16.17.2 Bylaws and regulations to manage motorised vehicle use have been established on all reserves and lands managed under the Conservation Act 1987, respectively, in Northland.
 - 16.17.3 Existing private accommodation on land managed by the Department has been phased out in a fair and transparent way during the term of this CMS.
 - 16.17.4 Marine mammal tourism site plans have been developed for areas where significant marine mammal watching occurs in Northland.
-

Part Four

17 Implementation monitoring and reporting, and review

17.1 Introduction

The Department of Conservation uses many different tools to implement conservation management strategies, including:

- the Department’s business planning processes, where decisions are made about priorities and about resourcing for the departmental activities
- decisions on concessions and other authorisations.

Monitoring of implementation will assist in determining the success of the provisions of this CMS. The Department reports regularly to the Northland Conservation Board on the implementation of the Northland CMS, and the Conservation Board, in turn, reports annually to the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Additional monitoring is identified in the Department’s Statement of Intent and annual reports.

This strategy will have effect for 10 years, or until formally amended or reviewed in full or in part. The term of this strategy is from 2014 to 2024.

17.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 17.1.1.1 To report at least annually on progress in achieving the milestones of the Northland CMS to the Northland Conservation Board as a means of monitoring and reporting on its implementation.
- 17.1.1.2 To identify at least annually in a report to the Northland Conservation Board any additional priority ecosystem units and threatened and at risk species included in this CMS for which work programmes have been approved; and report progress thereafter in meeting outputs identified in the work programme.
-

Glossary

Actively conserved historic site

Historically significant site where management is undertaken by the Department to preserve and maintain the historic features.

Activity

Includes a trade, business, or occupation (section 2 Conservation Act 1987).

Advocate

Support or speak in favour of (Concise Oxford Dictionary Ninth Edition).

Aircraft

Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth (Civil Aviation Act 1990, section 2).

This includes, but is not limited to, the following types of aircraft: powered and non-powered; recreational and commercial; fixed-wing and rotary wing; manned and remotely piloted aircraft systems; and any other aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

Airstrip

Any specified area of public conservation land specifically maintained for the landing and take-off of fixed-wing aircraft, which may also be used by rotary-wing aircraft. It does not include a certified aerodrome as defined by the Conservation Act 1987 or an airport as defined by the Airport Authorities Act 1966.

All terrain vehicle (ATV)

A special purpose vehicle (with or without motorcycle controls and equipment) that:

- (a) is principally designed for off-road use; and
- (b) has three or more wheels; and
- (c) has an engine capacity exceeding 50 mL; and
- (d) has a gross weight of less than 1000 kg.

(Land Transport (Driver Licensing) Rule 1999: section 2)

Animal

Any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of every kind; but does not include a human being (section 2, Reserves Act 1977; section 2, National Parks Act 1980).

Any member of the animal kingdom other than a human being (Conservation Act 1987, section 2) (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Archaeological site

Subject to section 42(3) Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, -

- (a) any place in New Zealand, including any building or structure (or part of a building or structure), that
 - (i) was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900 or is the site of the wreck of any vessel where the wreck occurred before 1900; and
 - (ii) provides or may provide, through investigation by archaeological methods, evidence relating to the history of New Zealand; and
- (b) includes a site for which a declaration is made under section 43(1).
(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, section 6).

At risk (species)

Taxa that do not meet the criteria for any of the threatened species categories, but are declining (though buffered by a large total population size and/or a slow decline rate), biologically scarce, recovering from a previously threatened status, or survive only in relictual populations (New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual 2008 p. 22).

Authorisation

Collective term for all types of approvals by the Minister and the Director-General of Conservation provided for in a statutory process (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Authorised

Approved in a statutory process

Backcountry visitor destination

Destination that provides for more challenging adventures, including popular walks and tramps, within large scale natural settings. Refer to prescriptions in Appendix 11 for more detail.

Biodiversity

The variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine, and other aquatic ecosystems, and ecological complexes of which they are part. This includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Biogenic Reefs

Elevated structures on the seabed constructed of living and dead organisms. Includes fragile erect bryozoans and other sessile suspension feeders. Examples are bryozoan beds, rhodolith beds, tube worm mounds, sponge gardens and cold-water corals. These communities develop in a range of habitats from exposed open coasts to estuaries, marine inlets and deeper offshore habitats, and may be found in a variety of sediment types and salinity regimes (Marine Protected Areas: Classification, Protection Standard and Implementation Guidelines 2008).

Biosecurity

The exclusion, eradication, or effective management, of risks posed by pests and diseases, to the economy, environment and human health (Conservation General Policy 2005). The Department has functions which it performs under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

Building

Has the same meaning as given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the Building Act 2004 (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Bylaw

A bylaw made by the Minister of Conservation, under section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980 or section 106 of the Reserves Act 1977. Bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves, whereas Regulations may apply to reserves and conservation areas.

Collaborate

Work jointly with (Concise Oxford Dictionary).

Commercial hunting

Hunting undertaken by professional hunters for their livelihood and intended to maximise the take or kill of animals. It does not include guided recreational hunting, transportation of recreational hunters, or other means of assistance for recreational hunting for which a consideration is paid (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Community

Any individual or group (whether statutory or non-statutory, formal or informal, commercial or non-commercial) having an interest in a particular conservation issue.

Concession

A lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987, to enable the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business on areas managed by the Department of Conservation (Conservation General Policy 2005).

A lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987 with reference to section 49 of the National Parks Act 1980, to enable the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Concessionaire

A person who is a lessee, licensee, permit holder or grantee of an easement concession granted by the Minister of Conservation.

Conservation

The preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations (Conservation Act 1987, section 2).

Conservation Board

Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. The primary functions and powers of conservation boards are set out in sections 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987 and section 30 of the National Parks Act 1980. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of conservation management strategies and national park management plans for their areas, approval of conservation management plans (e.g. for conservation parks), and advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority or Director-General of the Department of

Conservation on conservation matters of importance in their area. They also have an important conservation advocacy role.

Conservation General Policy

A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of Conservation, Wildlife, Marine Reserves, Reserves, Wild Animal Control and Marine Mammals Protection Acts. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by the Department, including the preparation of conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans.

Conservation legislation

Is a term that applies collectively to the statutes which are administered by the Department of Conservation, and includes: the Conservation Act 1987 (and the legislation listed at Schedule 1 of that Act), the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.

Conservation Management

Conservation management means any activity that is carried out by the Minister or the Director-General (and their contractors and authorised agents) in the exercise of his or her functions, duties, or powers under the Conservation legislation.

Conservation management plan

A plan for the management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes which implements a conservation management strategy and establishes detailed objectives for integrated management within a place or places specified in a conservation management strategy (derived from Conservation Act 1987, section 17E).

Conservation management strategy

The purpose of a conservation management strategy is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the National Parks Act 1980, the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 or the Conservation Act 1987, or any of them, and for recreation, tourism, and other conservation purposes (Conservation Act 1987, section 17D).

Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)

An international agreement on biological diversity, that came into force in December 1993 following a meeting of governments in Rio de Janeiro. The objectives of the Convention are: the conservation of biological diversity; the sustainable use of its components; and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits arising out of the utilisation of genetic resources.

Cultural

Societal values with an emphasis on New Zealand/European history and Māori tikanga that are handed down through the generations (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Cumulative effect

An effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects (Resource Management Act 1991, section 3).

Customary use

Gathering and use of natural resources by tangata whenua, according to tikanga (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Department, the

The Department of Conservation.

Destination management

A programme aimed at getting more people enjoying public conservation lands and waters. It focuses the Department on five key areas for success: understanding what people want; delivering quality experiences; optimising resources; working with others; and improving marketing and promotion. Destinations are a geographic area and/or group of facilities, that are the focus of a single typical visitor trip, and are categorised into Icon, Gateway, Local Treasure, and Backcountry destinations. Destination Management is the coordinated management of all the elements that make up a destination including its values, attractions, people, infrastructure, access and how the destination is marketed.

Director-General

The Director-General of Conservation.

Disability assist dog

A dog certified by one of the following organisations as being a dog trained to assist (or as being a dog in training to assist) a person with a disability:

- (a) Hearing Dogs for Deaf People New Zealand:
- (b) Mobility Assistance Dogs Trust:
- (c) New Zealand Epilepsy Assist Dogs Trust:
- (d) Royal New Zealand Foundation of the Blind:
- (e) Top Dog Companion Trust:
- (f) an organisation specified in an Order in Council made under section 78D.

(Dog Control Act 1996, section 2)

Downhill

An extreme form of mountain biking involving riding down steep slopes, including over obstacles, drops and sharp turns, at maximum speed.

Ecological integrity

The full potential of indigenous biotic, and abiotic factors, and natural processes, functioning in sustainable habitats, ecosystems, and landscapes (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Ecosystem

A biological system comprising a community of living organisms, and its associated non-living environment, interacting as an ecological unit (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Ecosystem services

A wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help sustain and fulfil life (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Effect

The term effect includes—

- (a) any positive or adverse effect; and
- (b) any temporary or permanent effect; and
- (c) any past, present, or future effect; and
- (d) any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects—

regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes—

- (e) any potential effect of high probability; and
- (f) any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.

(Conservation Act 1987, section 2 and Resource Management Act 1991, section 3)

Electric power-assisted pedal cycle

A pedal cycle to which is attached one or more auxiliary electric propulsion motors having a combined maximum power output not exceeding 300 watts.

Emergency (for an aircraft)

A situation where a concession is not required in accordance with section 17ZF of the Conservation Act 1987 only as a result of:

- (a) a mechanical or structural or operational defect in the aircraft or its equipment; or
- (b) weather conditions or other causes not under the control of the pilot in command.

Encampment

Non-designated site used for the purpose of shelter or camping on either:

- (a) a permanent or semi-permanent basis by private individuals or groups; or
- (b) for more than short-term use by private individuals or groups.

(Conservation General Policy 2005)

Endemic

A species which is native to, as well as restricted to, a particular natural area (General Policy for National Parks, 2005).

Eradicate

To remove completely (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Facilities, recreational

Facilities erected on public conservation land by the Department or others that enable people to enjoy a range of recreational opportunities including (but not limited to): visitor and information centres, camping areas, tracks and walkways, bridges, backcountry huts, roads, car-parking areas, toilets, picnic areas, signs and interpretation panels, viewing platforms, wharves and boat ramps (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Fish

Includes all species of finfish and shellfish, at any stage of their life history, whether living or dead (Fisheries Act 1996).

Fish and Game Council

Statutory body with functions pertaining to the management, maintenance, and enhancement, of the sports fish and game resource, in the recreational interests of anglers and hunters (Conservation Act 1987, section 26Q(1)).

Fishery

One or more stocks, or parts of stocks, or one or more species of freshwater fish, or aquatic life, that can be treated as a unit for the purposes of conservation or management (Conservation Act 1987, section 2).

Foreshore

Such parts of the bed, shore, or banks of a tidal water as are covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides (Conservation Act 1987, section 2).

Four-wheel drive road

A road or route that can be traversed by a four-wheel drive vehicle capable of handling conditions including grade and side slopes, width, surface material, waterway fords, entry and exit angles to fords and depressions, and seasonal snow and ice, without causing adverse effects to the adjoining areas or the road. The road through maintenance and managed traffic densities and/or seasonal closures, can be retained at this four-wheel drive standard, and can be shared with other vehicles, including trail bikes and mountain bikes.

See also definition of *Road*.

Freshwater fish

Includes all species of finfish of the Classes Agnatha and Osteichthytes, and shellfish of the Classes Mollusca and Crustacea, that must, at any time in the life history of the species, inhabit freshwater; and includes any part thereof and such finfish and shellfish that seasonally migrate into or out of freshwater (Conservation Act 1987, section 2).

Game (*other than Game animal—see separate definition*)

The wildlife declared to be game specified in the First Schedule to the Wildlife Act 1953. As at the date of the adoption of this Conservation Management Strategy all game species are birds, viz: black swan (*Cygnus atratus*), chukar (*Alectoris chukar*), kuruwhengi/Australasian shoveler (*Anas rhynchos*), pārerā/grey duck (*Anas superciliosa*), mallard duck (*Anas platyrhynchos*), pūtāngitāngi/paradise shelduck (*Tadorna variegata*), grey partridge (*Perdix perdix*), red-legged partridge (*Alectoris rufa rufa*), peihana/pheasant (*Phasianus colchicus*), pūkeko (*Poryphio poryphio melanotus*), Bobwhite quail (*Colinus virginianus*), Brown quail (*Coturnix ypsilophora*), and koera/Californian quail (*Callipepla californica*).

Game animal (*for the purposes of the Game Animal Council Act 2013 only - see also Wild animal and Herd of special interest and Overriding considerations*)

- (a) means—
 - (i) any chamois, deer, or tahr:
 - (ii) any pig that is living in a wild state and is not being herded or handled as a domestic animal or kept within an effective fence or enclosure for farming purposes; and
- (b) includes the whole or any part of the carcass of the animal

(Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4).

Gateway visitor destination

Destinations that help introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allow them to learn about conservation. These may provide for a diverse range of activities but include many traditional camping and tramping destinations.

General Policy for National Parks

A policy prepared under section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Act.

Guide dog

See Disability Assist Dog.

Habitat

The environment within which a particular species, or group of species, lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Herd of special interest

A species of game animal in a specified area designated by the Minister of Conservation as a herd of special interest under section 16 of the Game Animal Council Act 2013 (Game Animal Council Act 2013, section 4).

Historic and cultural heritage

Any building or other structure, archaeological site, natural feature, wāhi tapu, or object, associated with people, traditions, events or ideas, which contribute to an understanding of New Zealand's history and cultures.

Historic area

An area of land that

- (a) contains an interrelated group of historic places; and
- (b) forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand; and
- (c) lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand.

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014)

Historic place

- (a) Means any of the following that forms a part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and that lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand:
 - (i) land including an archaeological site or part of an archaeological site;
 - (ii) a building or structure (or part of a building or structure);
 - (iii) any combination of land, buildings or structures, or associated buildings or structures (or parts of buildings, structures, or associated buildings or structures);and
- (b) includes anything that is in or fixed to land described in paragraph (a).

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

Historic resource

Means a historic place within the meaning of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014; and includes any interest in a historic resource (Conservation Act 1987, section 2).

Hover

An aircraft flight at a constant height and position over the surface.

Icon destination

A high profile, popular destination that underpins national and international tourism, and provides memorable visitor experiences in New Zealand.

Iconic feature

The natural features New Zealanders value the most because they are nationally special and help define who we are as New Zealanders. Iconic features are managed to ensure they are maintained or restored.

Iconic species

The plant and animal species New Zealanders value the most because they are nationally special and help define who we are as New Zealanders. Iconic species are managed to ensure their populations are maintained or restored.

Indigenous species

Plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings, and without the assistance of vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. The words 'indigenous' and 'native' have the same meaning in this Conservation Management Strategy (based on the Conservation General Policy 2005).

Integrated conservation management

The management of natural resources, and historical, and cultural heritage, and existing or potential activities in a manner which ensures that priorities are clear and that the effects of each activity on others are considered and managed accordingly (Conservation General Policy 2005).

International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS)

An international non-governmental organisation of heritage professionals engaged in the conservation of places of cultural heritage value and dedicated to the conservation of the world's historic monuments and sites. ICOMOS international acts as an advisory body to the World Heritage Committee alongside the IUCN for natural heritage (<http://www.icomos.org.nz> viewed September 2012).

International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter, Te Pumanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki I Nga Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe

A set of guidelines on cultural heritage conservation, produced by ICOMOS New Zealand. The NZ Charter is widely used in the New Zealand heritage sector and forms a recognised benchmark for conservation standards and practice. It is used by central government ministries and departments, by local bodies in district plans and heritage management, and by practitioners as guiding principles (<http://www.icomos.org.nz/nzcharters.html> viewed September 2012).

International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN)

Founded in 1948 as the world's first global environmental organisation as the International Union for the Protection of Nature (or IUPN) following an international conference in Fontainebleau, France. The organisation changed its name to the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources in 1956 with the acronym IUCN, which remains its full legal name. It is a neutral forum for governments, NGOs, scientists, business and local communities to find pragmatic solutions to conservation and development challenges (<http://www.iucn.org/about/>).

Interpretation

Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural, historic or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media in a way that stimulates interest, increased understanding and support for conservation.

Intrinsic value

A concept which regards the subject under consideration, as having value, or worth, in its own right, independent of any value placed on it by humans (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Kaitiaki

Guardian (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Kaitiakitanga

The exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga. In relation to a resource this includes the ethic of stewardship based upon the nature of the resource itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Kirihipi

In terms of the Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002, a kirihipi is an overlay where the Crown and the Te Uri o Hau governance entity may agree on specific principles that are directed at the Minister of Conservation so as to—(a) avoiding harm to Te Uri o Hau values in relation to each Kirihipi overlay area; or (b) avoiding the diminishing of Te Uri o Hau values in relation to each Kirihipi overlay area.

Livestock

Any ass, cattle or other browsing animal (not being a deer or goat or a marine mammal, fish or shell fish), horse, mule, sheep, or swine, of whatever age or sex and whether or not neutered; and includes any animal, of whatever age or sex and whether or not neutered, of a class declared to be livestock for the purposes of this Act by the Governor-General by Order in Council (Conservation Act 1987; section 2).

Local treasure visitor destination

Locally important, vehicle accessible location that provides, recreational opportunities for, and grows connections with, nearby communities.

Mahinga Kai

The customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered (based on Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, section 167).

Mana

Prestige; authority (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Marine mammal(s)

A marine mammal includes—

- (a) any mammal which is morphologically adapted to, or which primarily inhabits, any marine environment; and
- (b) all species of seal (Pinnipedia), whale, dolphin, and porpoise (Cetacea), and dugong and manatee (Sirenia); and
- (c) the progeny of any marine mammal; and
- (d) any part of any marine mammal

(Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, section 2).

Marine protected area

An area of sea especially dedicated to, or, achieving the protection, and maintenance, of biodiversity at the habitat or ecosystem level, and, managed through legal or other effective means (Conservation General Policy 2005). Includes Marine reserves.

Marine reserve

A marine area constituted as a marine reserve under the Marine Reserves Act 1971.

Mātaitai Reserve

Mātaitai reserves are a management tool created under Part IX of the Fisheries Act 1996 to recognise use and management practices of Māori in the exercise of non-commercial fishing rights. Tangata whenua may apply to the Minister of Fisheries to

establish a mātaītai reserve on a traditional fishing ground for the purpose of recognising and providing for customary management practices and food gathering.

Mātauranga Māori

Māori traditional knowledge (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Mauri

Essential life force, the spiritual power and distinctiveness that enables each thing to exist as itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Milestone

A specific action that is a measurable step towards achieving an objective or outcome.

Mining

- (a) means to take, win or extract by whatever means—
 - (i) a mineral existing in its natural state in land; or
 - (ii) a chemical substance from a mineral existing in its natural state in land;and
- (b) includes—
 - (i) the injection of petroleum into an underground gas storage facility;and
 - (ii) the extraction of petroleum from an underground gas storage facility;but
- (c) does not include prospecting or exploration for a mineral or chemical substance referred to in paragraph (a).

(Crown Minerals Act 1991, section 2).

Motor vehicle (*includes Motorised vehicle*)

Means

- (a) A vehicle drawn or propelled by mechanical power; and
- (b) includes a trailer; but
- (c) does not include—
 - (i) A vehicle running on rails; or
 - (ii) [Repealed]
 - (iii) A trailer (other than a trailer designed solely for the carriage of goods) that is designed and used exclusively as part of the armament of the New Zealand Defence Force; or
 - (iv) A trailer running on 1 wheel and designed exclusively as a speed measuring device or for testing the wear of vehicle tyres; or
 - (v) A vehicle designed for amusement purposes and used exclusively within a place of recreation, amusement, or entertainment to which the public does not have access with motor vehicles; or
 - (vi) A pedestrian-controlled machine; or
 - (vii) A vehicle that the Agency has declared under section 168A is not a motor vehicle; or
 - (viii) A mobility device.

(Land Transport Act 1998)

Note 1: any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes, snow mobiles and snow groomers) taken onto public conservation land must be registered and/or licensed where it is required to be registered and/or licensed under the Land Transport Act 1988.

Note 2: for the purposes of this CMS, a motor vehicle does not include any electric power-assisted pedal cycle delivering up to 300 watts power.

Mountain bike

A colloquial term for a non-motorised bicycle that can be used off formed roads.

Natural

Existing in or produced by nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural character

The qualities of an area which are the result of natural processes and, taken together, give it a particular recognisable character. These qualities may be ecological, physical, spiritual or aesthetic in nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural heritage management

Natural heritage management is an integrated and scientifically sound suite of tools to help natural heritage managers (both within and outside the Department) to make more consistent decisions and monitor their progress to national outcomes.

Natural quiet

Natural ambient conditions in a natural area; the sounds of nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural resources

Plants and animals of all kinds; and the air, water, and soil in or on which any plant or animal lives or may live; and landscape and landform; and geological features; and systems of interacting living organisms, and their environment; and includes any interest in a natural resource (Conservation Act 1987, section 2).

Natural state

Unmodified by human activity, or introduced plants, or animals (Conservation General Policy 2005).

New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy

A government-approved national strategy (2000) providing an integrated response to New Zealand's declining indigenous biodiversity, prepared in part to meet a commitment under the Convention on Biological Diversity.

Nohoanga

In terms of the Te Uri O Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002, the Crown created and granted in favour of Te Uri o Hau governance entity a Nohoanga entitlement to occupy temporarily and exclusively the entitlement land on a non-commercial basis for the purposes of permitting members of Te Uri o Hau to have access to the waterway for lawful fishing and lawful gathering of other natural resources in the vicinity, on the terms and conditions set out in this Nohoanga entitlement.

Non-powered aircraft

Any machine not driven by a powered device, that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth. This is an inclusive definition that includes non-powered gliders, parachutes, balloons and any other non-powered aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

Outcome

A goal or end result of a conservation action or series of actions (Conservation General Policy 2005)

Overriding considerations (for the purposes of the Game Animal Council Act 2013)

- (a) the welfare and management of public conservation land and resources generally;
- (b) any statement of general policy that is made, or has effect as if it were made, under—
 - (i) section 17B of the Conservation Act 1987:
 - (ii) section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980:
 - (iii) section 15A of the Reserves Act 1977:
 - (iv) section 14C of the Wildlife Act 1953:
- (c) any conservation management strategy made under section 17D of the Conservation Act 1987:
- (d) any conservation management plan made under—
 - (i) section 17E of the Conservation Act 1987:
 - (ii) section 40B of the Reserves Act 1977:
- (e) any management plan made under—
 - (i) section 47 of the National Parks Act 1980:
 - (ii) section 41 of the Reserves Act 1977:
- (f) any wild animal control plan made under section 5 of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977:
- (g) any pest management strategy, pest management plan, pathway management plan, or operational plan made under the Biosecurity Act 1993

(Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4).

Participation

The contribution, of effort, information, and ideas, towards the work of the Department (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Partnership

The relationship between individuals, or groups, that is characterised by mutual cooperation and responsibility for the achievement of a specific goal (Conservation General Policy 2005).

People and organisations

An inclusive phrase used to refer to all individuals, clubs, companies, councils and other organisations and groups, with an interest in conservation.

Personal mobility device

A device designed to transport one person, that is propelled by hand or a propulsion system with a maximum speed of 15 km per hour, and is ridden by a disabled person (Conservation General Policy 2005). For the purposes of this CMS, this does not include power-assisted cycles.

Pest

Any organism, including an animal, plant, pathogen or disease, capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm or posing significant risks to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems or freshwater fisheries (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Pet

Animal tamed and kept as favorite or treated with fondness; darling, favourite (*Concise Oxford Dictionary*). See also *Companion dog*.

Place

An area identified in a conservation management strategy or plan for the purposes of integrated conservation management. It may include any combination of terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas and may be determined by a range of criteria including but not limited to: ecological districts, geological features, catchments, internal departmental, regional or district council or rohe/takiwā boundaries, land status, major recreation or tourism destinations, commonality of management considerations, unique management needs (Conservation General Policy 2005). For the purposes of the Northland Conservation Management Strategy, the Places are identified in Part Two of this document.

Power-assisted cycle

A power assisted cycle is a pedal cycle that has an electric motor of up to 300 watts.

Precautionary principle

Taking a cautious approach, to conservation management decisions when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate.

Preservation

In relation to a resource, means the maintenance, so far as is practicable, of its intrinsic values (Conservation Act 1987, section 2).

Priority ecosystem unit

An ecosystem identified through the Department's natural heritage prioritising processes as being one of the most effective places to work to ensure that a representative range of ecosystems are protected.

Private accommodation

Place to live or lodge which is not available to the general public on an open basis (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Protected areas

Terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas that are protected primarily for the purpose of the conservation of natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, using a

range of legal mechanisms that provide long-term security of tenure, status or land use purpose, either privately or publicly owned (based on Conservation General Policy 2005).

Protection

In relation to a resource, means its maintenance, so far as is practicable, in its current state; but includes:

- (a) its restoration to some former state; and
- (b) its augmentation, enhancement, or expansion.

(Conservation Act 1987, s. 2)

Public accommodation

A place to stay in that is generally available to the public on an open basis.

Public conservation lands and waters

Lands and water areas administered by the Department of Conservation for whatever purpose, including the natural and historic resources of those areas covered by this conservation management strategy. Reserves administered by other agencies are not included in this definition.

Ramsar (Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat)

An intergovernmental treaty, that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

Recreational freshwater fisheries

Means any freshwater fisheries where the fishing of sports fish and indigenous freshwater fish is lawfully carried out for recreational purposes (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Regulations (for conservation areas)

A regulation made by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, under the relevant section the conservation legislation.

Related facilities

Any structure, or piece of equipment, that is used in conjunction or association with accommodation. Examples include garages, outhouses, and outdoor showers.

Relic

Population of a species whose distribution has been severely modified and disturbed with dispersed fragments remaining.

Remotely piloted aircraft system

Any unmanned aircraft piloted from a remote station, excluding

- (a) any model aircraft, up to 25kg, operated by visual reference for recreational purposes; or
- (b) an unmanned balloon, kite or rocket.

Reserve

Reserve has the meaning given to that term in the Reserves Act 1977 and includes the following categories of reserve: recreation, historic, scenic, nature, scientific, government purpose, local purpose.

Restoration

The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to restore indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes and their cultural and visual qualities; or for historic heritage, to return a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Road

Means:

- (a) a road that is formed and maintained for vehicle use by the public;
- (b) a route that is marked by the Department for vehicle use by the public or identified in a conservation management strategy or conservation management plan for use by vehicles generally or for a particular type of vehicle (for example a bicycle) or as a vehicle parking area

(Conservation General Policy 2005).

A road may or may not pass over a defined legal road.

See also definition of *Four-wheel drive road*.

Rohe

Geographical territory of an iwi or hapū (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Site

A defined area, within a wider place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Species

A group of organisms, which has evolved distinct, common, inheritable, features, and occupies a particular geographical range, and which is capable of interbreeding freely, but not with members of other species.

Sports fish

Every species of freshwater fish that the Governor-General may declare to be sports fish for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987; examples are trout and salmon.

Statement of Intent

The Statement of Intent (SOI) sets out the longer term directions for the Department. Its primary purpose is to enable Ministers, select committees, and the central and audit agencies that support them, to assess the performance of departments.

Structure

Any physical man-made structure/s, including but not limited to 'buildings' and 'utilities', but excludes 'roads'.

Takiwā

Place or territory used by or associated with an iwi, hapū or whānau (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Tangata whenua

Iwi or hapū that has customary authority in a place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Taonga

Valued resources or prized possessions held by Māori, both material and non-material. It is a broad concept that includes tangible and intangible aspects of natural and historic resources of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu and intellectual property (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Te Tarehu

An area covering part of Waipoua Forest established by the Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act 2008 where the Crown acknowledges the statement by Te Roroa of their cultural, spiritual, historic and/or traditional values relating to Waipoua Forest, and a list of protection principles directed at the Minister of Conservation to avoid harm to, or the diminishing of, the Te Roroa Values related to Te Tarehu.

Threatened (species)

Includes all species categorised as Nationally Critical, Nationally Endangered or Nationally Vulnerable under the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008.

Thrillseeker

Visitors seeking controlled risk activities as part of an exciting experience. For mountain biking, this may include downhill, freestyle and dirt jumping.

Tikanga

Māori custom, obligations and conditions (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Translocation

Movement by human intervention, of a species, from place to place, usually with the intention of improving, the status, of the species.

Urupā

Burial ground.

Utilities

Includes but not limited to these facilities based over or under the ground: structures and infrastructure for telecommunications; energy generation and transmission; sewerage; water supply and flood control; oil and gas; roads and airstrips; hydrological and weather stations (based on Conservation General Policy 2005).

Vehicle

A contrivance equipped with wheels, tracks, or revolving runners on which it moves or is moved. Includes a hovercraft, a skateboard, in-line skates, and roller skates; but does not include:

- (i) a perambulator or pushchair:
- (ii) a shopping or sporting trundler not propelled by mechanical power:
- (iii) a wheelbarrow or hand-trolley:
- (iv) repealed
- (v) a pedestrian-controlled lawnmower:
- (vi) a pedestrian-controlled agricultural machine not propelled by mechanical power:
- (vii) an article of furniture:
- (viii) a wheelchair not propelled by mechanical power:
- (ix) any other contrivance specified by the rules not to be a vehicle for the purposes of this definition:
- (x) any rail vehicle.

(based on Land Transport Act 1998: section 2)

Visitor

For the purposes of this CMS, visitors are people using areas and facilities managed by the Department. They include adults and children from both New Zealand and overseas, and they may either arrange their own visit or use the services of a concessionaire.

Wāhi tapu

A place sacred to Māori in traditional, spiritual, religious, ritual, or mythological sense (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6).

Wetlands

Permanent, or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, or land-water margins. They include swamps, bogs, estuaries, braided rivers, and lake margins (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Wild animal (see also *Game Animal*)

Has the meaning set out in the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and includes: possums, deer, wallabies, thar, wild goats, wild pigs, and chamois. It does not include an animal that is part of a herd designated to be a herd of special interest under section 16 of the Game Animal Council Act 2013 (Wild Animal Control Act 1977, section 2).

Wilderness Area

Any conservation area set aside as a Wilderness Area under section 18 of the Conservation Act 1987, or any part of a National Park set aside as a Wilderness Area under section 14 of the National Parks Act 1980.

Wildlife

Any animal (as defined as in the Wildlife Act 1953) that is living in a wild state; and includes any such animal or egg or offspring of any such animal held or hatched or born in captivity, whether pursuant to an authority granted under the Wildlife Act 1953 or otherwise; but does not include wild animals subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (Wildlife Act 1953, section 2).

World Heritage Area

A site designated under the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) World Heritage Convention as being of outstanding universal value as a site of cultural or natural heritage.

Appendix 1

Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that may meet the requirements of Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents

This table is presented to meet the requirements for enabling exemptions under Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). It does not exclude the need to meet all departmental requirements for the assessment of effects or other responsibilities under the RMA or other legislation (e.g. Building Act, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014). Section 4(3) of the RMA only applies to land use activities that otherwise require a resource consent from a territorial authority; resource consent may still be required from a regional council. All structures and tracks on public conservation lands managed by the Department are maintained, upgraded or built to the standards in SNZ HB 8630:2004. This table does not imply that the facilities included within it will be managed in perpetuity.

Where work affecting historic assets potentially exempt from resource consent is planned, consultation would generally be expected with NZ Historic Places Trust prior to such works being carried out.

The following process will be followed when using a Section 4(3) exemption:

- 1 Identify the district plan rules that are breached and that would otherwise require land use consent from the territorial authority.
- 2 Prepare a report for the relevant decision maker (area manager or conservator) setting out the rules that are breached, providing an assessment of environmental effects to a similar scale as would be expected if an application was made to the territorial authority, identifying any other consents required either under the RMA from the regional council or under other legislation, and demonstrating how the proposal meets the two tests set out in Section 4(3) of the RMA.
- 3 Receive confirmation from the relevant decision maker (area manager or conservator) that he/she is satisfied that Section 4(3) is met and that the proposal can proceed without land use consent from the relevant territorial authority.
- 4 Send a letter to the relevant territorial authority advising them of the proposal and that the exemption provided for under Section 4(3) of the RMA is being used.

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
Recreational tracks, roads and car parking areas			
1. Upgrade of existing tracks and roads to meet current departmental service standards using current alignment.	1. Construction of tracks and roads using cut to fill excavation, cut to waste excavation and levelling using hand tools, motorised equipment and machinery.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. 2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural 	Existing tracks, roads and car parks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ahipara Gumfields carpark • Akeake Historic Reserve • Arai Te Uru and Signal Station tracks (2) • Arai Te Uru to Waimamaku River track

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<p>2. Service standard upgrades of existing tracks and roads through partial or complete realignment to take advantage of better grades and terrain features, or to incorporate elements of natural or historic landscape.</p> <p>3. Construction of new tracks as agreed in consultation with the community.</p> <p>4. Improvements to any existing track as considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact, health and safety concern or visitor risk, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>2. Excavation of batter slopes to a maximum height of 1.5 m.</p> <p>3. Vegetation removal from the full width of the track corridor, and discretionary removal of any vegetation beyond the track and road corridor that is considered hazardous or that may adversely impact upon track components such as batter slopes, drainage or track surface materials.</p> <p>4. Aggregate surfacing, including placement and compaction of local and imported materials (from approved weed-free sources).</p> <p>5. Use of local materials in the vicinity of the asset corridor where necessary for obtaining fill/surfacing materials.</p> <p>6. Ground works of in-ground timber steps, including formation and levelling, drainage, and timber construction.</p> <p>7. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from the track surface to existing natural contours using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</p> <p>8. Re-formation and widening of roads to provide safe access for two vehicles and road stability to the required standards. Drainage improvement to prevent erosion and deterioration of</p>	<p>watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</p> <p>3. Alterations to land contours and slopes during track construction and upgrade.</p> <p>4. Removal of vegetation from the track corridor and from immediately adjacent to the asset corridor.</p> <p>5. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, on or in the immediate vicinity of the track or road.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bland Bay amenity area • Bratty's Bush track • Bream Bay pipeline track • Bream Bay Southern / Tip Road • Bream Head – Busby Head track system (3) • Brynderwyn Walkway • Cape Brett Lighthouse settlement (historic) • Cape Brett Track–Deep Water Cove – Cape Brett • Cape Reinga to Tapotupotu track • Cape Reinga walk • Chucks Cove amenity area / Road • Fig Tree Bay track • Flagstaff Hill loop track • Flagstaff Hill walk • Forest Pools amenity area • Four Sisters / Te Matua Ngahere walks (2) • Harrisons Scenic Reserve • Hauptoto Bush Road • Hen and Chickens Islands signs • Herekino Forest tracks (2) • Hirst Scenic Reserve • Hongi Hika / Parmeters tracks (3) • Hukatere walk • Kahuwhera Pa Historic Reserve • Kai Iwi Lakes Road to beach track • Kaimarama Bay amenity area • Kaitaia Walkway • Kaitaia Walkway to Diggers Valley Road • Kapowairua campsite • Karikari Bay track • Kauri Bushmans Memorial walk • Kerikeri Basin Recreation Reserve amenity area • Kerikeri River Scenic Reserve

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
	<p>the road surface and structure, and to provide safe vehicle access.</p> <p>9. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the track or road to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kohuroanaki skyline track • Kohuroanaki track • Kororipo Historic Reserve • Lake Ngatu amenity area / carpark • Lake Ngatu track • Lake Ohia/Gumholes walk • Lake Waiparaheke track • Lookout Road/Tower, Waipoua Forest • Lookout track, Waipoua Forest • Mahinepua Peninsula Scenic Reserve • Mair Road • Maitai Bay Campsite / day car park / boat ramp • Maitai Bay headland track • Manaia Ridge track • Mangamuka Basic Camp and amenity areas (2) • Mangamuka Gorge Walkway / Microwave track • Mangawhai Walkway • Manginangina kauri walk • Marsden B Community Area • Marsden Cross Historic Reserve • Matauahi Bay amenity area • Maunganui Bluff walking track to beach • Mimiwhangata Coastal Park tracks (9) / road • Mimiwhangata lodge and cottages booked accommodation • Morepork track • Motuarahi Island Scenic Reserve • Motuarohia Island Recreation Reserve • Motukawanui Island Scenic Reserve • Motukiore Island Recreation Reserve amenity area • Motumaire Island Historic Reserve • Moturua Island Scenic Reserve • Motutangi Swamp Scientific Reserve Road • Motutara track

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mount Tutamoe track • Nancy Fladgate track • North Cape Road • Oke Bay Scenic Reserve • Okiato Historic Reserve • Omahuta—Jackson's Road • Omahuta—Pukekohe Stream track • Omahuta Kauri Sanctuary Road • Omahuta Sanctuary track • Opua Forest kauri walk • Otaika Valley track • Otamure campground, Whananaki • Otangawhiti lookout • Otito Reserve • Paetotara lookout • Paihia Oromahoe track—including Paihia lookout track • Pakotai track • Pandora access carpark • Paparahi Reserve track • Paradise Shores beach tracks • Pataua Island amenity area • Peach Cove Beach track • Piroa Falls Walk, Waipu Gorge Scenic Reserve • Pouto Peninsula Road End Reserve • Pukenui Forest tracks (2) • Puketi—Bramley's Road • Puketi—Mangahorehore track • Puketi—Mokau Road • Puketi—Onekura track • Puketi—Pirau Road • Puketi—Pukatea tracks • Puketi—Takapau track • Puketi—Waihoanga Gorge kauri walk

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Puketi—Waipapa River track ● Puketi—Walnut track ● Puketi Amenity Area and Nature Trail ● Puketi Camp / booked accommodation ● Puri Bay campground, Whangaruru ● Puwheke Road/carpark ● Rainbow Falls Scenic Reserve ● Rangikapiti Mill Bay / Coopers Beach track ● Rangikapiti Pā walks (2) ● Rangiputa carpark ● Rarawa Beach track ● Rarawa campground ● Reotahi ● Rickers track, Waipoua Forest ● Ruakaka Beach access tracks—Middle ● Ruakaka Beach access tracks—North ● Ruakaka Beach access tracks—South ● Ruakaka Racecourse beach access ● Ruapekapeka ● Russell Forest Walkway ● Russell Visitor Centre carpark ● Scott Point to Twilight Beach track ● Six Foot track ● Spirits Bay Road ● Sweetwaters access track ● Taheke Scenic Reserve ● Taita Bridle track ● Tane Mahuta walk ● Tane Moana track ● Tangihua Forest—day visitor tracks (4) ● Tangihua Forest—tracks (3) ● Tangihua Lodge Road / confidence course ● Tapeka Point Historic Reserve

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Taputaputa campground • Taputaputa Road / amenity area • Taputaputa—Spirits Bay tracks • Taronui Bay Recreation Reserve • Taumarumaru Reserve Walk • Taurikura Hall • Te Paki Stream Road • Te Paki Stream Road State Highway 1 site • Te Paki Trig roads • Te Toroa track • Te Werahi Beach track • Toatoa track • Tokatoka walk • Toretore Island Scenic Reserve • Trounson Kauri Park campsite • Trounson Kauri Park loop walk • Tutamoe track • Tutukaka Recreation Reserve tracks • Twilght/Te Werahi loop track • Twin Bole Kauri Track / Kauri Grove Walk • Uretiti Amenity Areas—including State Highway 1 pull over • Uretiti Campground • Urupukapuka—Otehei Bay Track • Urupukapuka Island campsites (3) • Urupukapuka Island Recreation Reserve • Waikahoa campground, Mimiwhangata • Waikietie Domain Hall and associated buildings • Waima Main Range track • Waioatemarama Falls Gorge Track • Waioatemarama loop track • Waioatemarama loop track to Hauturu • Waipoua Coastal tramping track sections • Waipu Camp beach access tracks

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Waipu Caves Walkway • Waipu Refuge amenity areas • Wairau, Kararoa and Pawakatutu roads (7) • Wairua Falls Scenic Reserve amenity area • Waitiki Information Site amenity area • Waoku Coach Road • Warawara track • Waro Limestone Scenic Reserve • Watkin Powell track • Wekaweka track • Whananaki Walkway • Whangamumu Scenic Reserve • Whangaroa – Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve • Whangaroa – St Pauls Historic Reserve • Whangaruru North Head tracks (2) • Whangatupere access track • Wharf Road, car park, boat access • Whattiri Domain Hall and associated buildings • Yakas – Waipoua Visitor Centre / Old Road – Rickers tracks • Yakas track
Recreational structures* and buildings			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upgrade of existing structures and buildings to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements are met, such as minimum access widths and safety barrier heights as specified within SNZ 8630:2004. 2. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar structures and buildings built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of structure and building footprints, and excavation of piles and footings. 2. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment/treatment. 3. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from structure and building footprint to existing natural contours using various means, 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. 2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. 3. Alterations to land contours and slopes during structure and building construction. 	<p>Existing structures and buildings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Akeake Historic Reserve • Arai Te Uru and Signal Station tracks • Arai Te Uru to Waimamaku River tracks • Bream Head–Busby Head track system • Cape Brett Lighthouse settlement • Cape Brett tracks—Deep Water Cove – Cape Brett • Cape Reinga Walk • Flagstaff Hill loop track • Flagstaff Hill walk • Forest Pools amenity area • Four Sisters/Te Matua Ngahere walks

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<p>existing structures and buildings as they reach the end of their projected/economic life.</p> <p>3. Construction of new structures and buildings required to meet service standards for existing tracks, roads, amenity areas and campgrounds.</p> <p>4. Construction of new structures and buildings as a component of development work for new tracks, roads, amenity areas and campgrounds.</p> <p>5. Improvements to any existing structure and building considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact and health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs.</p> <p>4. Construction of structures and buildings such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, viewing platforms, huts, shelters, toilets, signage and ladders, in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 for the relevant visitor group.</p> <p>5. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the structure or building to ensure that their integrity is not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>4. Removal of vegetation from structure and building footprint and immediate surroundings.</p> <p>5. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas.</p> <p>6. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, and aesthetic impact on historic landscapes.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Harrisons Scenic Reserve • Hen and Chickens Islands signs • Hongi Hika / Parmeters tracks • Hukutere Hall Recreation Reserve • Kai Iwi Lakes Road to beach tracks • Kaimarama Bay amenity area • Kaitaia Walkway • Kapowairua campsite • Karikari Bay track • Kauri Bushmans Memorial walk • Kerikeri Basin Recreation Reserve amenity area • Kerikeri River Scenic Reserve • Kohuroanaki skyline track • Kororipo Historic Reserve • Lake Ngatu amenity area / carpark • Lake Ngatu track • Lake Ohia/Gumholes walk • Lookout Road/Tower, Waipoua Forest • Mahinepua Peninsula Scenic Reserve • Mair Road • Maitai Bay Campsite / day car park / boat ramp • Manaia Ridge track • Mangamuka basic camp and amenity areas • Manginangina kauri walk • Marsden Cross Historic Reserve • Matauwhi Bay amenity area • Maunganui Bluff walking tracks to beach • Mimiwhangata Coastal Park tracks (9) / road • Mimiwhangata lodge and cottages booked accommodation • Motuaroa Island Recreation Reserve • Motukawanui Island Scenic Reserve • Motukiore Island Recreation Reserve amenity area • Moturua Island Scenic Reserve

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mount Tutamoe track • Nancy Fladgate track • North Cape Road • Okiato Historic Reserve • Omahuta Kauri Sanctuary road • Omahuta Sanctuary track • Opua Forest Kauri walk • Otaika Valley Track • Otamure campground, Whananaki • Otangawhiti lookout • Paihia Oromahoe tracks—including Paihia Lookout tracks • Pakotai track • Pataua Island amenity area • Piroa Falls Walk, Waipu Gorge Scenic Reserve • Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve signs • Pukenui Forest tracks • Puketi—Mokau Road • Puketi—Takapau track • Puketi—Waihoanga Gorge kauri walk • Puketi—Waipapa River track • Puketi Amenity Area and Nature Trail • Puketi Camp / booked accommodation • Puriri Bay campground, Whangaruru • Rainbow Falls Scenic Reserve • Rangikapiti Pā walks • Rarawa Beach track • Rarawa campground • Rickers Track, Waipoua Forest • Ruapekapeka • Russell Forest Walkway • Russell Visitor Centre carpark • Scott Point to Twilight Beach track • Spirits Bay Road

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sweetwaters access track • Taheke Scenic Reserve • Taita Bridle track • Tane Mahuta walk • Tane Moana track • Tangihua Forest—day visitor tracks (4) • Tangihua Forest—tracks (3) • Tangihua Lodge Road / Confidence Course • Tapeka Point Historic Reserve • Tapataputa—Spirits Bay tracks • Tapataputa campground • Tapataputa Road / amenity area • Taronui Bay Recreation Reserve • Taumarumaru Reserve walk • Taurikura Hall • Te Paki Stream Road • Te Toroa track • Te Werahi Beach track • Tokatoka walk • Trounson Kauri Park campsite • Trounson Kauri Park loop walk • Tutamoe track • Tutukaka Recreation Reserve tracks • Twiligh/Te Werahi loop track • Twin Bole Kauri Track / Kauri Grove walk • Uretiti amenity areas—including State Highway 1 pull over • Uretiti Campground • Urupukapuka—Otehei Bay track • Urupukapuka Island campsites • Urupukapuka Island Recreation Reserve • Waikahoa campground Mimiwhangata • Waikiekie Domain Hall and associated buildings • Waima Main Range track

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Waioitemarama Falls Gorge track • Waioitemarama loop track • Waipoua coastal tramping tracks sections • Waipu Caves Walkway • Wairau, Kararoa and Pawakatutu Roads • Wairua Falls Scenic Reserve amenity area • Waitiki Information Site amenity area • Waoku Coach Road • Warawara track • Watkin Powell track • Whangamumu Scenic Reserve • Whangaroa—Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve • Whangaroa—St Pauls Historic Reserve • Whangaruru North Head tracks • Whatitiri Domain Hall and association buildings • Yakas track
Campsites and amenities			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upgrade of existing campsites and amenities to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements for campgrounds and amenity areas are met, as specified within SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard. 2. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar campsites and amenities built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing campground and amenity assets as they reach the end of their 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of campground and amenity footprint, and excavation of piles and footings. 2. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment/treatment, including effluent dispersal fields and in-ground waste tanks. 3. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from building and structural campground and amenity footprint to existing natural contours using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. 2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. Fill materials not normally found on the site (e.g. scoria) may be imported. 3. Alterations to land contours and slopes during campsite and amenity construction. 4. Removal of vegetation from the asset footprint and from immediately around the 	<p>Existing campsites and amenities</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ahipara Gumfields carpark • Akeake Historic Reserve • Arai Te Uru and Signal Station tracks • Bland Bay amenity area • Bream Bay Southern / Tip Road • Bream Head – Busby Head track system • Brynderwyn Walkway • Cape Brett tracks—Deep Water Cove – Cape Brett • Cape Reinga walk • Chucks Cove amenity area / road • Flagstaff Hill walk • Forest Pools amenity area • Four Sisters/Te Matua Ngahere walks • Harrison's Scenic Reserve • Herekino Forest tracks

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<p>projected/economic life.</p> <p>3. Construction of new campgrounds and amenities required to meet service standards for existing campgrounds and amenity areas.</p> <p>4. Construction of new assets such as structures and buildings as a component of development work for new campgrounds and amenity areas.</p> <p>5. Improvements to any existing asset or establishment of new assets considered necessary to manage, meet regulatory requirements, and mitigate any environmental impact or health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>sumps and cut-outs.</p> <p>4. Construction of campgrounds and amenities such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, shelters, toilets, showers, signage and ladders, in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard for the visitor group.</p> <p>5. Maintenance of the historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the campsite or amenity to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>campground and amenity.</p> <p>5. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas.</p> <p>6. Noise from increased usage of campground and amenity sites.</p> <p>7. Increased water take for operation of campground, campsite and amenities.</p> <p>8. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, on or in the immediate vicinity of the campsite or amenity.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hirst Scenic Reserve • Hongi Hika / Parmeters tracks • Kaimarama Bay amenity area • Kaitaia Walkway • Kapowainua campsite • Karikari Bay track • Kerikeri Basin Recreation Reserve amenity area • Kerikeri River Scenic Reserve • Kohuroanaki skyline track • Lake Ngatu amenity area / carpark • Lake Ngatu track • Lake Ohia/Gumholes walk • Lookout Road/Tower, Waipoua Forest • Mair Road • Maitai Bay Campsite / day car park / boat ramp • Manaia Ridge track • Mangamuka basic camp and amenity areas • Manginangina kauri walk • Matauwhi Bay amenity area • Mimiwhangata Coastal Park tracks/Road • Mimiwhangata lodge and cottages booked accommodation • Motuarahi Island Scenic Reserve • Motumaire Island Historic Reserve • Moturua Island Scenic Reserve • Nancy Fladgate track • Omahuta Kauri Sanctuary Road • Omahuta Sanctuary track • Otaika Valley track • Otamure campground, Whananaki • Paetotara lookout • Pahiia Oromahoe tracks—including Pahiia Lookout tracks • Pandora access carpark • Paparahi Reserve track

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pataua Island amenity area • Piroa Falls Walk, Waipu Gorge Scenic Reserve • Pouto Peninsula Road End Reserve • Pukenui Forest tracks (2) • Puketi–Waihoanga Gorge Kauri walk • Puketi amenity area and nature trail • Puketi Camp / booked accommodation • Puriri Bay campground, Whangaruru • Puwheke Road/carpark • Rainbow Falls Scenic Reserve • Rangikapiti Mill Bay / Coopers Beach tracks • Rangikapiti Pā walks • Rangiputa carpark • Rarawa campground • Rickers track, Waipoua Forest • Ruapekapeka • Russell Forest Walkway • Russell Visitor Centre carpark • Taheke Scenic Reserve • Tane Mahuta walk • Tangihua Forest–day visitor tracks • Tangihua Lodge Road / confidence course • Taputaputa – Spirits Bay tracks • Taputaputa campground • Taputaputa Road / amenity area • Taumarumaru Reserve walk • Taurikura Hall • Te Paki Stream Road • Te Paki Stream Road State Highway 1 i-site • Tokatoka walk • Tounson Kauri Park campsite • Tounson Kauri Park loop walk • Tutukaka Recreation Reserve tracks

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Twilight/Te Werahi loop track • Uretiti amenity areas—including State Highway 1 pull over • Uretiti campground • Urupukapuka Island campsites • Urupukapuka Island Recreation Reserve • Waikahoa campground, Mimiwhangata • Waikiekie Domain Hall and associated buildings • Waiotemarama Falls Gorge track • Waipu Caves Walkway • Waipu Refuge amenity areas • Wairua Falls Scenic Reserve amenity area • Waitiki Information Site amenity area • Wekaweka track • Whangamumu Scenic Reserve • Wharf Road, car park, boat access • Whatitiri Domain Hall and association buildings • Yakas track
Historic assets—remedial work and maintenance			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Maintenance of historic places to departmental service standards, and ICOMOS and NZHPT standards and guidelines. 2. Stabilisation of condition of historic assets by conservation treatments and land stabilising, e.g. construction of retaining walls. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vegetation management around historic places, maintenance of drainage channels, and management of safety issues including barrier construction. 2. Repairs and conservation treatments as scheduled to concrete, masonry, metal, timber and earthwork structures. 3. Maintenance of historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the historic asset to ensure that they are not adversely impacted. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Minor soil disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. 2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. 3. Removal of vegetation from assets and immediate vicinity. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Akeake Historic Reserve • Arai Te Uru and Signal Station tracks (2) • Bream Head – Busby Head track system (3) • Cape Brett Lighthouse settlement (historic) • Cape Brett tracks—Deep Water Cove – Cape Brett • Cape Reinga walk • Flagstaff Hill walk • Kerikeri Hydro Power Station Scenic Reserve • Kohukohu Old School Historic Reserve • Kororipo Historic Reserve • Mahinepua Peninsula Scenic Reserve • Mangonui Courthouse Historic Reserve • Marsden Cross Historic Reserve • Mimiwhangata Coastal Park tracks (9) / Road, including Paparahi • Motuarohia Island Recreation Reserve

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motukawanui Island Scenic Reserve • Motukiore Island Recreation Reserve amenity area • Motuopao Island Nature Reserve • Moturua Island Scenic Reserve • Muiata Pa Historic Reserve • Okiato Historic Reserve • Onoke Railway Quarry • Puhipuhi Mercury Mines • Rangikapiti Pā walks (2) • Ruapekapeka • Te Pahi Recreation Reserve—Taumatawhana/Tomoatawhana pā site • Tapeka Point Historic Reserve • Taumarumaru Reserve walk • Tauroa Point Stewardship Area • Urupukapuka Island Recreation Reserve • Waewaetorea Island Recreation Reserve • Waipoua Forest fire lookout building • Waro Limestone Scenic Reserve • Whangamumu Scenic Reserve • Whangaroa—Ranfurly Bay Scenic Reserve • Whangaroa—St Pauls Historic Reserve
<p>Signs</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Erection of signage on or within close proximity to public conservation land for the purpose of providing information and interpretation to the public. 2. Erection of signage on and off public conservation land for the purpose of informing people about fire lighting restrictions. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Works associated with the erection of signage 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Aesthetic impact from man-made structures in natural areas. 2. Removal of vegetation from sign footprint and immediate vicinity. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All public conservation land within Northland • Other land within 1 km of public conservation land for fire purposes or where permission has been given by the landowner

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
Tracks, roads and facilities used for management purposes (Including staff accommodation and wardens' quarters)			
1. Refer to 'Activity scope' for 'Recreational tracks, roads and car parking areas', 'Recreational structures and buildings' and 'Campsites and amenities'.	1. Refer to 'Management actions' for 'Recreational tracks, roads and car parking areas', 'Recreational structures and buildings' and 'Campsites and amenities'. NB. Not all visitor standards noted above will apply to tracks, roads and facilities used for management purposes. In some cases a lesser standard may apply.	1. Refer to 'Environmental impacts' for 'Recreational tracks, roads and car parking areas', 'Recreational structures and buildings' and 'Campsites and amenities'.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All public conservation land in Northland where conservation management programmes are being undertaken • Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner
Other management-related activities			
1. Erection of fences on public conservation land and its boundaries. 2. Habitat enhancement. 3. Pest control and/or eradication. 4. Fire management	1. Vegetation removal to provide clear lines for fences. 2. Some animal pest operations (note: discharge permits will be required for operations utilising pesticides). 3. Earthworks and vegetation clearance associated with fire management or habitat enhancement, i.e. pond/drain creation or re-alignment. 4. General access required to perform above tasks.	1. Vegetation removal. 2. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. 3. Death and likely eradication of target mammalian pests; possible death of non-target species.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All public conservation land in Northland where conservation programmes are being undertaken • Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner
Hazardous goods			
1. Use, transportation, storage and disposal of hazardous substances.	1. Storage, transportation and application of hazardous substances including, but not limited to, flammable liquids, pesticides and herbicides.	1. Ground and water contamination, species disturbance, staff and public health risks, if substance storage and use codes not followed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All public conservation land in Northland where conservation programmes are being undertaken • Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner

* Structures for visitor purposes include viewing platforms, steps/stairs, boardwalks, bridges, handrails, safety fences, stiles, signage, etc.

Appendix 2

Important ecosystems and habitats within Northland

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Communities on ultramafic substrates	Pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), tānekaha (<i>Phyllocladus trichomanoides</i>) forest/scrub/rockland	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land.	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance.
	Dune vegetation	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals, and human impacts and pressures.	Land administered by local authorities, public conservation land and private land.	Plant and animal pest control in some areas. Foredune rehabilitation in some areas. Biosecurity surveillance and management. Advocacy and consultation.
Forest of mild climates	Pingao sedge/land	Fragmentation in kahikatea forest remnants, and biosecurity of pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance and management. Advocate for legal protection of highest priority lowland alluvial kahikatea forest habitats on private land.
	Oioi (<i>Apodasma similis</i>), wīwī/knobby clubbrush (<i>Ficinia nodosa</i>) sedge/land			
	Kahikatea (<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>) forest			
Forest of warm climates	Tawa (<i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i>), <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals, and human impacts and pressures, particularly in coastal and lowland environments.	Public conservation land, land administered by local authorities and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance and management. Advocacy and consultation, including supporting legal protection of highest priority sites on private land.
	Tōwai (<i>Weinmannia silvicola</i>), maire tawake/swamp maire (<i>Syzygium maire</i>) forest			
	Rimu (<i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i>), taraire (<i>Beilschmiedia tariaire</i>), tawa forest			
	Kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>) forest			
	Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest			

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, New Zealand beeches forest Tawa, kohekohe (<i>Dysoxylum spectabile</i>), mangleo (<i>Litsea calicaris</i>) broadleaved, podocarp forest Tōtara (<i>Podocarpus totara</i>), matai (<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>), mānatu/ribbonwood (<i>Plagianthus regius</i>) forest Pōhutukawa, pūriri (<i>Vitex lucens</i>), karaka (<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>) broadleaved forest Tōtara, broadleaved forest Tōtara, matai, pūriri forest Kahikatea, pukatea (<i>Laurelia novae-zelandiae</i>) forest Geothermal heated water and steam Volcanic Windform Riverine Shoreline Dune	Supports threatened and at risk species.			
	Confined to Ngawha Springs and unique to Northland. Supports threatened and at risk species.	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance. Advocacy and consultation.
	Includes a chain of dune lakes, particularly at Aupouri, Karikari and Pouto, which support many threatened and at risk species and some of the most outstanding lakes in New Zealand. Lake Omapere is Northland's largest lake and Lake Taharoa (dune lake) is Northland's deepest lake.	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land, land administered by local authorities and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance and management. Advocacy and consultation.

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Rivers	Information not yet available	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance. Advocacy and consultation
Saline communities	<p>Mānawa/mangrove (<i>Avicennia marina</i>) forest and scrub</p> <p>Iceplant, (<i>Disphyma australe</i>), Ureure/glasswort (<i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i>) herbfield/loamfield</p>	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land, land administered by local authorities and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance. Advocacy and consultation
Wetlands	<p>Gumland</p> <p>Mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>), mingimingi (<i>Coprosma propinqua</i>), <i>Baumea</i> scrub/sedgeland</p> <p>Oioi restiad rushland/reedland</p> <p><i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</p> <p>Mānuka, tanglefern (<i>Gleichenia dicarpa</i>) scrub/fermland</p> <p>Lakeshore turf Herbfield</p> <p>Flaxland</p> <p>Raupō (<i>Typha orientalis</i>) reedland</p> <p>Mānuka, wire rush (<i>Empodisma minus</i>) restiad rushland</p> <p>Coprosma, <i>Olearia</i> scrub</p> <p>Bamboo rush (<i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i>), wire rush restiad rushland</p>	Biosecurity of pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Biosecurity surveillance and management. Advocacy and consultation.

Appendix 3

Islands over 1 ha administered by the Department of Conservation in Northland

Island Group/Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification* (10-year goal)	Mammalian pests	Issues
Black Rocks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Battleship Rock • Black Rocks 	Scenic Reserve	Special Character	Nil	Weeds
Bream Islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Guano Island • Mauitaha Island 	Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact	Nil	Unauthorised landings, weeds
Cavalli Islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motukawanui Island 	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Kiore/Pacific rat (<i>Rattus exulans</i>)	Weeds, unauthorised camping
Eastern Bay of Islands group (Ipipiri) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motuarohia Island[†] • Motuoi Island • Moturua Island • Okahu Island • Poroporo Island • Rangiatea Island • Urupukapuka Island 	Recreation Reserve Scenic Reserve Scenic Reserve Scenic Reserve Scenic Reserve Recreation Reserve	Open Sanctuary Open Sanctuary Open Sanctuary Ecosystem Restoration Open Sanctuary Open Sanctuary Multiple Use	Nil Nil Nil Nil Nil Nil	Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds, unpermitted commercial operations Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds, unauthorised camping, unpermitted commercial operations Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds, visitor carrying capacity Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds, visitor carrying capacity, unauthorised camping, unpermitted commercial operations

Island Group/Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification* (10-year goal)	Mammalian pests	Issues
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Waewaetorea Island 	Recreation Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Nil	Intermittent rodent incursions, weeds, visitor impacts on historic sites, unpermitted commercial operations
Hen and Chickens Islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Coppermine Island (Mauipe) Lady Alice Island (Mauipe) Muriwhenua Island Pupuha Island 	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Nil Nil Nil	Unauthorised landings, weeds, ship wrecks
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sail Rock 	Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact	Nil	Weeds, ship wrecks
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Taranga Island Wareware Island Whatupuke Island (Mauiroto) 	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Nil [‡]	Unauthorised landings, weeds, ship wrecks
Kerikeri Inlet islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Motupapa Island 	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Norway rat (<i>Rattus norvegicus</i>)	Weeds
Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manawatāwhi/Great Island North East Island Princes Islands South West Island West Island 	Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact	Nil Nil Nil Nil Nil	Unauthorised landings, weed control
Motuopao Island <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Motuopao Island 	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration	Nil	Unauthorised landings, weed control
Paihia islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Motuarahi Island Motumaire Island Toretore Island 	Scenic Reserve Historic Reserve Scenic Reserve	Special Character Special Character Special Character	Norway rat Norway rat Norway rat	Adjacent development on nesting birds Large vessels and wakeboarding boats on foreshores Argentine ants Rainbow skinks Weeds, rubbish Weeds, rubbish Weeds, rubbish

Island Group/Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification* (10-year goal)	Mammalian pests	Issues
Poor Knights Islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aorangi Island • Aorangaia Island • Archway Island (Te Aaka) • High Peak Rocks 	Nature Reserve Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact Minimum Impact	Nil Nil Nil Nil	Unauthorised landings, weeds, biosecurity risk from high boat use Weeds, biosecurity risk from high boat use
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motu Kapiti Island • Sugarloaf Rock • Tawhiti Rahi Island 	Nature Reserve Nature Reserve Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact Minimum Impact Minimum Impact	Nil Nil Nil	Unauthorised landings, weeds, biosecurity risk from high boat use Weeds, biosecurity risk from high boat use Unauthorised landings, weeds, biosecurity risk from high boat use
Simmonds Islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motu Puruhi Island • Terakautuhaka Island 	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Nil Nil	Unauthorised landings, weed control
Walker Island <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Walker Island 	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Unknown	Unauthorised landings, weed control
Whangaruru/Mimiwhangata islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rimariki Island 	Scenic Reserve	Special Character	Norway rat present, other rodent species unknown	Rodent incursions, weeds

* The island classification is aligned with the 10-year term of this strategy and represents the desired future state of each island (Department of Conservation 2010: The island strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation). The island classification is intended for guidance only, and needs to be read in conjunction with the outcome and policies for Places in Part Two of this strategy.

† This island is not wholly administered by the Department of Conservation.

‡ Kiore were eradicated from Taranga Island in May 2011.

Appendix 4

Priority ecosystems on public conservation lands and waters (excluding marine) in Northland identified by the Department using the natural heritage prioritising processes as at September 2013

This list has been taken from the Department's national list of 941 ecosystem units, which represent the full range of New Zealand's terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems (except for sites on private land, which are not listed). Please note, the table does not necessarily list all nationally significant ecosystems present in Northland. The list is subject to change as priorities are refined and revised—new sites may be added and others removed.

Specifically, the list identifies the priority ecosystem units on public conservation lands and waters in Northland which occur in the 2013 top 500 ecosystem unit rankings.

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Bream Head	Rimu, taraire, tawa forest Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Scenic Reserve	684.3
Bream Islands	Iceplant, Ureure/glasswort herbfield/loamfield	Nature Reserve	6.0
Kaihu Forest	Tōwai, maire tawake/swamp maire forest Tawa, Weinmannia podocarp forest Kahikatea, pukatea forest	Conservation Park	2404.9
Kaipara North Head	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest Tōtara, broadleaved forest	Conservation Area	6705
Kokota Spit & Great Exhibition Bay			2258.2
Lake Ohia	Gumland Mānuka, mingimingi, <i>Baumea</i> scrub/sedgeland Mānuka, tanglefern scrub/fernland	Conservation Area	1571.1
Manganui River	Kahikatea, pukatea forest Kahikatea forest Tōtara, mataī, mānatu/ribbonwood forest Coprosma, Olearia scrub Oioi restiad rushland/reedland Gumland Mānuka, mingimingi, <i>Baumea</i> scrub/sedgeland	Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve	995.5
Mangawhai Heads	Spinifex, pingao grassland/sedgeland	Reserve	247.4
Mareretu Forest	Kauri forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest	Conservation Area	1357.5
Marotere Islands	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Nature Reserve	444.7
Mataraua Forest	Tōwai, maire tawake/swamp maire forest Tawa, Weinmannia podocarp forest Rimu, taraire, tawa forest Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved, podocarp forest	Conservation Park	5333.2
Maungatapere	Rimu, taraire, tawa forest Kahikatea, pukatea forest	Scenic Reserve	64.5
Motu-Puruhi and Terakautuhaka Islands	Iceplant/Ureure glasswort, herbfield/loam field	Nature Reserve	6.0

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Ngawha Springs	Geothermal heated water and steam Gumland Mānuka, mingimingi, <i>Baumea</i> scrub/sedgeland	Conservation Area, Scenic Reserve and Scientific Reserve	97.4
Omahuta	Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, New Zealand beeches forest	Conservation Park	7952.3
Papakuri Scenic Reserve	Tōtara, mataī, pūriri forest	Scenic Reserve	126.6
Poor Knights Islands	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Nature Reserve	281.0
Pukenui Forest	Tōtara, mataī, pūriri forest	Conservation Park	1595.9
Puketi	Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest	Conservation Park	8470.5
Surville Cliffs	Pōhutukawa, tānekaha forest/scrub/rockland	Scientific Reserve	1027.7
Tangihua	Kauri forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest Tawa, kohekohe, mangleo broadleaved, podocarp forest	Conservation Park	3220.4
Tapuwae	Rimu, taraire, tawa forest	Scenic Reserve	692.0
Taranga Island	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Nature Reserve	487.8
Te Arai	Tōtara, broadleaved forest Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Conservation Area	1210.9
Te Paki East	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest Gumland Mānuka, mingimingi, <i>Baumea</i> scrub/sedgeland Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland	Scenic Reserve	6747.8
Te Ramanuka	Tōtara, broadleaved forest	Conservation Area	374.9
Three Kings Islands	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Nature Reserve	504.0
Trounson Kauri Park	Kauri forest	Scenic Reserve	339.8
Waima Forest	Tōwai, maire tawake/swamp maire forest Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest Rimu, taraire, tawa forest	Conservation Park	5191.7
Waipoua	Rimu, taraire, tawa forest Kauri forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest Tōtara, mataī, pūriri forest	Conservation Park	12276.9
Wairua River Wildlife Management Reserve	<i>Coprosma</i> , <i>Olearia</i> scrub Kahikatea forest Oioi restiad rushland/reedland	Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve	159.0
Whakaangi	Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, New Zealand beeches forest	Scenic Reserve	677.3
Whangaroa	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Scenic Reserve	1838.9
Whangaruru North Head Scenic Reserve	Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest	Scenic Reserve	431.1
Wiroa Conservation Area	Gumland Mānuka, mingimingi, <i>Baumea</i> scrub/sedgeland	Conservation Area	63.9

Appendix 5

Threats, pests and wild animals²³ present in Northland

Table A5.1. Animal pests.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Birds				
Canada goose <i>Branta canadensis</i>	Common	Competition with native species for food and nesting sites; fouling of waterways	Nil	No action
Eastern rosella <i>Platycercus eximius</i>	Widespread	Competition with native species for food and nesting sites	Nil	No action
Indian myna <i>Actidotheres tristis</i>	Widespread	Competition with native species for food and nesting sites	Nil	No action
Magpies <i>Gymnorhina tibicen</i>	Widespread	Competition with native species for food and nesting sites	Nil	No action
Freshwater fish				
Brown bullhead catfish <i>Ameiurus nebulosus</i>	Limited	Predation and competition with native species	Nil	No action
Caudo <i>Phalloceras candimaculatus</i>	Localised	Reported predation and competition with native species	Nil	No action
Gambusia <i>Gambusia affinis</i>	Widespread	Predation and competition with native species	Nil	No action
Goldfish <i>Carassius auratus</i>	Limited	Predation and competition with native species	Nil	No action
Koi carp <i>Cyprinus carpio</i>	Eradicated from known sites	Predation and competition with native species	Eradication	Eradication at any new sites
Perch <i>Perca fluviatilis</i>	Known in a few localities	Predation and competition with native species	Nil	No action
Rudd <i>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</i>	Widespread	Predation and competition with native species	Nil	No action
Tench <i>Tinca tinca</i>	Known only in Waitangi River	Predation and competition with native species	Nil	No action

²³ May also be Game animals – see Glossary for definition.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Invertebrates				
Argentine ant <i>Linepithema humile</i>	Common around human habitation and expanding	Competition with native species for food resources (nectar/fruits/invertebrates) and predation	Limited to scheduled surveillance and advice to public; very limited treatment areas	Continue surveillance at offices and key sites as per management and advocacy strategy
Common wasp <i>Vespula vulgaris</i>	Widespread	Competition with native species for nectar and invertebrates	Poison nests where nuisance to humans (near tracks/huts)	Near huts, tracks and campgrounds
Darwin's ant <i>Deleromyrma darwiniana</i>	Limited (Whangarei)	Competition with native species for food resources (nectar/fruits/invertebrates) and predation	Nil	Surveillance only during key site monitoring for invasive ants, as for Argentine ants
German wasp <i>Vespula germanica</i>	Widespread	Competition with native species for nectar and invertebrates	Poison nests where nuisance to humans (near tracks/huts)	Near huts, tracks and campgrounds
Mammalian pests				
Possum <i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>	Widespread except for islands	Eats leaves, seeds, seedlings, flowers, buds, fruit, invertebrates, lizards, eggs, birds; competes with native birds for nesting sites	Possum control programme in areas under sustained management (AUSM)	AUSM (portions of the following reserves— Te Pahi, North Cape (Otou), Warawara, Raetea, Puketi/Omahuta, Utakura, Waima, Waipoua, Mataraua, Trounson, Whangaruru, Mimiwhangata, Manaia Ridge, Bream Head)
Cat <i>Felis catus</i>	Widespread except for islands	Eats invertebrates, lizards, birds eggs and fledglings (as well as rodents, lagomorphs and mustelids)	Limited to specific areas, as for stoats	As for stoats
Deer: Fallow deer <i>Dama dama</i> Red deer <i>Cervus elaphus</i> Sika deer <i>Cervus Nippon</i> Wapiti <i>Cervus canadensis</i>	Sika only known to be in Russell but very few following an 11-year eradication operation; frequent/regular farm escape events; occasional illegal releases;	Eats lower tier vegetation and seedlings	Immediate response to reports of escaped farmed deer and illegal releases; ongoing eradication of remaining sika in Russell Forest; ongoing liaison with deer farmers, including annual fence inspections	Wild deer populations in very low numbers of limited geographic distribution as a result of illegal releases or escapes from the 29 deer farms. Biannual perimeter fence inspections to maintain standards. Escapes due to fence damage from flooding, windfalls, subsidence, other animals such as pigs burrowing, theft and criminal damage. Escape incidence often related to animals value and market conditions.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Goat <i>Capra hircus</i>	Widespread except for Te Pahi / North Cape (Otou) / Mokaikai, Trounson and some other small peninsula areas where previously eradicated (Whangaruru, Bream Head, Cape Brett)	Eats lower and mid-tier vegetation and negatively affects natural regeneration; contributes to erosion, especially on steep slopes	Ongoing control in some areas of significant forests, similar to possum control programme	Herekino, Warawara Raetea, Puketi, Waima, Waipoua, Mataraua, Mimiwhangata; maintain goat-free areas
Hare <i>Lepus europaeus occidentalis</i>	Widespread	Eats lower tier vegetation; can have particularly large impacts where revegetation programmes occur	Nil	No action
Hedgehog <i>Erinaceus europaeus occidentalis</i>	Widespread except for islands	Eats invertebrates, lizards, birds eggs and fledglings	Nil—sometimes captured as incidental bycatch (beneficial) from mustelid trapping; no budget available	No action
Mouse <i>Mus musculus</i>	Widespread	Eats seeds, fruits and invertebrates	Nil	No action
Mustelids: Ferret <i>Mustela furo</i> Stoat <i>Mustela erminea</i> Weasel <i>Mustela nivalis vulgaris</i>	Widespread except for islands	Eats birds and eggs (as well as rodents/lagomorphs)	Limited to specific areas (Trounson, Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary, shorebird protection around Whangarei, pāteke/brown teal protection)	Preferably in areas where other animal pests are also controlled, otherwise lack of predators could lead to population explosions of other mammalian pest species
Pig <i>Sus scrofa</i>	Widespread except for islands	Eats native plants/roots, seeds, fruit, eggs, invertebrates; causes widespread erosion at high population densities; spreads weeds	Limited to Regional Pest Management Strategy response only, as no operational budget available; essentially left to recreational hunters	Management in consultation with community and pig hunters when required to limit the spread of PTA. (Refer to Places policies on kauri dieback).
Rabbit <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	Widespread	Eats lower tier vegetation, especially in dunelands where most impact occurs	Limited to control around new plantings and a few coastal sites	Coastal dunelands
Rat: Norway rat <i>Rattus norvegicus</i> Ship rat <i>Rattus rattus</i>	Widespread except for most islands	Eats seeds, seedlings, flowers, buds, fruits invertebrates, lizards, eggs, birds; competes with native birds for nesting sites	Very limited control in specific areas (Trounson, Kokako blocks in Waima and Mataraua, some coastal sites for snails); rats are sometimes targeted when 1080 is used for multispecies pest control	Maintain islands as rat free; increase use of aerial 1080 for multispecies pest control

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Wild cattle <i>Bos primigenius</i>	Te Paki, Mokaikai, Warawara-Waipoua	Eats lower tier vegetation; spreads weeds; damages stream banks and accelerates erosion	Encouraging removal via advocacy	Te Paki, Mokaikai, Waipoua, Warawara
Wild dog <i>Canis lupus familiaris</i>	Occur in some larger forests	Eats native species, especially ground-nesting birds such as kiwi; danger to humans; kills stock	Advocacy; trapping or shooting where wild dogs are reported or suspected	Northland-wide
Wild horse <i>Equus ferus caballus</i>	Te Paki, Te Arai, Mokaikai	Negative impacts on dunelands; eats lower tier vegetation; spreads weeds	Encouraging removal via advocacy and muster from affected areas	Te Paki, Te Arai, Mokaikai
Reptiles				
Rainbow skink <i>Lampropholis delicata</i>	Limited but expanding	Competes for food and niches of native lizard species	Raise awareness of Biosecurity Act provisions where rainbow skinks are an unwanted organism and it is illegal to knowingly move, release, cause to be released, spread, sell, offer for sale, exhibit or breed rainbow skinks without the explicit permission of a Ministry for Primary Industries [MPI] Biosecurity New Zealand Technical Officer	Raise awareness to limit accidental spread into areas where not present
Red-eared slider turtle <i>Trachemys scripta elegans</i>	Limited		Nil	No action

Table A5.2. Plant pests

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
African club moss <i>Selaginella kraussiana</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Waipoua, Puketi/Omahuta
African feather grass <i>Pennisetum macrourum</i>	Limited sites	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Pouto
Agapanthus <i>Agapanthus praecox</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Ngawha, Te Paki
Akebia <i>Akebia quinata</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area Kaitaia Area, Whangarei Area
Alligator weed <i>Alternanthera philoxeroides</i>	Widespread	Dominates freshwater sites	At sites with control programmes	Pouto

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
American spartina <i>Spartina alterniflora</i>	Widespread	Dominates salt water wetlands	At sites with control programmes	All harbours and estuaries
Apple of sodom <i>Solanum linnaeanum</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Kaimaumau, Lake Ohia, Mokaikai, Motuopao, North Cape (Otou), Te Paki
Aristea <i>Aristea ecklonii</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Mokaikai, Ngawha, Pouto, Puketi/Omahuta, Te Paki, Waipoua
Banana passion fruit <i>Passiflora</i> spp.	Widespread	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Waipoua
Billy goat weed <i>Ageratum houstonianum</i>	Limited sites	Dominates groundcover	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area, Whangarei Area
Bladderwort <i>Utricularia gibba</i>	Widespread	Dominates freshwater sites	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Maitahi, Pouto, Te Paki
Blue passion flower <i>Passiflora caerulea</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Pouto, Puketi/Omahuta
Boneseed <i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i>	Widespread	Dominates forest edge	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Karikari, Lake Ohia, Te Paki
Brush wattle <i>Paraserianthes lophantha</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Hen and Chickens Islands, Kaimaumau, Karikari, Lake Ohia, Ngawha, North Cape (Otou), Pouto, Puketi/Omahuta, Te Paki, Trounson
Cape honey flower <i>Melianthus major</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Karikari, Lake Ohia, Ocean Beach, Pouto, Whangaroa
Cat's claw creeper <i>Macfadyena unguis-cati</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	
Chinese privet <i>Ligustrum sinense</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Mt Manaia, Whangaroa
Climbing asparagus <i>Asparagus scandens</i>	Widespread	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Kaimaumau
Climbing spindleberry <i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area, Whangarei Area
Coastal banksia <i>Banksia integrifolia</i>	Widespread	Dominates open sites	At sites with control programmes	Bream Bay, Kaimaumau
Coral tree <i>Erythrina x sykesii</i>	Widespread	Dominates forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Mimiwhangata, Ngawha, Pouto, Te Paki
Cotoneaster <i>Cotoneaster glaucophyllus</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Mt Manaia, Ngawha, Waipoua
Dally pine <i>Psoralea pinnata</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Te Paki

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Dusky coral pea <i>Kennidea rubicunda</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area, Kaitaia Area, Kauri Coast Area, Whangarei Area
Elaeagnus <i>Elaeagnus x reflexa</i>	Widespread	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Mt Manaia, Puketi/Omahuta, Rectahi, Te Paki, Waipoua
Fork-leaved hakea <i>Hakea drupacea</i>	Limited sites	Dominates shrubland	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area, Whangarei Area
Giant reed <i>Arundo donax</i>	Widespread	Dominates subcanopy	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Ngawha, Puketi/Omahuta
Green cestrum <i>Cestrum parqui</i>	Limited sites	Dominates sub-canopy	At sites with control programmes	Te Paki
Heather <i>Calluna vulgaris</i>	Limited sites	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau
Himalayan fairy grass <i>Miscanthus nepalensis</i>	Limited sites	Dominates groundcover	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area, Kaitaia Area, Kauri Coast Area, Whangarei Area
Himalayan honeysuckle <i>Leycesteria formosa</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Puketi/Omahuta, Waipoua
Japanese honeysuckle <i>Lonicera japonica</i>	Widespread	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Pouto, Puketi/Omahuta, Waipoua
Kahili ginger <i>Hedychium gardnerianum</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Kaimaumau, Mt Manaia, Pouto, Waipoua, Whangaroa
Kangaroo acacia <i>Acacia paradoxa</i>	Widespread	Dominates forest canopy	Weed-led in all areas except Kaitaia	Bay of Islands Area, Kauri Coast Area, Whangarei Area
Ladies' legs <i>Tropaeolum pentaphyllum</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Pouto
Lantana <i>Lantana camara</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Kaimaumau, Mt Manaia, Pouto
Madagascar buddleia <i>Buddleja madagascarensis</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Bay, Swan Lake
Madeira vine <i>Anredera cordifolia</i>	Widespread	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Aria Te Uri, Kaimaumau, Motuopao, Pouto, Waipoua
Maritime pine <i>Pinus pinaster</i>	Limited sites	Dominates forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Waipoua, Mt Manaia
Marram grass <i>Ammophila arenaria</i>	Widespread in dunelands	Dominates dunelands	At sites with control programmes	Mokaikai, Motuopao, Ocean Beach, Pouto, Te Paki, Waipoua
Mexican daisy <i>Erigeron karvinskianus</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Hen and Chickens Islands, Mt Manaia, Puketi/Omahuta, Waipoua
Mexican devil <i>Ageratina adenophora</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Hen and Chickens Islands, Karikari, Lake Ohia,

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
				Mt Manaia, Poor Knights Islands, Pouto, Puketi/Omahuta, Waipoua
Mickey mouse plant <i>Ochna serrulata</i>	Limited sites	Dominates groundcover	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area, Kaitaia Area, Kauri Coast Area, Whangarei Area
Mile a minute <i>Dipogon lignosus</i>	Widespread	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	Weed-led in all areas except Kaitaia	Bay of Islands Area, Kauri Coast Area, Whangarei Area
Montbretia <i>Crocsmia x crocosmitiflora</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Bream Bay, Ngawha, Puketi/Omahuta, Reotahi, Te Paki, Waipoua
Monterey pine <i>Pinus radiata</i>	Widespread	Dominates forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Karikari Lake Ohia, Mokaikai, Mt Manaia, North Cape (Otu), Pouto, Bream Head, Puketi/Omahuta, Waipoua, Whangaroa
Moth plant <i>Araujia sericifera</i>	Widespread in eastern Northland	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Hen and Chickens Islands, Mt Manaia, Ocean Beach, Poor Knights Islands, Puketi/Omahuta, Reotahi
Old man's beard <i>Clematis vitalba</i>	Limited sites	Vine capable of smothering forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Puketi/Omahuta
Olive <i>Olea europaea</i>	Limited sites	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Pouto
Orange cestrum <i>Cestrum aurantiacum</i>	Limited sites	Dominates sub-canopy	At sites with control programmes	Te Paki
Oxylobium <i>Callistachys lanceolata</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Mokaikai, North Cape (Otu), Te Paki
Pampas <i>Cortaderia selloana</i>	Widespread	Dominates disturbed sites	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Hen and Chickens Islands, Mokaikai, North Cape (Otu), Poor Knights Islands, Pouto
Phoenix palm <i>Phoenix canariensis</i>	Limited sites	Dominates forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Whangaroa
Purple pampas <i>Cortaderia jubata</i>	Widespread	Dominates disturbed sites	At sites with control programmes	Bream Head, Hen and Chickens Islands, Mokaikai, North Cape (Otu), Poor Knights Islands, Pouto
Royal fern <i>Osmunda regalis</i>	Limited sites	Dominates freshwater sites	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Lake Ohia, Pouto
Spanish heath <i>Erica lusitanica</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Pouto, Puketi/Omahuta, Waipoua
Spartina <i>Spartina anglica</i>	Widespread	Dominates salt water wetlands	At sites with control programmes	All harbours and estuaries

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Spartina hybrid <i>Spartina x townsendii</i>	Limited sites	Dominates salt water wetlands	At sites with control programmes	Rangaunu
Sydney golden wattle <i>Acacia longifolia</i>	Widespread	Dominates forest canopy	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, North Cape (Otou), Te Paki
Taiwan cherry <i>Prunus campanulata</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Pukenui
Tree mallow <i>Lavatera arborea</i>	Limited sites	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Motuopao
Tree privet <i>Ligustrum lucidum</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Bream Bay, Pouto
Upright bottlebrush <i>Callistemon rigidus</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Karikari, Lake Ohia
Wandering Jew <i>Tradescantia fluminensis</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Matarau Island, Ngawha, Puketi/Omahuta, Trounson, Waipoua
Watsonia <i>Watsonia bulbifera</i>	Widespread	Dominates groundcover	At sites with control programmes	Kaimaumau, Karikari, Lake Ohia, Te Paki, Trounson, Waipoua, Whangaroa
Woolly nightshade <i>Solanum mauritianum</i>	Widespread	Dominates shrubland	At sites with control programmes	Bream Bay, Bream Head, Karikari, Lake Ohia, Matarau Island, Mt Manaia, Ngawha, Puketi/Omahuta, Te Paki, Waipoua
Yellow flag iris <i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Limited sites	Dominates freshwater sites	Weed-led	Bay of Islands Area, Kaitaia Area, Kauri Coast Area, Whangarei Area

Table A5.3. Marine pests

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Asian paddle crab <i>Charybis japonica</i>	Whāngārei harbour	An aggressive crab that may reduce biodiversity values; carries viral diseases	Reducing risk of spread and containment. Surveillance	All Northland harbours
Mediterranean fan worm <i>Sabella spallanzanii</i>	Whāngārei harbour	Forms dense colonies that smother other species, causes hull fouling competes with aquaculture species such as mussels	Eradication attempt underway in Whāngārei harbour. Elsewhere prevention and surveillance	Whangarei eradication. Surveillance at high risk ports, Ōpua and Tutukaka. Assessment of marinas and swing and pile moorings northland wide
Sea squirt <i>Styela clava</i>	Ōpua and Whāngārei	Forms dense colonies that smother other species	Publicity aimed at preventing spread via hull fouling or transfer of aquaculture material.	All Northland harbours
Undaria <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	Localised -Seigus? rock Raungaunu harbour	Potentially able to reduce recolonisation of disturbed marine sites by native species; competitive marine alga	Local eradication attempt underway. Publicity aimed at prevention and containment	All Northland harbours
Pacific oyster <i>Crassostrea gigas</i>	Widespread	Potential to reach high abundances and become a dominant zoning or habitat-modifying organism in estuarine marine reserves	Subject to community control programmes Suppression pest	All Northland harbours. Waikaraka part of Whangarei Harbour marine reserve
Asian date mussel <i>Musculista senshousia</i>	Whāngārei, Kaipara	Forms dense colonies that smother other species	Subject to community control programmes Suppression pest	All Northland harbours Waikaraka part of Whangarei Harbour marine reserve
Cunjevoi <i>Pyura praeputialis</i>	Northland east and west coasts	Deep mats overgrowing mussel beds and other indigenous intertidal species	Eradication attempt underway far north. Publicity aimed at prevention and containment	Northland east coast
Japanese mantis shrimp <i>Oratosquilla oratoria</i>	Kaipara Harbour	Ecological impact unknown	Research	Kaipara Harbour
Spartina <i>Spartina</i> spp.	Widespread	Colonises mudflats; displaces wading birds	Eradication attempt underway	All Northland harbours
Saltwater paspallum <i>Paspalum vaginatum</i>	Widespread	Colonises mudflats; displaces wading birds	Eradication	Kaipara and Manukau Harbours, Firth of Thames

Refer also to Northland Regional Council, Northland Marine Pest Management Strategy 2010–2015 Northland Regional Council, Whangarei, New Zealand. Weblink: Marine pests rules: <http://www.nrc.govt.nz/upload/2412/Marine%20Pests%20-%20Section%206.pdf>.

Appendix 6

Flora and fauna present in Northland

Several thousand indigenous species are present in Northland. Appendix 6 lists a selection of these, i.e. vascular plants, vertebrate animals and other fauna of note that are currently classified as ‘Threatened’ or ‘At Risk’.

Note: The threat status of these species may change over time.

Table A6.1. Threatened and At Risk flora (vascular plants)

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical (38)	Tūroa onamata	<i>Ackama nubicola</i>
	Swamp helmet orchid	<i>Anzybas carsei</i> —extinct in Conservancy
	Northland bearded orchid	<i>Calochilus aff. herbaceus</i> (CHR 65825; Kaimaumau)
	Moss	<i>Calymperes tenerum</i>
	Sneezeweed	<i>Centipeda minima</i> subsp. <i>minima</i>
	Christella	<i>Christella dentata</i>
	Kōwhai ngutu-kākā, kākābeak	<i>Clianthus puniceus</i> —extinct in wild in Conservancy
	Pinaki, native carrot	<i>Daucus glochidiatus</i>
	Hairy willow herb	<i>Davallia tasmanii</i> subsp. <i>cristata</i>
	Moss	<i>Epilobium hirtigerum</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Erpodium glaucum</i>
	Unuwaho koromiko	<i>Frullania wairua</i>
	Swamp koromiko	<i>Hebe adamsii</i>
		<i>Hebe aff. bishopiana</i> (AK 202263; Hikurangi Swamp)
		<i>Hebe aff. brevifolia</i> (AK 235669; Surville Cliffs)
	Maungaraho Rock koromiko	<i>Hebe saxicola</i>
		<i>Hibiscus richardsonii</i>
		<i>Isoetes aff. kirkii</i> (CHR 247118A; Lake Omapere)—extinct in Conservancy
		<i>Juncus holoschoenus</i> var. <i>holoschoenus</i> —extinct in Conservancy
		<i>Leptinella rotundata</i>
	Dwarf musk	<i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>impolitus</i> f. <i>hirtus</i>
	Rātā Moehau, Bartlett’s rātā	<i>Metrosideros bartlettii</i>
	Stalked adder’s tongue fern	<i>Ophioglossum petiolatum</i>
		<i>Pennantia baylisiana</i>
	Roimata o Tohea ^a	<i>Pimelea eremitica</i>
		<i>Phylloglossum drummondii</i>
	Northland horopito	<i>Pseudowintera insperata</i>
	Swamp greenhood orchid	<i>Pterostylis micromega</i> —extinct in Conservancy
Dwarf greenhood orchid	<i>Pterostylis puberula</i>	
	<i>Sebaea ovata</i>	
Coastal fireweed	<i>Senecio scaberulus</i>	
Flying duck orchid	<i>Sullivania minor</i> —extinct in Conservancy	
Tecomanthe	<i>Tecomanthe speciosa</i>	
Sun orchid	<i>Thelymitra</i> (a) (WELT 79140; Ahipara)	

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Spiralled sun orchid Sun orchid North Cape hooked grass	<i>Thelymitra matthewsii</i> <i>Thelymitra sanscilia</i> <i>Trichomanes caudatum</i> (≡T. (a) (AK 252983; Kerikeri)) <i>Uncinia perplexa</i>
Nationally Endangered (17)	Water brome Liverwort Poor Knights spleenwort Aquatic moss A gumland liverwort Native ox-tongue North Cape karo Tauhinu Swamp Greenhood orchid	<i>Amphibromus fluitans</i> <i>Archidium elatum</i> <i>Asplenium pauperequitum</i> <i>Coprosma waima</i> <i>Fissidens integerrimus</i> <i>Goebelobryum unguiculatum</i> <i>Hebe perbella</i> <i>Hibiscus diversifolius</i> <i>Myosotis matthewsii</i> <i>Olearia crebra</i> <i>Picris burbidgeae</i> <i>Pittosporum serpentinum</i> <i>Pomaderris phyllicifolia</i> <i>Pterostylis tasmanicum</i> <i>Schoenus carsei</i> <i>Todea barbara</i> <i>Utricularia australis</i>
Nationally Vulnerable (18)	Three Kings titoki Jersey fern Holloway's crystalwort Pua o te Reinga, dactylanthus, flower of Hades Pygmy sundew Aquatic moss Turnip-rooted geranium Te Rahiri kokoromiko Nau, Cook's scurvygrass Dwarf musk, swamp musk, matt-leaved mazus Native daphne Swamp kōhūhū Matangaoa, New Zealand water cress Spiranthes, lady's tresses	<i>Alectryon excelsus</i> subsp. <i>grandis</i> <i>Anogramma leptophylla</i> <i>Atriplex hollowayi</i> <i>Baumea complanata</i> <i>Dactylanthus taylorii</i> <i>Drosera pygmaea</i> <i>Fissidens berteri</i> <i>Geranium retrorsum</i> <i>Gratiola concinna</i> <i>Hebe speciosa</i> <i>Lepidium oleraceum</i> <i>Lycopodiella serpentina</i> <i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>impolitus</i> f. <i>impolitus</i> <i>Pimelea tomentosa</i> <i>Pittosporum obcordatum</i> <i>Rorippa divaricata</i> <i>Spiranthes novae-zelandiae</i> <i>Trithuria inconspicua</i>
At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining (24)	Kohurangi, Kirk's tree daisy Sand coprosma Tūrutu, swamp blueberry Sand spike sedge Waiū-atua, shore spurge	<i>Brachyglottis kirkii</i> var. <i>kirkii</i> <i>Coprosma acerosa</i> <i>Cyclosorus interruptus</i> <i>Cyperus insularis</i> <i>Dianella haemata</i> <i>Eleocharis neozelandica</i> <i>Epilobium insulare</i> <i>Euphorbia glauca</i>

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Sand kānuka Rāwiri, narrow-leaved kānuka Leptinella Dwarf musk Stout water milfoil Native paspalum, scrobic Pikirangi, pirita, red mistletoe Autetaranga, toroheke, sand pimelea, sand daphne Kirk's kōhūhū Sand tussock Para, para tawhiti, king fern Poroporo, liverwort Northland poroporo, tupia, taapia Teucrium	<i>Juncus pauciflorus</i> <i>Kunzea aff. ericoides</i> (a) (AK 286081; "sand") <i>Kunzea ericoides</i> var. <i>linearis</i> <i>Leptinella tenella</i> <i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>novaezeelandiae</i> <i>Myriophyllum robustum</i> <i>Paspalum orbiculare</i> <i>Peraxilla tetrapetala</i> <i>Pimelea villosa</i> <i>Pittosporum kirkii</i> <i>Poa littoralis</i> <i>Ptisana salicina</i> <i>Riccia fluitans</i> <i>Solanum aviculare</i> var. <i>aviculare</i> <i>Teucrium parvifolium</i> <i>Thelypteris confluens</i>
Recovering (0)		
Relict (17)	Giant maidenhair fern Northland Reinga lily William's broom, giant-flowered broom Koru, colensoa Pīngao, golden sand sedge Northland coastal matipo Sickie fern Parapara Swamp leek orchid Fireweed Māwhai Pūhā, shore pūhā, New Zealand sow thistle Bamboo rush, giant wire rush Tūrepo, large-leaved milk tree Bladderwort	<i>Adiantum formosum</i> <i>Arthropodium bifurcatum</i> <i>Carmichaelia williamsii</i> <i>Colensoa physaloides</i> <i>Ficinia spiralis</i> <i>Lagenifera lanata</i> <i>Myrsine aquilonia</i> <i>Pellaea falcata</i> <i>Pisonia brunoniana</i> <i>Prasophyllum hectori</i> <i>Senecio sterquilinus</i> <i>Sicyos aff. australis</i> (a) (AK 252822; New Zealand) <i>Sonchus kirkii</i> <i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i> —extinct in Conservancy <i>Streblus banksii</i> <i>Streblus smithii</i> <i>Utricularia delicatula</i>
Naturally Uncommon (126)	Fern Liverwort Bearded orchid Small-flowered white bindweed Adams daisy Liverwort	<i>Adelopetalum tuberculatum</i> <i>Anzybas rotundifolius</i> <i>Blechnum norfolkianum</i> <i>Brachyglottis arborescens</i> <i>Brachyglottis myrianthos</i> <i>Brevianthus flavus</i> <i>Bromus arenarius</i> <i>Calochilus paludosus</i> <i>Calystegia marginata</i> <i>Carex elingamita</i> <i>Carex ophiolithica</i> <i>Cassinia amoena</i> <i>Celmisia adamsii</i> var. <i>rugulosa</i> <i>Centrolepis strigosa</i> <i>Cephaloziella subspinosa</i>

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Northland coastal tussock	<i>Chionochoa bromoides</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Cololejeunea appressa</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Cololejeunea falcidentata</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Cololejeunea floccosa</i>
		<i>Coprosma</i> aff. <i>neglecta</i> (AK 221468; Maunganui Bluff)
		<i>Coprosma</i> aff. <i>neglecta</i> (AK 250769; Whangaroa)
		<i>Coprosma distantia</i>
		<i>Coprosma macrocarpa</i> subsp. <i>macrocarpa</i>
		<i>Coprosma neglecta</i>
		<i>Coprosma spathulata</i> subsp. <i>hikuruana</i>
	Three Kings cabbage tree	<i>Cordyline obtecta</i>
		<i>Crassula ruamahanga</i>
		<i>Danhatchia australis</i>
		<i>Davallia tasmanii</i> subsp. <i>tasmanii</i>
	Moss	<i>Dicranella dietrichiae</i>
	Mokimoki	<i>Doodia mollis</i>
	Fern	<i>Doodia squarrosa</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Drepanolejeunea ternatensis</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Dumortiera hirsuta</i>
	Moss	<i>Ectropothecium sandwichense</i>
		<i>Elingamita johnsonii</i>
	Fimbristylis	<i>Fimbristylis velata</i>
	Moss	<i>Fissidens oblongifolius</i> var. <i>hyophilus</i>
	Aquatic moss	<i>Fissidens oblongifolius</i> var. <i>oblongifolius</i>
	Moss	<i>Fissidens oblongifolius</i> var. <i>oblongifolius</i>
	Aquatic moss	<i>Fissidens rigidulus</i> var. <i>pseudistrictus</i>
	Aquatic moss	<i>Fissidens strictus</i>
	Creeping fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia procumbens</i>
		<i>Geniostoma ligustrifolium</i> var. <i>crassum</i>
		<i>Geniostoma ligustrifolium</i> var. <i>majus</i>
	Rawlings strap-fern	<i>Grammitis rawlingsii</i>
	Manoao	<i>Halocarpus kirkii</i>
		<i>Haloragis erecta</i> subsp. <i>cartilaginea</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Harpalejeunea filicuspis</i>
		<i>Hebe acutiflora</i>
		<i>Hebe</i> aff. <i>ligustrifolia</i> (AK 207101; Surville Cliffs)
		<i>Hebe bollonsii</i>
		<i>Hebe brevifolia</i>
		<i>Hebe insularis</i>
	Poor Knights lacebark	<i>Hoheria equitum</i>
	Filmy fern	<i>Hymenophyllum atrovirens</i>
		<i>Hymenophyllum australe</i>
	Giant hypolepis	<i>Hypolepis dicksonioides</i>
	Pygmy mistletoe	<i>Korthalsella salicornioides</i>
	Three King's kānuka	<i>Kunzea</i> aff. <i>ericoides</i> (e) (AK 226797; Three Kings)
	Liverwort	<i>Lepidozia acantha</i>
		<i>Leptinella dispersa</i> subsp. <i>dispersa</i>
		<i>Leptinella dispersa</i> subsp. <i>rupestris</i>
		<i>Leucopogon xerampelinus</i>
	Kawaka, New Zealand cedar	<i>Libocedrus plumosa</i>
	Lindsaea fern	<i>Lindsaea viridis</i>

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Liverwort	<i>Lopholejeunea</i> "black" <i>Macropiper excelsum</i> subsp. <i>peltatum</i> f. <i>delangei</i> <i>Macropiper excelsum</i> subsp. <i>peltatum</i> f. <i>peltatum</i>
	Kawakawa	<i>Macropiper excelsum</i> subsp. <i>psittacorum</i> <i>Macropiper melchior</i> <i>Macrothelypteris torresiana</i>
	Pukanui	<i>Meryta sinclairii</i> <i>Microlaena carsei</i> <i>Myosotis spathulata</i> <i>Myriophyllum votschii</i> <i>Myrsine oliveri</i>
	Tree daisy	<i>Olearia angulata</i> <i>Parsonsia capsularis</i> var. <i>grandiflora</i> <i>Parsonsia praeruptis</i> <i>Peperomia tetraphylla</i> <i>Petalochilus alatus</i> <i>Petalochilus bartlettii</i>
	North Cape tānekaha	<i>Phyllocladus</i> aff. <i>trichomanoides</i> (AK 138439; Surville Cliffs) <i>Picris angustifolia</i> subsp. <i>angustifolia</i> <i>Pimelea acra</i> <i>Pimelea sporadica</i> (≡ <i>P.</i> aff. <i>tomentosa</i> (b) (AK 130893; Surville Cliffs))
	Three Kings daphne	<i>Pimelea telura</i> <i>Pittosporum ellipticum</i>
	Three King's kohuhu	<i>Pittosporum fairchildii</i> <i>Pittosporum pimeleoides</i> subsp. <i>majus</i> <i>Pittosporum pimeleoides</i> subsp. <i>pimeleoides</i> <i>Pittosporum virgatum</i> <i>Pomaderris paniculosa</i> subsp. <i>novae-zelandiae</i> <i>Pomaderris rugosa</i> <i>Pseudopanax</i> aff. <i>lessonii</i> (AK 46066; Surville Cliffs)
	Fierce lancewood	<i>Pseudopanax ferox</i> <i>Pseudopanax gilliesii</i>
	Moss	<i>Pyrrhobryum paramattense</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Rectolejeunea denudata</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Rectolejeunea ocellata</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Schistochila nitidissima</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Schistochila pellucida</i>
	Fan fern	<i>Schizaea dichotoma</i>
	New Zealand fireweed	<i>Senecio marotiri</i>
	New Zealand fireweed	<i>Senecio repangae</i> subsp. <i>pokohinuensis</i>
	Poroporo	<i>Solanum aviculare</i> var. <i>latifolium</i>
	Kōwhai	<i>Sophora fulvida kowhai</i>
	Sphagnum moss	<i>Sphagnum perichaetiale</i> <i>Stegostyla atradenia</i>
	New Zealand chickweed "Poor Knights"	<i>Stellaria</i> aff. <i>parviflora</i> (AK 169580; Poor Knights)
	Liverwort	<i>Stenolejeunea acuminata</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Stolonivector waipouensis</i>
	Moss	<i>Syrrhopodon armatus</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Telaranea tetrapila</i> var. <i>cancellata</i>

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Kōkihi, New Zealand spinach Sun orchid Sun orchid Thismia Moss Poor Knights lily Poor Knights lily Liverwort	<i>Tetragonia tetragonoides</i> <i>Thelymitra</i> (c) (CHR 518036; "rough leaf") <i>Thelymitra formosa</i> <i>Thismia rodwayi</i> <i>Townsonia deflexa</i> <i>Trichostomum eckeliaaum</i> <i>Trisetum serpentinum</i> <i>Xeronema callistemon</i> f. <i>bracteosa</i> <i>Xeronema callistemon</i> f. <i>callistemon</i> <i>Zoopsis nitida</i>
Data Deficient (21)	Liverwort Liverwort Liverwort Spider orchid ^d Aquatic moss Gumland daphne ^e Liverwort Liverwort Lady's tresses orchid Liverwort Liverwort Liverwort Moss	<i>Alseuosmia banksii</i> var. <i>linarifolia</i> ^b <i>Carex raoulii</i> <i>Cheilolejeunea imbricata</i> <i>Cheilolejeunea</i> sp. AK 297632 (Hen Island) <i>Cololejeunea</i> sp. 2 <i>Coprosma rubra</i> ^c <i>Corybas</i> (<i>Nematoceras</i>) <i>rivulare</i> <i>Eleocharis pusilla</i> <i>Fissidens perangustus</i> <i>Isolepis fluitans</i> var. <i>lenticularis</i> <i>Pimelea orthia</i> <i>Polygonum plebeium</i> <i>Ranunculus macropus</i> <i>Riccardia</i> sp. AK298538 <i>Scorpiurium cucullatum</i> <i>Spiranthes</i> aff. <i>novae-zelandiae</i> (CHR 518297; Motutangi) <i>Stenostachys gracilis</i> ^f <i>Telaranea elegans</i> <i>Telaranea granulata</i> <i>Telaranea patentissima</i> var. <i>zebrina</i> <i>Weissia</i> "North Cape"

- Provisionally re-ranked from Data Deficient to Nationally Critical DP by P.J. de Lange and A.J. Townsend, Department of Conservation, pers. comm. 2010), as per the guidelines outlined in Townsend, A.J.; de Lange, P.J.; Duffy, C.A.J.; Miskelly, C.M.; Molloy, J.; Norton, D.A. 2008: New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Current research suggests that this taxon is conspecific with *Alseuosmia banksii* var. *banksii*, and will therefore be re-ranked as Not Threatened.
- This species is common throughout the rest of New Zealand, and will therefore be re-ranked as Not Threatened.
- Current research suggests that this species will be re-ranked as Naturally Uncommon with a restricted distribution and precise habitat requirements.
- Current research suggests that this species will be re-ranked as Nationally Critical.
- This species is likely to be extinct in Northland.

Table A6.2. Fauna (vertebrates).

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Pārera, grey duck	<i>Anas superciliosa superciliosa</i>
	Kōtuku, white heron	<i>Egretta alba modesta</i>
	Taraiti, New Zealand fairy tern	<i>Sternula nereis davisae</i>
Nationally Endangered	Matuku, Australasian bittern	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>
	Hihi, stitchbird	<i>Notiomystis cincta</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Pekapeka, long-tailed bat (North Island)	<i>Chalinolobus tuberculata</i> (North Island)
	Pekapeka, northern short-tailed bat	<i>Mystacina tuberculata aupourica</i>
	North Island brown kiwi	<i>Apteryx mantelli</i>
	North Island kōkako	<i>Callaeas wilsoni</i>
	Pohowera, banded dotterel	<i>Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus</i>
	Tūturiwhatu, northern New Zealand dotterel	<i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i>
	Mātukutuku, reef heron	<i>Egretta sacra sacra</i>
	Kāeaea, bush falcon	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i> "bush"
	North Island weka	<i>Gallirallus australis greyi</i>
	Taranui, Caspian tern	<i>Hydroprogne caspia</i>
	Tarāpunga, red-billed gull	<i>Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i>
	North Island kākā	<i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i>
	Kāruhiruhi, pied shag	<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>
	Weweia, New Zealand dabchick	<i>Poliiocephalus rufopectus</i>
Northland mudfish	<i>Neochanna heleios</i>	
At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Tītītipounamu, North Island rifleman	<i>Acanthisitta chloris granti</i>
	Tuna, long-finned eel	<i>Anguilla dieffenbachia</i>
	Pihoihoi, New Zealand pipit	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>
	Mātātā, North Island fernbird	<i>Bowdleria punctata vealeae</i>
	Piripiripōhatu, torrentfish	<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>
	Kororā, northern blue penguin	<i>Eudyptula minor iredalei</i>
	Taiwharu, giant kōkopu	<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>
	Kōaro	<i>Galaxias brevipinnis</i>
	Inanga, inaka	<i>Galaxias maculatus</i>
	Shortjaw kōkopu	<i>Galaxias postvectis</i>
	Kanakana, lamprey	<i>Geotria australis</i>
	Bluegill bully	<i>Gobiomorphus hubbsi</i>
	Redfin bully	<i>Gobiomorphus huttoni</i>
	Torea, South Island pied oystercatcher	<i>Haematopus finschi</i>
	Poaka, pied stilt	<i>Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus</i>
	Matapia gecko	<i>Hoplodactylus</i> aff. <i>pacificus</i> "Matapia Island"
	North Cape Pacific gecko	<i>Hoplodactylus</i> aff. <i>Pacificus</i> "North Cape"
	Hochstetter's frog	<i>Leiopelma hochstetteri</i>
	North Cape green gecko	<i>Naultinus</i> "North Cape"
	Auckland green gecko	<i>Naultinus elegans elegans</i> Gray, 1842
	Northland green gecko	<i>Naultinus grayii</i> Bell, 1843
	Western shore skink	<i>Oligosoma</i> aff. <i>smithi</i>
	'Three Kings, Te Pahi, Western Northland' ornate skink	<i>Oligosoma ornatum</i> (Gray, 1843)

Appendix 6

	Toanui, flesh-footed shearwater Hakoko, sooty shearwater Tara, white-fronted tern	<i>Puffinus carneipes</i> <i>Puffinus griseus</i> <i>Sterna striata striata</i>
Recovering	Pāteke, brown teal Little spotted kiwi Tōrea, variable oystercatcher Tieke, North Island saddleback Pycroft's petrel North Island little shearwater Robust skink McGregor's skink Town's skink	<i>Anas chlorotis</i> "North Island" <i>Apteryx owenii</i> <i>Haematopus unicolor</i> <i>Philesturnus rufusater</i> <i>Pterodroma pycrofti</i> <i>Puffinus assimilis haurakiensis</i> <i>Oligosoma alani</i> (Robb, 1970) <i>Oligosoma macgregori</i> (Robb, 1975) <i>Oligosoma townsi</i> (Chapple, Patterson, Gleeson, Daugherty & Ritchie, 2008)
Relict	Kākāriki, red-crowned parakeet Duvaucel's gecko Pāpā, Pacific gecko Waikaka, black mudfish Moko skink Marbled skink Egg-laying skink Titī wainui, fairy prion Takahikare, New Zealand white-faced storm petrel Northern diving petrel Koitareke, marsh crane Pūweto, spotless crane Pakahā, fluttering shearwater Tuatara Black mudfish	<i>Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae novaezelandiae</i> <i>Hoplodactylus duvaucelii</i> (Duméril & Bibron, 1836) <i>Dactylocnemis pacificus</i> (Gray, 1842) <i>Neochanna diversus</i> <i>Oligosoma moco</i> (Duméril & Bibron, 1839) <i>Oligosoma oliveri</i> (McCann, 1955) <i>Oligosoma suteri</i> (Boulenger, 1906) <i>Pachyptila turtur</i> <i>Pelagodroma marina maoriana</i> <i>Pelecanoides urinatrix urinatrix</i> <i>Porzana pusilla affinis</i> <i>Porzana tabuensis plumbea</i> <i>Puffinus gavia</i> <i>Sphenodon punctatus</i> (Gray, 1842) <i>Neochanna diversus</i>
Naturally Uncommon	Kōpara, Poor Knights bellbird Koekoeā, long-tailed cuckoo Dune lakes galaxias Dwarf inanga Moho pererū, banded rail Poor Knights gecko Three Kings gecko Aorangi skink Three Kings skink Kawau, black shag Kawau paka, little shag Kawau tūi, Little black shag Kōtuku-ngutupapa, royal spoonbill Grey ternlet Buller's shearwater Pacific mollymawk, northern Buller's	<i>Anthornis melanura oneho</i> <i>Eudynamys taitensis</i> <i>Galaxias</i> sp. <i>Galaxias gracilis</i> <i>Gallirallus philippensis assimilis</i> <i>Hoplodactylus</i> aff. <i>pacificus</i> "Poor Knights" <i>Hoplodactylus</i> aff. <i>pacificus</i> "Three Kings" <i>Oligosoma</i> aff. <i>ornatum</i> "Poor Knights" <i>Oligosoma fallai</i> (McCann, 1955) <i>Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae</i> <i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i> <i>Phalacrocorax sulcirostris</i> <i>Platalea regia</i> <i>Procelsterna cerulea albivittata</i> <i>Puffinus bulleri</i> <i>Thalassarche</i> nov. sp.

Table A6.3. Other fauna of note.

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Snail	Charopidae sp. 46 (NMNZ M.87828)
	Snail	<i>Climocella pukanui</i> Goulstone & Brook, 1999
	Snail	<i>Cytora hirsutissima</i> (Powell, 1951)
	Snail	<i>Delos</i> sp. 1 (NMNZ M.29346)
	Snail	<i>Delos</i> sp. 13 (NMNZ M.29345)
	Snail	<i>Delouagapia tasmani</i>
	Snail	<i>Fectola melchior</i> (Goulstone & Brook, 1999)
	Pimelea bug	<i>Pimeleocoris viridis</i> Eyles & Schuh, 2003
	Slug	<i>Pseudaneitea ramsayi</i> Climo, 1973
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 13 (NMNZ M.87990)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 156 (NMNZ M.79798)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 223 (NMNZ M.151458)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 226 (NMNZ M.154908)
	Snail	<i>Rhytidarex buddlei</i> (Powell, 1948)
Nationally Endangered	Snail	<i>Allodiscus fallax</i> Powell, 1952
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 166 (NMNZ M.79360)
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 27 (NMNZ M.58110)
	Snail	<i>Costalodiscus parrishi</i> (Marshall & Barker, 2008)
	Snail	<i>Cytora gardneri</i> (Marshall & Barker, 2007) (NMNZ M.87893)
	Snail	<i>Cytora parrishi</i> (Marshall & Barker, 2007)
	Stag beetle	<i>Paralissotes oconnori</i>
	King Island turrett snail	<i>Placostylus bollonsi</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Kōkako louse	<i>Brueelia</i> sp. (kōkako)
	Moth	<i>Notoreas perornata</i>
	Pūpū rangi, kauri snail	<i>Paryphanta watti</i> Powell, 1946
	Pūpū harakeke, flax snail	<i>Placostylus ambagiosus</i>
	Paua slug	<i>Schizoglossa worthyae</i> Powell, 1949
At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Snail	<i>Amborhytida dunniae</i> (Gray, 1840)
	Snail	<i>Amborhytida forsythi</i> (Powell, 1952)
	Carabid	<i>Brullea antarctica</i> (Castelnau, 1867)
	Katipo spider	<i>Latrodectus katipo</i> Urquhart, 1890
	Ground beetle	<i>Mecodema tenaki</i> (Seldon & Leschen 2011)
	Northern pimelea cutworm moth	<i>Meterana pictula</i> (White in Taylor, 1855)
	New Zealand bat fly	<i>Mystacinobia zelandica</i> Holloway, 1976
	Pūpū rangi, kauri snail	<i>Paryphanta busbyi</i> (Gray, 1840)
Recovering Relict	Snail	<i>Allodiscus basiliratus</i> Gardner, 1967
	Snail	<i>Allodiscus pumilus</i> Marshall & Barker 2008)
	Snail	<i>Allodiscus spiritus</i> Powell, 1952
	Snail	<i>Amborhytida duplicata</i> (Suter, 1904)
	Northland tusked wētā	<i>Anisoura nicobarica</i> Ander, 1938
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 105 (NMNZ M.77007)
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 73 (NMNZ M.77056)

At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Snail	<i>Climocella reinga</i> Goulstone, 1996
	Snail	<i>Cytora hispida</i> Gardner, 1967
	Snail	<i>Cytora kerrana</i> Gardner, 1968
	Snail	<i>Cytora lignaria</i> (Pfeiffer, 1857)
	Snail	<i>Cytora tepakiensis</i> Gardner, 1967
	Snail	<i>Delos</i> sp. 2 (NMNZ M.38250)
	Forest ringlet	<i>Dodonidia helmsii</i>
	Snail	<i>Egestula pandora</i> Gardner, 1967
	Snail	<i>Flammulina tepakiensis</i> Gardner, 1977
	Weevil	<i>Hadracalles fuliginosus</i>
	Snail	<i>Kokikora mimiwhangata</i> Climo & Goulstone, 1995
	Snail	<i>Laomarex minuta</i> (Gardner, 1967)
	Snail	<i>Liarea aupouria aupouria</i> Powell, 1954
	Snail	<i>Liarea bicarinata</i> (Suter, 1907)
	Snail	<i>Liarea ornata</i> Powell, 1954
	Snail	<i>Liarea partula</i> Powell, 1954
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 130 (NMNZ M.62132)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 159 (NMNZ M.78662)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 164 (NMNZ M.55868)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 229 (NMNZ M.79639)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 250 (NMNZ M.55454)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 28 (NMNZ M.84465)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 30 (NMNZ M.87982)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 33 (NMNZ M.87987)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 63 (NMNZ M.68881)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 99 (NMNZ M.83503)
	Snail	<i>Serpho matthewsi</i> Suter, 1909
Naturally Uncommon	Weevil	<i>Allanalcis</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	Snail	<i>Allodiscus cassandra</i> (Hutton, 1883)
	Snail	<i>Allodiscus cooperi</i> (Suter, 1907)
	Snail	<i>Allodiscus turbotti</i> Powell, 1948
	Snail	<i>Amborhytida pycrofti</i> (Powell, 1932)
	Snail	<i>Amborhytida</i> sp. "Motukokako" (NMNZ M.151457)
	Snail	<i>Amborhytida tarangensis</i> (Powell, 1930)
	Three Kings click beetle	<i>Amychus manawatawhi</i> (Marris & Johnson, 2010)
	Weevil	<i>Anagotus</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	Weevil	<i>Anagotus</i> sp. "Three Kings"
	Turbott's weevil	<i>Anagotus turbotti</i> (Spiller, 1942)
	Slug	<i>Athoracophorus</i> sp. 4 (NMNZ M.151430)
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 167 (NMNZ M.99790)
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 24 (NMNZ M.99795)
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 75 (NMNZ M.96613)
	Snail	<i>Climocella manawatawhia</i> (Powell, 1935)
	Stick insect	<i>Clitarchus</i> sp. aff. <i>hookeri</i> "Poor Knights"
	Snail	<i>Cytora annectens</i> (Powell, 1948)
	Snail	<i>Cytora filicosta</i> (Powell, 1948)

At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Snail	<i>Cytora solitaria</i> (Powell, 1935)
	Poor Knights giant wētā	<i>Deinacrida fallai</i> Salmon, 1950
	Snail	<i>Delos regia</i> Climo, 1973
	Snail	<i>Delos</i> sp. 12 (NMNZ M.154823)
	Snail	<i>Delos striata</i> Climo, 1973
	Snail	<i>Egestula bicolor</i> (Climo, 1973)
	Snail	<i>Egestula gaza</i> (Suter, 1909)
	Snail	<i>Egestula microgaza</i> (Climo, 1973)
	Weevil	<i>Exomesites</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	Longhorn beetle	<i>Gastrosaurus</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	Poor Knights cave wētā	<i>Gymnoplectron giganteum</i> Richards, 1962
	Karo weevil	<i>Hadramphus pittospori</i>
	Ground wētā	<i>Hemiandrus</i> "Otekauri"
	Snail	<i>Laoma labyrinthica</i> Powell, 1948
	Snail	<i>Laoma minuta</i> Climo, 1971
	Snail	<i>Laomarex regia</i> (Gardner, 1968)
	Snail	<i>Laomarex sericea</i> Powell, 1948
	<i>Mimopeus insularis</i> (Watt 1988)	<i>Mimopeus insularis</i> (Watt 1988)
	<i>Neoitamus</i> "tawahi"	<i>Neoitamus</i> "tawahi"
	<i>Neoitamus</i> "tetatus"	<i>Neoitamus</i> "tetatus"
	Longhorn beetle	<i>Nesoptychias simpliceps</i> (Broun, 1880)
	<i>Mimopeus insularis</i> (Watt 1988)	<i>Odontria</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	<i>Neoitamus</i> "tawahi"	<i>Omedes nitidus</i>
	Chafer beetle	<i>Paralaoma buddlei</i> Powell, 1951
	Darkling beetle	<i>Paralaoma manawatawhia</i> Goulstone & Brook, 1999
	Snail	<i>Paralaoma pagoda</i> Climo, 1973
	Snail	<i>Paralaoma raki</i> Goulstone & Brook, 1999
	Snail	<i>Paralaoma regia</i> Powell, 1948
	Snail	<i>Paralaoma turbotti</i> Powell, 1948
	Stag beetle	<i>Paralissotes mangonuiensis</i> (Brookes, 1927)
	Three Kings cave wētā	<i>Paraneonetus multispinus</i> Salmon
	Snail	<i>Phrixgnathus blacki</i> Powell, 1951
	Snail	<i>Phrixgnathus paralaomiformis</i> (Climo, 1971)
	Snail	<i>Phrixgnathus subariel</i> Powell, 1948
	Snail	<i>Phrixgnathus waipoua</i> (Gardner, 1969)
	Weevil	<i>Phrynixus</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	Pūpū harakeke, flax snail	<i>Placostylus hongii</i> (Lesson, 1830)
	Flat beetle	<i>Platysus zelandicus</i> Marris & Klimaszeurski, 2001
	Weevil	<i>Praolepra</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	Slug	<i>Pseudaneitea pallida</i> Climo, 1973
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 104 (NMNZ M.54260)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 147 (NMNZ M.151443)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 149 (NMNZ M.98347)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 153 (NMNZ M.87994)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 154 (NMNZ M.88208)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 161 (NMNZ M.37698)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 165 (NMNZ M.88206)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 167 (NMNZ M.88205)

Appendix 6

At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	<i>Neoitamus</i> "tetatus"	Punctidae sp. 207 (NMNZ M.61578)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 225 (NMNZ M.98351)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 230 (NMNZ M.84467)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 25 (NMNZ M.99812)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 58 (NMNZ M.83426)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 64 (NMNZ M.68410)
	Snail	<i>Rhytidarex johnsoni</i> (Powell, 1948)
	Weevil	<i>Scelodolichus</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
	Beetle	<i>Syrphetodes</i> sp. 7 (NZACO4018989)
	Beetle	<i>Tangarona pensus</i> (Broun, 1880)
	Snail	<i>Therasiella pectinifera</i> (Powell, 1935)
	Weevil	<i>Tychanopais</i> sp. "Poor Knights"
Data Deficient	Snail	<i>Allodiscus brooki</i> (Marshall & Barker 2008)
	Moth	<i>Archyala opulenta</i> Philpott, 1926
	Slug	<i>Athoracophorus</i> sp. 3 (NMNZ M.151429) "Waiare"
	Snail	Charopidae sp. 169 (NMNZ M.160257)
	Assassin bug	<i>Empicoris seorsus</i> (Bergroth, 1927)
	Snail	<i>Phrixgnathus murdochi</i> Suter, 1894
	Snail	<i>Phrixgnathus transitans</i> Suter, 1892
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 108 (NMNZ M.62099)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 162 (NMNZ M.87995)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 222 (AIM AK 155577)
	Snail	Punctidae sp. 251 (NMNZ M. 116650)

Appendix 7

Nationally iconic species in Northland

These species were identified through using a combination of web-based and phone-based public surveys in which those participating were asked what species they thought were quintessentially kiwi, contributing to their identity as New Zealanders.

	Common name	Scientific name
Flora	Ferns Kauri Pōhutukawa Rimu Kōwhai	Various Species <i>Agathis australis</i> <i>Metrosideros excelsa</i> <i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i> <i>Sophora</i> spp.
Fauna	Kiwi Tūī Tuatara Kākāpō Kea	<i>Apteryx</i> spp. <i>Prothemadera novaeseelandiae</i> <i>Sphenodon punctatus</i> <i>Strigops habroptilus</i> <i>Nestor notabilis</i>

Appendix 8

Marine habitats and ecosystems in Northland

The Coastal Classification and Mapping Scheme depth zones are as follows: shallow—0–30 m; deep—30–200 m; upper slope—200–500 m; mid-slope—500–1000 m; lower slope—1000–4000 m.

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands bioregion:				
	Exposed rocky shore High-current shallow reef High-current deep reef High-current deep gravel High-current deep sand Water column Upper slope Mid-slope	<p>Centre of endemism and biodiversity hotspot.</p> <p>Diverse and distinctive marine biota due to oceanographic setting, upwelling, very low levels of terrestrial sedimentation and isolation from the mainland.</p> <p>Reefs dominated by endemic species of large brown macroalgae to at least 60 m depth.</p> <p>Endemic species belonging to many other taxa, including reef fishes (e.g. blue-finned butterflyfish (<i>Odax cyanoallix</i>)).</p> <p>Gorgonians and cold water corals (<i>Oculina virgosa</i>) abundant in caves in shallow water.</p> <p>Large seabird colonies and kekeno/New Zealand fur seal (<i>Arctocephalus forsteri</i>) haulout.</p> <p>Spotted black grouper (<i>Epinephelus daemeli</i>) and mangō taniwha/great white shark (<i>Carcharodon carcharias</i>) habitat.</p> <p>Leatherback (<i>Dermochelys coriacea</i>) and green (<i>Chelonia mydas</i>) turtle foraging habitat.</p>	Overfishing and bycatch of protected or threatened species—hāpuku (<i>Polyprion oxygeneios</i>) were abundant in shallow water around the islands until the early 1970s.	

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
West Coast North Island bioregion (Tauroa Peninsula to Kaipara Harbour):				
Exposed outer coast and adjoining shelf	Exposed beach Exposed rocky shore Exposed shallow reef Exposed shallow sand Deep sand Deep reef Upper slope	Poorly known. In the north, intertidal and shallow subtidal reefs support dense beds of green shell mussel (<i>Perna canalicula</i>) (probably the source of the spat collected on Ninety Mile Beach), and extensive beds of red algae, sponges and other encrusting invertebrates. Further south, these appear to be replaced by assemblages that are dominated by large brown algae.	Overfishing and bycatch of protected and threatened species. Overharvesting of intertidal shellfish. Invasive marine species (e.g. the threat to indigenous intertidal assemblages and customary fisheries posed by cunjevoi (<i>Pyura praeputialis</i>)).	
Herekino and Whangape Harbours	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves (<i>Avicennia marina</i>) Estuarine rocky shore Estuarine beach Intertidal mudflats Estuarine sands High-current shallow sand Estuarine reef	Poorly known. Relatively low invertebrate diversity. Limited wading bird habitat.	Infilling due to historic catchment clearance.	
Hokianga Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Intertidal sand and mudflats Estuarine rocky shore Estuarine sands High-current shallow sand High-current shallow reef	Marine species extend at least 12 km from the harbour entrance. Large brown algae, including stands of <i>Ecklonia radiata</i> , red algae, sponges and other encrusting invertebrates occur on subtidal reefs in the lower reaches of the harbour. Extensive subtidal horse mussel (<i>Atrina novaezealandiae</i>) and greenshell mussel beds. Kōura papatea/rock lobster (<i>Jasus edwardsii</i>) settlement occurs in 'the narrows'. The upper reaches of the harbour contain important wading bird habitat. Productive customary fishery.	Infilling due to historic catchment clearance. Habitat loss due to reclamation and impoundment. Point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of pathogens, nutrients and other contaminants. Invasive species e.g. spartina (<i>Spartina</i> spp.).	

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Kaipara Harbour	Mānawa/mangroves Saltmarsh Estuarine rocky shore Estuarine beach Intertidal sand and mudflats Karepō/seagrass (<i>Zostera</i> spp.) Estuarine sands Shallow high-current sands Estuarine reef	Very large, relatively healthy estuarine environment. High natural character values. Most significant nursery habitat for tāmore/snapper (<i>Pagrus auratus</i>), makō/rig (<i>Mustelus lenticulatus</i>) and possibly tope/school shark (<i>Galeorhinus galeus</i>) in the upper North Island. Very productive customary, commercial and recreational fishery. Nationally significant feeding, roosting and breeding areas for coastal and wading birds. Kera wēra/killer whale (<i>Orcinus orca</i>) and mangō taniwha/great white shark feeding habitat. Migratory corridor for diadromous fishes.	Historic and ongoing coastal development resulting in habitat loss; point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of fine sediments, nutrients and other contaminants. Tidal power development. Aquaculture. Sand mining. Overfishing. Invasive species (e.g. Japanese mantis shrimp (<i>Oratosquilla oratoria</i>)). Sea level rise potentially threatens wading bird and other coastal habitats.	West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary
Northeastern bioregion (Ahipara to Mangawhai):				
Ninety Mile Beach and adjoining shelf	Exposed beach Moderate beach Exposed rocky shore Moderate shallow sand Exposed shallow sand Deep sand Exposed shallow reef Deep reef High-current deep reef	Important feeding area for tōrea/variable oystercatcher (<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>) and taranui/Caspian tern (<i>Hydroprogne caspia</i>). Primary spat collection area for the green-lipped mussel aquaculture industry (spat attach to subtidal algae and hydroids are presumed to grow on nearshore reefs). Toheroa (<i>Paphies ventricosa</i>) are a distinctive intertidal faunal element. The natural values of the offshore habitats, including Ahipara Banks, are largely unknown.	Large declines in toheroa over the last 40 years have been associated with erratic recruitment followed by large-scale mortality that prevents increases in adult abundance. This could be due to anthropogenic impacts on their habitat, but the actual causes are unknown. Invasive marine species (e.g. threat to indigenous intertidal assemblages and customary fisheries posed by cunjevoi). Vehicles driving in the intertidal zone.	
Scott Point to North Cape (Otou) and adjoining shelf	Exposed beach Moderate beach Exposed rocky shore	Global marine biodiversity hotspot. Offshore sediments	Removal of epifauna and habitat homogenisation by	

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
	<p>Moderate rocky shore</p> <p>Moderate shallow sand</p> <p>High-current shallow sand</p> <p>High-current gravels</p> <p>Exposed shallow gravel</p> <p>High-current deep sand</p> <p>Deep sand</p> <p>Exposed shallow reef</p> <p>Moderate shallow reef</p> <p>High-current shallow reef</p> <p>High-current deep reef</p> <p>Upper slope</p> <p>Mid-slope</p>	<p>are carbonate-rich, reflecting a large marine biogenic component. They support exceptionally diverse invertebrate communities, including at least 223 sponges and 301 bryozoans (not exceeded anywhere else in the world), as well as colonial hydroids, compound ascidians, soft corals, gorgonians and black corals. The true species richness of filter-feeding invertebrates is estimated to exceed 700 species.</p> <p>Highest diversities occur off Spirits and Tom Bowling Bays at a depth of 40–80 m.</p> <p>The fauna has very high levels of national and regional endemism.</p> <p>The natural values of Pandora Bank are largely unknown.</p> <p>Mangō taniwha/great white shark habitat.</p>	<p>mobile fishing gear (primarily commercial scallop dredging).</p> <p>Invasive marine species (e.g. threat to indigenous intertidal assemblages and customary fisheries posed by cunjevoi).</p>	
Outer northeast coast and adjoining shelf	<p>Moderate rocky shore</p> <p>Sheltered rocky shore</p> <p>Moderate beach</p> <p>Sheltered beach</p> <p>Moderate shallow sand</p> <p>Sheltered shallow sand</p> <p>Rhodoliths and subtidal karepō/seagrass beds (biogenic)</p> <p>Shallow mud</p> <p>Moderate shallow gravel</p> <p>Moderate shallow reef</p> <p>Sheltered shallow reef</p> <p>Deep sand</p> <p>Deep gravel</p> <p>Deep mud</p> <p>Deep reef</p>	<p>Relatively unmodified intertidal habitats.</p> <p>Biologically diverse inshore marine assemblages reflecting habitat complexity, moderate wave exposure (i.e. relatively low levels of natural physical disturbance), relatively low deposition rates of terrestrial sediments, and the influence of the East Auckland Current and seasonal upwelling occurring along the shelf break.</p> <p>Biota is characterised by numerous subtropical and tropical species, in addition to others that are widespread throughout mainland New Zealand.</p>	<p>Ongoing coastal development resulting in direct and indirect habitat loss; point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of fine sediments, nutrients and other contaminants; litter; chronic noise pollution and disturbance.</p> <p>Overfishing resulting in trophic cascade effects and bycatch of protected and/or threatened species.</p> <p>Removal of epifauna and habitat homogenisation by mobile fishing gear.</p> <p>Invasive marine species (e.g. threat to</p>	<p>Mimiwhangata Marine Park: representative examples of coastal habitats, including sheltered and moderate rocky shores, shallow reefs, low-relief deep reefs, and sands.</p> <p>Poor Knights Islands Marine Reserve: unique outer-shelf reef habitats, strongly influenced by the East Auckland Current; deep sand habitats from about 30 m depth; diverse pelagic and benthic biota with strong subtropical component; biogeographic links to Norfolk, Manawatāwhi/Three Kings and Kermadec</p>

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
		Spotted black grouper populations on shallow reefs. Deep reefs support populations of black corals, gorgonians and their dependent species. Productive commercial, customary and recreational fisheries. High recreational use. High natural character values.	indigenous intertidal assemblages and customary fisheries posed by cunjevoi).	Islands.
	Water column	Seasonal influx of highly migratory pelagic fishes, including marlins, tunas, dolphinfish (<i>Coryphaena hippurus</i>), sunfishes, whale sharks, and manta and devil rays. Foraging area for endangered leatherback turtles, a variety of cetaceans and seabirds.	Global climate change via effects on seasonal upwelling and ocean currents. Overfishing. Bycatch of protected species. Marine debris.	
	Upper slope Mid-slope Lower slope	Poorly known. Extensive areas of rough bottom; moderate demersal fish diversity. Hoki (<i>Macruronus novaezelandiae</i>), hokarari/ling (<i>Genypterus blacodes</i>), shovelnose dogfish (<i>Deania calcea</i>) and orange roughy (<i>Hoplostethus atlanticus</i>) predominate from 400 to 1000 m. Orange roughy and brown slickhead (<i>Alepocephalus antipodanus</i>) predominate below 1000 m. Lantern fishes, squids and salps predominate in mid-water research trawls (North Island deepwater trawl survey, May 1985 -March 1986). Parengarenga Canyon is a recognised hotspot for highly migratory pelagic species.	Overfishing. Removal of epifauna and habitat homogenisation by mobile fishing gear.	

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Parengarenga Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Karepō/seagrass Intertidal sand and mudflats Estuarine beach Estuarine sand Estuarine reef	Productive customary fishery. Clear water. Extensive karepō/seagrass beds covering c. 50% of the intertidal area. An extremely diverse invertebrate fauna (at least 452 species), of which at least half are subtidal species. Numerous subtropical species that are not typically found in estuaries elsewhere in New Zealand. Diverse fish fauna, including unusual estuarine populations of lancelets (<i>Epigonichthys benhami</i> ; <i>E. hectori</i>), sand divers (<i>Limichthys polyactis</i>), and short-finned worm eels (<i>Muraenichthys australis</i>). Abundant elasmobranchs, including eagle rays, stingrays, tope/school shark, ngengerō/bronze whalers (<i>Carcharhinus brachyurus</i>) and juvenile mangō taniwha/great white sharks. Foraging area for green turtles. Nationally important roosting, feeding and breeding area for waders and shorebirds.	Invasive species (e.g. spartina, <i>Theora lubrica</i> , <i>Limaria orientalis</i> , <i>Pyura praeputialis</i> , <i>Styela clava</i>). Point source and non-point source discharges of fine sediments, excess nutrients, pathogens and other contaminants. Habitat loss, lowered productivity and hydrological changes due to reclamations and impoundments. Intertidal habitat loss due to aquaculture. Overfishing.	
Houhora Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Karepō/seagrass Intertidal sand and mudflats Estuarine sand	Extensive karepō/seagrass beds. Subtropical invertebrates. Foraging area for green turtles. Important roosting, feeding and breeding area for waders and shorebirds.	Invasive species (e.g. spartina). Point source and non-point source discharges of fine sediments and other contaminants. Reclamations and impoundments. Intertidal habitat loss due to aquaculture. Overfishing.	

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Rangaunu Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Karepō/seagrass Intertidal sand and mudflats Estuarine beach Estuarine sand Estuarine reef	Productive customary, commercial and recreational fishery. Extremely clear water due to low freshwater and sediment inflow. One of the most pristine harbours in Northland, with very extensive karepō/seagrass meadows intergrading into mānawa/mangrove forests. These karepō/seagrass beds support very high densities of less than 1-year-old tāmure/snapper and other juvenile fishes. Abundant elasmobranchs, including eagle rays, stingrays, tope/school sharks, and ngengero/bronze whalers. Foraging area for green turtles. Nationally important roosting, feeding and breeding area for waders and shorebirds. Diverse benthic invertebrate fauna on reefs in the harbour entrance.	Invasive species (e.g. spartina, <i>Pyura praeputialis</i> , <i>Styela clava</i>). Point source and non-point source discharges of fine sediments, excess nutrients, pathogens and other contaminants. Habitat loss, lowered productivity and hydrological changes due to reclamations and impoundments. Intertidal habitat loss due to aquaculture. Overfishing.	
Bay of Islands	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Intertidal sand and mudflats Estuarine sand Estuarine reef Sheltered rocky shore Sheltered shallow sand Rhodoliths and subtidal karepō/seagrass beds (biogenic) Shallow mud Sheltered shallow reef Moderate shallow reef Deep mud Deep reef	Large, complex coastal embayment with a variety of habitats, ranging from large estuarine arms to moderately exposed shallow reefs and deep, soft sediments. Habitat complexity and influence of the subtropical East Auckland Current result in biologically diverse benthic and pelagic assemblages. Rare subtidal karepō/seagrass and rhodolith habitats. Semi-resident terehu/bottlenose dolphin (<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>) population.	Point source and non-point source discharges of fine sediments, excess nutrients, pathogens and other contaminants. Toxic algal blooms. Chronic disturbance and underwater noise pollution from vessels. Overfishing. Removal of epifauna and habitat homogenisation by mobile fishing gear. Reclamation of estuarine habitats. Intertidal habitat loss due to aquaculture. Marine debris. Invasive species.	Rahui at Deep Water Cover Customary Fisheries Initiatives

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
		Productive customary and recreational fisheries. High-profile sport fishery and tourism destination. High natural character values.		
Whangarei Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Karepō/seagrass Intertidal sand and mudflats Estuarine beach Estuarine sand Estuarine reef High-current shallow sand High-current shallow reef	Diverse benthic invertebrate and fish assemblages. Diverse high-current assemblages at Motukaroro. Productive customary, commercial (fin and shell fish) and recreational fisheries. Important coastal and wading bird habitat. Kera wēra/killer whale foraging habitat.	Significant historic and ongoing anthropogenic impacts resulting in environmental degradation, including loss of shellfish beds and extensive karepō/seagrass meadows (and their associated fishery and biodiversity values). Overfishing. Chronic disturbance and underwater noise pollution.	Whangarei Harbour Marine Reserve— Motukaroro, Waikaraka.
Bream Bay / outer Hauraki Gulf	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Intertidal sand and mudflats Estuarine sand Moderate beach Moderate rocky shore Moderate shallow sand Moderate shallow reef Deep sand Deep mud Deep reef	Waipu, Ruakaka and Mangawhai Government Purpose Wildlife Refuge Reserve estuaries contain important coastal and wading bird habitat. Relatively pristine inshore benthic invertebrate assemblages. Productive reef systems, particularly around islands, supporting diverse invertebrate and reef fish fauna. Algal forests are an important source of nutrients to surrounding soft sediments. High natural character values.	Habitat loss due to coastal development. Sand mining. Overfishing. Disturbance to nesting shorebirds by domestic animals, people and vehicles. Removal of epifauna and habitat homogenisation by mobile fishing gear. Invasive marine species. Toxic algal blooms.	

References

- Anderson, O.F.; Bagley, N.W.; Hurst, R.J.; Francis, M.P.; Clark, M.R.; McMillan, P.J. 1998: Atlas of New Zealand fish and squid distributions from research bottom trawls. NIWA Technical Report 42. 303 p.
- Clark, M.R.; King, K.J. 1989: Deepwater fish resources off the North Island, New Zealand: results of a trawl survey, May 1985 to June 1986. New Zealand Fisheries Technical Report No. 11. 56 p.
- Cryer, M.; O'Shea, S.; Gordon, D.; Kelly, M.; Drury, J.; Morrison, M.; Hill, A.; Saunders, H.; Shankar, U.; Wilkinson, M.; Foster, G. 2000: Distribution and structure of benthic invertebrate communities between North Cape and Cape Reinga. NIWA Final Research Report for Ministry of Fisheries Research Project ENV9805, Objectives 1-4. 153 p. (Copy available from Ministry of Primary Industries, Wellington, New Zealand.)

Appendix 8

- Department of Conservation; Ministry of Fisheries 2011: Coastal marine habitats and marine protected areas in the New Zealand Territorial Sea: a broad scale gap analysis. Vol. 1-3. Department of Conservation and the Ministry of Fisheries, Wellington, New Zealand.
- Hurst, R.J.; Bagley, N.W.; Anderson, O.F.; Francis, M.P.; Griggs, L.H.; Clark, M.R.; Paul, L.J.; Taylor, P.R. 2000: Atlas of juvenile and adult fish and squid distributions from bottom and midwater trawls and tuna longlines in New Zealand waters. NIWA Technical Report 84. 162 p.
- Kerr, V. (comp.) 2006: Northland Marine Library: resources for marine planning and conservation. Vince Kerr and Department of Conservation, Whangarei. CD including maps, and published and unpublished reports and scientific papers on Northland's marine environment.
- Morrison, M. 2005: An information review of the natural marine features and ecology of Northland. NIWA Client Report: AKL2005-30; NIWA Project: DOC05101. National Institute of Water & Atmospheric Research Ltd, Auckland, New Zealand. 162 p.

Appendix 9

Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Northland

Note: While the three district councils and Northland Regional Council have undertaken landscape assessments that identify outstanding natural features, outstanding landscapes and significant amenity landscapes, the mapping of these landscapes and natural features in regional and district plans is not consistent across the region. The definitive identification of regionally, nationally and internationally significant landscapes and landforms requires further landscape work.

Table A9.1. Geological features of international or national significance.

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
International			
Hokianga sand dunes	One of New Zealand's most spectacular examples of active dunes		Part
Hurupaki scoria cone	Large 350 m a.s.l. bush-covered scoria cone that is being quarried	Quarrying	No
Kamo limestone pinnacles	Among best preserved limestone karst pinnacles in Northland		Yes
Karikari Peninsula tombolo	Large tombolo with a variety of dune forms	Subdivision and development pressure	Part
Kokota (The Sandspit)	Largest unvegetated sandspit in New Zealand	Potential sand extraction	No
Mangonui coconut beds	Best preserved fossil coconuts in New Zealand		No
Marble Bay Permian	Internationally important association of Permian pillow lava and fossiliferous marble from the Northern Hemisphere		No
Maungakaramaea scoria cone	Prominent, well-preserved forest-covered scoria cone	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Maungarohe dike	Best example of a dike forming a knife-edge ridge in New Zealand; contains the unusual mineral harmotome		No
Motukokako Island (Piercy Island) skarn and sea arch	Internationally important example of lead/zinc skarn and aesthetically significant sea arch		No
Ngawha springs	Northland's only active geothermal area, with cinnabar	Excess extraction of geothermal energy	Part
One Tree Point dunes	Best exposed last interglacial dunes in Northland	Sea wall development	No
Port Whangarei fossil bed	Best exposed last interglacial fossiliferous estuarine deposits in Northland		No
Pouerua scoria cone and lava flow field	Largest and best preserved scoria cone with little-modified lava flows	Subdivision and development	No
Reserve Point volcanics	Only known nephelinite flow in Northland, adjacent to garnet andesite intrusion		No
Runaruna mud volcano	Only active mud volcano in Northland		No
Strawberry Bay pillow lava	Best examples of pillow lava in Kaipara region		No
Tangowahine tidal bore	Only known tidal bore in New Zealand		No

Appendix 9

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Taurikura Bay jetty	Best natural jetty formed by a dike in New Zealand		No
Te Paki dunes	Best area of active dunes on Aupouri Peninsula		Yes
Titoki natural bridge	Best natural lava bridge in New Zealand		No
Tokatoka plug	Largest and best exposed of numerous Miocene plugs in the Tokatoka area		Yes
National			
Kawiti scoria cone	Scoria cone under threat from quarrying	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Maitai Bay beaches	Entire bay is an extremely well-defined coastal landform of scientific, educational and scenic value	Development pressure	Yes
Marble Bay Permian	Internationally important association of Permian pillow lava and fossiliferous marble from the Northern Hemisphere		No
Maungaturoto scoria cone	Unmodified, perfectly formed scoria cone with central crater	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	Yes
Mititai breccia	Best exposed of several breccia-filled necks in Tokatoka area		No
Ngararatunua scoria cone	Scoria cone with breached crater	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Pukepoto scoria cone	Well-preserved bush-covered scoria cone	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Puketotara erionite	Volcanic tuff bed with the most silica-poor erionite variety known		No
Puketurua gullied fan	Gullied fan that is well dated and of scientific and educational value		No
Rawhitiroa scoria cone	Low scoria cone with lake in crater	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Simpkins Quarry	First recorded occurrence of herschelite in New Zealand and possibly the first recorded occurrence of andesite		No
Tauanui scoria cone and lava flows	Second largest scoria cone in the Kaikohe area; source of a flow that spread 19 km to Taheke		No
Te Ahuahu scoria cone	One of the most prominent, highest and well-preserved scoria cones in the Kaikohe area	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Te Puke scoria cones	Three well-preserved scoria cones and craters	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Regional			
Glenbervie scoria cone	Well-preserved scoria cone with breached crater	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Hokianga 'Orbitolite' bed	Fossiliferous unit containing large foraminifera of international biostratigraphic value		No
Kaikohe scoria cone	Small 30-m-high breached scoria cone	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Lake Ohia fossil forest	Well-preserved and visible fossil kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>) forest	Water level changes	Yes
Maungakawakawa scoria cone	Excellent example of a breached scoria cone	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No

Appendix 9

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Maungatapere scoria cone	An almost perfect steep-sided cone and crater, one of the best in New Zealand	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	Yes
Maunu cone	A relatively well-preserved cone that has been modified a little by farming, minor quarrying and roading	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Ngahuha scoria cone	Small 60-m-high scoria cone; source of 7-km flow	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	No
Ngunguru Sandspit	The only undeveloped sandspit remaining in the Northland region. Potentially useful for research into short- to medium-term coastal geomorphological features, post-Last Glacial Maximum transgression, provenance and sand distribution patterns, catchment-to-sea analysis of the sedimentological history of a small Northland system, and sea-level studies.	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions;	Yes
Onemana Point allocthonous sediments	Best exposure of early allocthonous sediments in Northland		No
Todd's Quarry nephelinite	Best known of several middle Miocene nephelinite intrusions in Northland		No
Waimimiti scoria mounds	One of two localities where abundant large gabbroic intrusions can be found		No
Whatitiri shield volcano	Only example of a large, almost concentric shield volcano in Northland and the best preserved in New Zealand	Subdivision and development on the flanks of the cone	Part
Landscape	Significance (international, national or regional)	Pressure/threats	Protected Areas
Kirioko Native Forest	Outstanding landscape (bush-clad hill country)	Built development, exposure of ridges and outer flanks, and vegetation clearance for pastoral use	
Russell Forest (Bush-clad hill country)	Outstanding landscape (bush-clad hill country)	Built development, exposure of ridges and outer flanks, and vegetation clearance for pastoral use	
Tokawhero Native Forest	Outstanding landscape (bush-clad hill country)	Built development, exposure of ridges and outer flanks, and vegetation clearance for pastoral use	
Waima and Waipoua Forests	Outstanding landscape (bush-clad hill country)	Built development, exposure of ridges and outer flanks, and vegetation clearance for pastoral use	
Waimate/Okaihau Area	Heritage landscape		

Source of information of landscape data: www.fndc.govt.nz/services/environmental-policy-and-forward-planning/the-far-north-district-plan/landscape-assessment-1995.

Appendix 10

Recreation destinations in Northland

Note: Recreation destinations located in backcountry or remote settings are not included in this table but are addressed in general in Parts One and Two of this strategy.

Icon Destinations
Cape Reinga (Te Rerengawairua)
Cape Reinga coastal track
Kerikeri Basin
Poor Knights Marine Reserve
Waipoua big kauri walks
Cape Brett Lighthouse/hut—potential icon
Ruapekapeka—potential icon
Gateway Destinations
Bream Head tracks
Maitai Bay
Mimiwhangata
Otamure
Puketi Kauri Forest
Trounson
Urupukapuka Island
Whangaruru
Local Treasure Destinations
Ahipara Gumfields car park
Akeake walk
Arai te Uru and Signal Station tracks (2)
Arai te Uru to Waimamaku River track
Bland Bay amenity area
Bratty's Bush track
Bream Bay North / Mair Road / pipeline tracks (6)
Bream Bay South / Tip Road tracks
Brynderwyn Walkway
Chucks Cove amenity area
Fig Tree Bay track
Flagstaff Hill loop track
Flagstaff Hill walk
Forest Pools campsite
Harrisons walk
Hirst walk
Hukatere walk
Kahuwhera Pa walk
Kai Iwi Lakes Road to beach track
Kaimarama Bay amenity area
Kaitaia Walkway
Kaitaia Walkway to Diggers Valley Road
Kauri Bushmans Memorial walk
Kerikeri River walk

Lake Ngatu amenity area / carpark
Lake Ngatu track
Lake Ohia / Gumholes walk
Lake Waiparaheke track
Lookout Road, Waipoua Forest
Lookout track, Waipoua Forest
Mahinepua Peninsula track
Mair Road
Manaia Ridge track
Mangawhai Refuge signs
Mangawhai Walkway
Manginangina kauri walk
Marsden B community area
Marsden Cross walk
Matauwhi Bay amenity area
Maunganui Bluff walking track to beach
Motuarahi Island amenity area
Motuaraohia Island walk
Motukawanui track/hut
Motukiore Island Recreation Reserve amenity area
Motumaire amenity area
Moturua Island track
Nancy Fladgate track
Ngunguru Sandspit
Oke Bay track
Omahuta Kauri Sanctuary Road
Omahuta Sanctuary track
Opua Forest Kauri walk
Otaika Valley track
Otito track
Paetotara lookout
Paihia Oromahoe track—including Paihia lookout track
Pakotai track
Paparahi Reserve track
Paradise Shores beach tracks
Pataua Island amenity area
Piroa Falls walk, Waipu Gorge Scenic Reserve
Pouto Peninsula Road End Reserve
Pukenui Forest tracks (2)
Puketi—Waihoanga Gorge kauri walk
Puwheke Road / carpark
Raetea North campsite / Mangamuka amenity areas
Rainbow Falls walk
Rangikapiti Mill Bay / Coopers Beach track
Rangikapiti Pa walk
Rangiputa carpark
Rarawa Beach track
Rarawa campground
Reotahi walk
Rickers track, Waipoua Forest
Ruakaka Beach access tracks—middle

Ruakaka Beach access tracks—north
Ruakaka Beach access tracks—Waipu
Ruakaka Racecourse Beach access
Ruakaka Refuge tracks
Russell Forest Walkway
St Pauls Rock and Kaheka Point tracks
Sweetwaters access track
Tane Moana track
Tangihua Forest—walking tracks (4)
Tapeka Point walk
Taputaputa Road / amenity area
Taronui Bay track
Taumarumaru Reserve walk
Taurikura Hall
Te Paki Stream Road SH1 i-site
Toatoa track
Tokatoka walk
Toretore Island walk
Tutamoe track
Tutukaka Recreation Reserve tracks (3)
Twin Bole Kauri Track / Kauri Grove walk
Uretiti amenity areas—including SH1 pull over
Uretiti campground
Waikiekie Domain Hall and associated buildings
Waiotemarama Falls gorge track
Waipu Camp beach access tracks
Waipu Caves Walkway
Waipu Refuge amenity areas
Wairua Falls Scenic Reserve amenity area
Waitangi Wetlands
Waitiki Information Site amenity area
Waro Limestone Scenic Reserve track
Whananaki Walkway
Whangamumu track
Whangarei Harbour Marine Reserve
Wharf Road, Carpark, boat access
Whatitiri Domain Hall and associated buildings
Yakas - Waipoua Visitor Centre / Old Road - Rickers tracks

Appendix 11

Prescriptions for management of visitor management zones

Refer to Volume II for maps of the visitor management zones in Northland.

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
General description	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Areas inside or on the periphery of urban areas • Typically includes a historic or cultural site 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remnant native forest, wetlands, marine reserves and historic or cultural sites in areas dominated by farmland and plantation forest 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Where the majority of visitation occurs; typically small areas, scattered within or on the periphery of large, relatively natural areas • Includes the vicinity of main 'scenic' roads passing through public conservation lands • Often focused on a particular attraction 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large-scale natural settings generally accessed first through front country • Includes popular walks and tramps set within the body of large-scale natural settings and/or that access other settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Catchments beyond the backcountry zone, forming the wild lands in the interior of large, protected areas, with basic low-use tracks, marked routes and huts 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gazetted wilderness
Accessibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled for people of most ages and abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Typically via sealed and unsealed roads, and in some cases by boat • Enabled for people of most ages or abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Readily accessible areas, usually via sealed roads, or scheduled ferry or air services • Mostly by car, but also tour buses and guided parties to some sites • Enabled for people of most ages and abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People will have travelled some distance to reach these settings • 'Backcountry accessible' focuses on gravel roads, four wheel drive roads, navigable waters and aircraft landing sites • Motorised ground access generally restricted to roads and designated routes • 'Backcountry walk-in' is focused beyond the influence of motorised access 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Typically 5 or more hours travel from front country • Access supported by aircraft in some areas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Requires passing through backcountry and remote to reach the boundary

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
Predominant visitor groups	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short-stop travellers and day visitors 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predominantly short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters Other visitors in transition to backcountry and remote settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predominantly 'backcountry comfort seekers' and 'backcountry adventurers' 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Backcountry adventurers' and 'remoteness seekers' 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remoteness seekers'
Facility setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High-standard footpaths, cycleways and modified landscapes High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short walks, campgrounds and picnic areas, for a range of ages and abilities High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Good-quality facilities, services and easy access Sometimes the origin for tramping tracks and routes, with signs and information to make this transition clear High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A range of facility standards, including any designated vehicle routes, and popular walks and tramping tracks Evidence of control limited to essential directional signs and barriers on Great Walks, and places where there are significant hazards 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Basic huts, bridges, low-use tracks and marked routes Evidence of control is limited to essential signs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No facilities
Desired visitor experience and interactions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Varying, from activities with large groups, time with small groups/families, some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude 				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reasonable expectation of isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people Interaction with few other groups Considerable self-reliance on backcountry skills 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people Maximum interaction with only one other group is generally acceptable
Preferred maximum party size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is socially appropriate Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 50 Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 50 for periodic tour bus parties Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 8 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
Typical visitor interaction levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is socially appropriate 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20 or fewer people seen per hour 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 30 or fewer people seen per visit duration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 or fewer people seen per day for 'backcountry adventurer' track or routes 40 or fewer people seen per day for 'backcountry comfort seeker' tracks or routes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10 or fewer people seen per day 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6 or fewer people seen per visit duration
Concessions operations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessionaire activity may be permitted in all these visitor management zones, subject to conditions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects, including compliance with criteria within this table; the outcomes, objectives and policies for Part 2—Places apply Concessionaire client activities should not be advantaged or disadvantaged compared with those for non-concessionaire visitors, unless there is a specified reason for different management; the outcomes, objectives and policies for Part 2—Places apply 					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions should not be granted for this setting
Concessions effects management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Avoid, remedy or mitigate effects by setting conditions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Avoid or mitigate effects. 			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions should not be granted for this setting 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No concessions
Aircraft management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aircraft access for visitor use purpose should not be approved other than in accordance with Part 3 and Part 2—Places 					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aircraft access will not be granted

Appendix 12

Actively conserved historic places in Northland on public conservation lands managed by the Department

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
Akeake Pa Historic Reserve	Bay of Islands	Pā site; headland pā on Tareha Point Māori	Visitor impact; disturbance from regenerating bush	Local Treasure
Arai-te-uru Recreation Reserve and Signal Station Road Recreation Reserve	South Head of Hokianga Harbour	Pā site; the cliff below the point contains a previous burial cave, and several terraces and midden of Māori origin are located on the slopes above the harbour Māori	Visitor impact; natural erosion	Local Treasure
Arai-te-uru Recreation Reserve and Signal Station Road Recreation Reserve	South Head of Hokianga Harbour	Remnants of a signal station on the point Maritime	Visitor impact; natural erosion	Local Treasure
Bream Head Scenic Reserve	The eastern entrance of Whangarei Harbour	Military building ruins, Whangarei Coastal battery, Home Point Defending New Zealand, maritime	Natural deterioration and erosion; graffiti damage; stock damage	Gateway
Bream Head Scenic Reserve	The eastern entrance of Whangarei Harbour	Pā and middens Māori	Overgrazing; visitor impact; natural erosion	Gateway
Cape Brett Lighthouse settlement, Manawahuna Scenic Reserve	Northern tip of Cape Brett Peninsula	Building (keeper's cottage now departmental hut) Maritime, farming in general	Accidental damage by visitors; natural deterioration	Proposed Icon
Cape Brett Lighthouse settlement, Manawahuna Scenic Reserve	Northern tip of Cape Brett Peninsula	Lighthouse me, defending New Zealand	Deterioration and erosion	Proposed Icon
Flagstaff Hill Historic Reserve	Russell, Bay of Islands	Flagpole on the hill overlooks Kororareka and is crowned by two knolls Māori, European discovery, Government, New Zealand Wars	Erosion from visitor impact; vandalism; graffiti	Local Treasure
Kerikeri River Scenic Reserve	Kerikeri Basin	Building ruins of hydro-station that consisted of a concrete intake/diversion weir and gates above Rainbow Falls Power generation	Vandalism	Icon

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
Kohukohu Old School Historic Reserve	Kirkpatrick Street, Kohukohu, North Hokianga	Building Government, education	Damage to structure if not repiled	Local Treasure
Kororipo Pa Historic Reserve	Kerikeri Basin	A highly visible Kerikeri landmark pā site on a low promontory above the Kerikeri River Māori	Visitor impact; encroaching vegetation; plant pests; vandalism	Icon
Mahinepua Peninsula Scenic Reserve	Mahinepua Peninsula, northeast of Kaeo	Pā site on peninsula Māori	Visitor impact	Local Treasure
Mangonui Courthouse Historic Reserve	Mangonui	A simple but handsome kauri building erected to a standard for small victorian courthouses Governing New Zealand, justice	Possible future deterioration if maintenance not sustained	Local Treasure
Marsden Cross Historic Reserve (Oihi)	Northern Bay of Islands	Marsden Cross (mission station)—covers only the Mission Station site within Marsden Cross Historic Reserve Māori, European discovery	Encroaching vegetation; erosion of monuments	Local Treasure
Marsden Cross Historic Reserve (Oihi)	Northern Bay of Islands	Memorial, Marsden Cross Historic Reserve—covers only the Historic Reserve Māori, European discovery	Encroaching vegetation	Local Treasure
Mimiwhangata Coastal Park, including Paparahi Scenic Reserve	East coast of Northland, 45 km northeast of Whangarei.	Pā sites, agricultural sites and midden Māori	Stock damage	Gateway
Motuarohia Island Recreation Reserve	Eastern Bay of Islands	Land administered by the Department covers the central part of the island, which contains two pā and four terrace sites Māori	Visitor impact; encroaching vegetation	Local Treasure
Motukawanui Island Scenic Reserve	East coast of Cavalli Islands, about 3 km northeast of Matauri Bay	Pā site in a reserve located on Motukawanui Island Māori	Visitor impact	Local Treasure
Motukiore Island Recreation Reserve	Whangarei Harbour at entrance to Parua Bay	Pā site Māori	Rabbits (<i>Oryctolagus caniculus</i>); overgrazing	Local Treasure
Motuopao Island Nature Reserve	Motuopao Island off Cape Maria van Dieman	The lighthouse tower is 7 m high and constructed of Australian ironbark clad with kauri weatherboards Lighthouse relics	Natural deterioration	n/a—no current formal visitor access
Moturua Island Scenic Reserve	Eastern Bay of Islands	Moturua Island is mainly administered by the Department, but two small areas are privately owned; there are 29 archaeological sites on land administered by the Department,	Modification of features through revegetation	Local Treasure

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
		including pā, undefended villages and garden areas Māori		
Muiata Pa Historic Reserve	5 km south of Pukenui, Houhora Harbour	A roughly rectangular swamp pā on a low sand ridge Māori	Erosion caused by overgrazing	n/a—no current formal visitor access
Okiato Point Historic Reserve	Inner Bay of Islands opposite Opuā	The only visible features at the site are the well and a historic midden on the foreshore, but some sub-surface features have been revealed, and 19th century artefacts and structural wood have been recovered during excavations at the site Māori, governing New Zealand	Natural erosion of midden	Local Treasure
Onoke Scenic Reserve	Onoke Railway Quarry off Three Mile Bush Road in Kamo, Whangarei	Machinery, quarry site Industrial mining	Rust; collapse of tunnels	n/a—no current formal visitor access
Ranfurl Bay Scenic Reserve	Northern arm of Whangaroa Harbour	Reserve includes 6 pā, undefended settlements, middens and evidence of Māori agriculture, as well as fishing and whaling camps, a historic hut, European farming and a World War II mine station Māori, whaling, farming general, defending New Zealand	Pig (<i>Sus scrofa</i>) rooting; damage from regenerating bush	n/a—no current formal visitor access
Rangikapiti Pa Historic Reserve	Entrance to Mangonui Harbour	A striking example of the wedding cake style of pā Māori	Visitor impact	Local Treasure
Ruapekapeka Pa Historic Reserve	3 km north of Towai, SH1	The only remaining intact pā site of the 19th century wars in the North Māori, governing New Zealand	Natural erosion; overgrowth of vegetation in pits; visitor impacts; rabbits	Proposed Icon
St Paul's Rock Scenic Reserve (Ohakiri)	Behind Whangaroa township near Kaeo	Extensively terraced pā site located on an imposing conglomerate outcrop Māori	Severe issues from visitor impact; damage from encroaching vegetation	Local Treasure
Tapeka Point Historic Reserve	Bay of Islands	The pā covers an extensive narrow ridgeline of c. 300 m out to Tapeka Point Māori	Visitor impact; erosion	Local Treasure
Taumarumarū Scenic Reserve	Coopers Beach north of Mangonui	Pā sites on a headland at the western end of Coopers Beach Māori	Visitor impact; erosion caused by stock	Local Treasure
Tauroa Point Stewardship Area	West coast, approximately 7 km south of Tauroa Point (Reef Point) beach	Midden Māori	Destruction caused by vehicles and stock; natural erosion caused by high winds and sea	n/a—no current formal visitor access

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
Te Pahi Recreation Reserve, Te Ramanuka Stewardship Area	West coast of Aupouri Peninsula, 4 km north of Ngataki and 1.5 km west of the Far North Road	Taumatawhana/Tomoatawhana pā site and garden complex Māori	Erosion caused by stock	Icon
Urupukapuka Island Recreation Reserve	Eastern Bay of Islands	Pā sites on the largest island in the Bay, with dense and varied evidence of Māori occupation Māori, nature conservation, farming general	Visitor impact	Gateway
Waro Limestone Scenic Reserve	North of Hikurangi	Limeworks and colliery / historic tramway; horse tramline relating to the coal mining history of Hikurangi; limestone formations are considered wāhi tapu and kōiwi (human bones) have been recovered from them in the past; Māori, coal mining	Stock damage to tramline; vegetation (privet) encroachment	Local Treasure
Waewaetorea Island Recreation Reserve	Eastern Bay of Islands	Pā site on island adjacent to Urupukapuka Māori	Damage from regenerating bush	n/a—no current formal visitor access
Waikiore Conservation Area and Waikiore Conservation Covenant	Puhipuhi Mercury Mines, 25 km north of Whangarei and 10 km north of SH1	Building ruins Mining for mercury	Erosion; rust; vegetation encroachment	n/a—no current formal visitor access
Waipoua Forest fire lookout building	Lookout Road on southern side of Waipoua	Forestry lookout tower New Zealand Forest Service	Possible future deterioration if maintenance not sustained	Icon
Whangamumu Scenic Reserve	Eastern side of Cape Brett Peninsula	Remains of a whaling station Machinery ruins, whaling	Erosion and collapse of chimney; ongoing graffiti issues	Local Treasure

Appendix 13

Te Uri O Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002

Northern Kauri Coast falls within the area covered by the Te Uri O Hau Protocol, as defined in the Te Uri O Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002.

Schedule 4

Kirihipi overlay area for Pouto stewardship area

Description of Area

The area to which this schedule applies is the area known as the Pouto stewardship area, as shown on SO Plan 70051.

Preamble

Under section 42 of Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002 (clause 5.1.3 of the deed of settlement), the Crown acknowledges the statement by Te Uri o Hau of the cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional values of Te Uri o Hau relating to Pouto stewardship area, as set out below.

Statement of values by Te Uri o Hau relating to Pouto

Te Uri o Hau have a very special relationship with this area. It is recognised as a major Wahi Tapu (sacred area) because many of our tupuna (ancestors) are buried here. Many urupa (burial grounds) and taonga (treasures) rest beneath the whenua (land) in this region as a result of the many battles that were fought here throughout Te Uri o Hau history. During extreme weather conditions wheua (human bones) are often exposed.

Traditionally Te Uri o Hau used this region extensively for gathering kai (food). The fresh water lakes provided an abundance of kai for Te Uri o Hau. In 1909 a Te Uri o Hau rangatira said “These lakes are where we fish for eels, net mullet and snare birds for our food. They have been with us since the beginning, handed down by our tupuna to our parents and to us today”.

For Te Uri o Hau, histories such as these represent the links and the continuity between past and present generations. They reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and document the events that shaped Te Uri o Hau as a people.

Traditionally there were many Nohoanga (temporary settlements) within this area. Te Uri o Hau whānau (families) from the Pouto peninsula and from other marae around the Kaipara Harbour would camp here catching tuna (eels) and kanae (mullet) from the lakes and gathering manu (birds), harakeke (flax), and berries from the wetlands and surrounding area.

Te Uri o Hau are the kaitiaki (guardians) of this area. Knowledge of the traditional trails and Nohoanga sites handed down from generation to generation is a taonga (treasure) to Te Uri o Hau. A hikoi (walk) along the trails allows Te Uri o Hau to rebury wheua (human remains) and taonga (treasures) should they become exposed by the drifting sand.

The mauri (life force) of this region represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship for Te Uri o Hau with this region.

Te Uri O Hau has particular cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association in the following areas identified in the Te Uri O Hau Settlement Act 2002.

Schedule 2

Property	Land description	Encumbrances
Pukekaroro site	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 11.1700 hectares, more or less, being Section 1 SO 70762. Part Certificate of Title 1123/287. 1.3000 hectares, more or less, being Sections 2 and 3 SO 70762. Part Gazette Notice 764049.1.	Subject to a protected private land agreement as set out in Schedule 4.2 of the deed of settlement.
Pukeareinga site	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 283 square metres, more or less, being Section 1 SO 70764. Part Proclamation 5362.	Subject to a conservation covenant as set out in Schedule 4.3 of the deed of settlement.
Oteono site	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 1955 square metres, more or less, being Section 1 SO 70271. Part New Zealand Gazette 1899 page 1359.	
Whakapirau site	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 2.1640 hectares, more or less, being Sections 1 and 2 SO 70276. Part New Zealand Gazette 1862 page 276.	
Hokarako stewardship area	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 8600 square metres, more or less, being Section 48 Block 1 Otamatea Survey District. Part Certificate of Title 87/243.	
Part Humuhumu lake bed	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 38.5000 hectares, more or less, being Section 1 SO 70763. Part Transfer 507388.	Subject to easement in favour of the Pouto Licensed Land for power supply, water supply, and electric fence earth site.
Pouto Road end	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 6526 square metres, more or less, being Section 1 SO 38503. Part New Zealand Gazette 1955 page 403.	
Wahi tapu sites in the Pouto Forest	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 471 square metres, more or less, being Section 1 SO 65781. Part Certificate of Title 238/105; and 429 square metres, more or less, being Section 2 SO 65781. Part Certificate of Title 238/105; and 441 square metres, more or less, being Section 3 SO 65781. Part Certificate of Title 238/105; and 693 square metres, more or less, being Section 4 SO 65781. Part Certificate of Title 238/105; and 3032 square metres, more or less, being Section 5 SO 65781. Part Certificate of Title 238/105.	All subject to a wildlife refuge by New Zealand Gazette 1957 page 1639 for the purposes of the Wildlife Act 1953.
Pou Tu o Te Rangi	North Auckland Land District – Kaipara District 5793 square metres, more or less, being Lot 1 DP 79437. All Certificate of Title 36B/229.	

The following two documents form part of the Deed of Settlement.

SCHEDULE 5.2 KIRIHIPI OVERLAY AREA FOR THE POUTO STEWARDSHIP AREA

(Clause 5.1)

1 **Description of Area**

The area over which the Kirihipi Overlay is created is the area known as the Pouto Stewardship Area, as shown on S.O. Plan 70051.

2 **Preamble**

Pursuant to section [] of the Settlement Legislation (*clause 5.1.3* of the Deed of Settlement), the Crown acknowledges Te Uri o Hau statement of their cultural, spiritual, historic and/or traditional values relating to Pouto Stewardship Area, as set out below.

3 **Te Uri o Hau Statement of Values Relating to Pouto**

Te Uri o Hau have a very special relationship with this area. It is recognised as a major wahi tapu (sacred area) because many of our tupuna (ancestors) are buried here. Many urupa (burial grounds) and taonga (treasures) rest beneath the whenua (land) in this region as a result of the many battles that were fought here throughout Te Uri o Hau history. During extreme weather conditions wheua (human bones) are often exposed.

Traditionally Te Uri o Hau used this region extensively for gathering kai (food). The fresh water lakes provided an abundance of kai for Te Uri o Hau. In 1909 a Te Uri o Hau rangatira said “These lakes are where we fish for eels, net mullet and snare birds for our food. They have been with us since the beginning, handed down by our tupuna to our parents and to us today”.

For Te Uri o Hau, histories such as these represent the links and the continuity between past and present generations. They reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and document the events that shaped Te Uri o Hau as a people.

Traditionally there were many nohoanga (temporary settlements) within this area. Te Uri o Hau whanau (families) from the Pouto peninsula and from other marae around the Kaipara harbour would camp here catching tuna (eels) and kanae (mullet) from the lakes and gathering manu (birds), harakeke (flax), and berries from the wetlands and surrounding area.

KIRIHIPI OVERLAY AREA FOR THE POUTO STEWARDSHIP AREA

Te Uri o Hau are the kaitiaki (guardians) of this area. Knowledge of the traditional trails and nohoanga sites handed down from generation to generation is a taonga (treasure) to Te Uri o Hau. A hikoī (walk) along the trails allow Te Uri o Hau to rebury wheua (human remains) and taonga (treasures) should they become exposed by the drifting sand.

The mauri (life force) of this region represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship for Te Uri o Hau with this region.

4 **Specific Principles Relating to Pouto**

The following specific principles are directed at the Minister of Conservation avoiding harm to, or the diminishing of, the Te Uri o Hau Values related to the Kirihipi Overlay Area:

- (a) Encouragement of respect for Te Uri o Hau association with Pouto;
- (b) Accurate portrayal of Te Uri o Hau association with Pouto; and
- (c) Recognition of Te Uri o Hau relationship with urupa, wahi tapu and wahi taonga, including archaeological sites.

5 **Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in relation to specific principles**

Pursuant to *clause 5.1* of the Deed of Settlement, the Director-General has determined that the following actions will be taken by the Department of Conservation in relation to the specific principles:

- (a) **Encouragement of respect for Te Uri o Hau association with Pouto**
 - (i) Staff, conservation board members, concessionaires and the public will be provided with information about the Te Uri o Hau Values and the existence of the Kirihipi Overlay Area over Pouto;
 - (ii) As far as reasonably practicable, information will be made available to the public, explaining that some activities such as picnicking on urupa sites may denigrate their tapu status;

KIRIHIPI OVERLAY AREA FOR THE POUTO STEWARDSHIP AREA

- (iii) A review will be undertaken of conditions to be applied generally to new concessions (including renewals);
 - (iv) The removal of all rubbish and wastes from Pouto will be encouraged;
 - (v) As far as reasonably practicable, waste, particularly human waste, will be disposed of in a way that minimises the risk of contamination of Pouto's lakes and environs; and
 - (vi) Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity will be consulted about the siting and design of new structures, and particular regard had to its views.
- (b) **Accurate portrayal of Te Uri o Hau association with Pouto**
- (i) As far as reasonably practicable, Te Uri o Hau association with Pouto will be accurately portrayed in all of its new public information and educational material; and
 - (ii) Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity will be consulted in the provision of the Department's new public information or educational material, and as far as reasonably practicable, the Department will only use Te Uri o Hau cultural information with the consent of Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity.
- (c) **Recognition of Te Uri o Hau relationship with urupa, wahi tapu and wahi taonga, including archaeological sites**
- (i) Significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation will be avoided wherever possible;
 - (ii) Where significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation cannot be avoided, Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity will be consulted and particular regard will be had to its relevant policies, including those relating to wheua tangata (unidentified human remains) and Archaeological and Rock Art Sites; and
 - (iii) Any wheua (human remains) or taonga found or uncovered will be left untouched and Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity informed as soon as practicable.

SCHEDULE 5.18
FORM OF DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION PROTOCOL

(Clause 5.12.2(a))

A PROTOCOL issued by the CROWN through the MINISTER OF CONSERVATION regarding DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION / TE PAPA ATAWHAI INTERACTION with TE URI O HAU ON SPECIFIED ISSUES

1 INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 Under the Deed of Settlement dated [] between Te Uri o Hau and the Crown (*the Deed of Settlement*), the Crown, through the Minister of Conservation (*the Minister*) agreed to issue a Protocol setting out how the Department of Conservation (*the Department*) will interact with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] [*insert name and description once entity established in accordance with the Deed*] on specified issues.
- 1.2 Both the Department and Te Uri o Hau are seeking a relationship consistent with Te Tiriti o Waitangi/the Treaty of Waitangi principle of partnership that achieves over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both Te Uri o Hau and the Department.
- 1.3 Te Uri o Hau accept a responsibility to preserve, protect, and manage natural and historic resources through its tino rangatiratanga and kaitiakitanga.
- 1.4 The purpose of the Conservation Act 1987 (*the Act*) is to manage natural and historic resources under that Act and the Acts in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act. The Minister and Director-General are required to exercise particular functions, powers and duties under that legislation.

2 PURPOSE OF THE PROTOCOL

- 2.1 The purpose of this Protocol is to assist the Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost co-operation to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both.
- 2.2 The Protocol sets out a framework that enables the Department and Te Uri o Hau to establish a healthy and constructive working relationship that is

consistent with section 4 of *the Act*. It provides for Te Uri o Hau to have meaningful input into the decision-making processes and management of conservation lands within the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area.

3 PROTOCOL AREA

This Protocol applies across Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area which means the area identified in the map included in *Attachment A* of this Protocol.

4 TERMS OF ISSUE

This Protocol is issued pursuant to section [] of the Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act [] (*the Settlement Legislation*) and *clause 5.12* of the Deed of Settlement and is subject to the Settlement Legislation and the Deed of Settlement. The provisions of the Settlement Legislation and the Deed of Settlement specifying the terms on which this Protocol is issued are set out in *Attachment B* of the Protocol.

5 IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

5.1 The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Te Uri o Hau on a continuing basis by:

- (a) Maintaining information on [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity]'s office holders, and their addresses and contact details;
- (b) Providing reasonable opportunities for [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to meet with Department managers and staff;
- (c) Holding alternate meetings at the Area Office and a Te Uri o Hau Marae or other venue chosen by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to review implementation of the Protocol every six months, unless otherwise agreed (such meetings will include a once yearly report back to Te Uri o Hau people to be held on relevant Te Uri o Hau Marae); and
- (d) Training relevant staff on the content of the Protocol and briefing Conservation Board members on the content of the Protocol.

6 SPECIFIC PROJECTS

6.1 Within the first year of this Protocol being issued, and on a continuing basis, the Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will identify practical ways in which:

- (a) Te Uri o Hau can exercise *kaitiakitanga* over ancestral lands, natural and historic resources and other *taonga* managed by the Department;
- (b) The Department can manage *wahi tapu*, and *taonga tapu* and other places of historic or cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau in a manner which respects Te Uri o Hau *tikanga* and values;
- (c) Te Uri o Hau can actively participate in conservation management and activities; and
- (d) Specific projects may be undertaken by the Department in the following years (for example, restoration and enhancement projects) including timetables for implementing those projects.

6.2 The Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will on an annual basis identify priorities for undertaking specific projects requested by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] for the upcoming business year. The identified priorities will be taken forward by the Department into its business planning process and considered along with other priorities.

6.3 The decision on whether any specific projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator, after following the co-operative process set out above.

6.4 If the Department decided to proceed with a specific project requested by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department will meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan and timetable for implementation of the specific projects in that business plan.

7 CULTURAL MATERIALS

7.1 Cultural materials for the purpose of the Protocol are plants, plant materials, materials derived from animals, or birds for which the Department is responsible in the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area. Some of these materials are of importance to Te Uri o Hau in maintaining its culture, including medicinal practices and gathering of mahinga kai in accordance with Te Uri o Hau *tikanga*.

7.2 Current legislation means that generally some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering and possession of cultural materials.

7.3 The Department will:

- (a) Consider requests from [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the relevant legislation;
- (b) Agree, where appropriate, for [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance, or culling of species, or where materials become available as a result of road kill;
- (c) Consult with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in circumstances where there are competing requests from non-Te Uri o Hau persons or entities for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes; and
- (d) Work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to develop procedures for monitoring sustainable levels and methods of use of cultural materials.

8 HISTORIC RESOURCES / WAHI TAPU

- 8.1 Te Uri o Hau consider that Te Tiriti o Waitangi/the Treaty of Waitangi covered wahi tapu, including urupa, wahi taonga, and other places of historic significance as taonga (priceless treasures) for all the hapu and iwi of Aotearoa. The Department will respect the great significance of these taonga by fulfilling the obligations contained in this section of the Protocol.
- 8.2 The Department has a statutory role to conserve historic resources in protected areas and will endeavour to do this for sites of significance to Te Uri o Hau in association with them and according to Te Uri o Hau tikanga.
- 8.3 The Department accepts that non-disclosure of locations of places known to Te Uri o Hau may be an option that [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] chooses to take to preserve the wahi tapu nature of places. The responsibility for identifying and assessing Te Uri o Hau heritage values largely rests with Te Uri o Hau. There may be situations where [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will ask the Department to treat information it provides on wahi tapu sites in a confidential way. The Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will work together to establish processes for dealing with information on wahi tapu sites in a way that recognises both the management challenges that confidentiality can present and respects the views of Te Uri o Hau.

- 8.4 To assist in this process, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will notify the Area Manager of any concerns with the Department's management of wahi tapu areas and the Department will take reasonable steps to address the situation.
- 8.5 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] at the Area Office level to respect the Te Uri o Hau values attached to identified wahi tapu, wahi taonga and places of historic significance on lands administered by the Department by:
- (a) Managing sites of historic significance to Te Uri o Hau according to standards of conservation practice which care for places of cultural heritage value, their structures, materials and cultural meaning, as outlined in the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) New Zealand Charter 1993;
 - (b) Ensuring as far as possible when issuing and renewing concessions that give authority for other parties to manage land administered by the Department, that those parties:
 - (i) Manage the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993; and
 - (ii) When issuing and renewing concessions to carry out activities on the land administered by the Department, request that the concessionaire consult with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] before using cultural information of Te Uri o Hau;
 - (c) Undertaking protection and conservation of wahi tapu and other sites of Maori significance in co-operation with tangata whenua;
 - (d) Informing [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] if wheua tangata (human remains) are found; and
 - (e) Assisting in recording and protecting wahi tapu and other places of cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau where appropriate, to ensure that they are not desecrated or damaged.

9 INDIGENOUS FLORA AND FAUNA

- 9.1 The Department's primary objective is to enhance population numbers and distributional ranges of threatened indigenous species and subspecies where recovery action will be effective. An important part of this work is to prioritise threatened species according to their degree of threat and/or significance. The

Department has a ranking system that sets out the national priorities for the conservation of New Zealand's threatened plants and animals.

9.2 In relation to management of threatened indigenous species within the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, the Department will:

- (a) Where a national recovery programme is being implemented within Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will be consulted and opportunities provided for [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to provide input into decision-making processes and ongoing work that is carried out;
- (b) Where research and monitoring projects are carried out, where it is reasonably practicable, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will be provided with opportunities to participate and to input into decision-making processes; and
- (c) Encourage and provide advice to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in the management or protection of threatened species on land owned by Te Uri o Hau.

9.3 Given the importance of the New Zealand Fairy Tern and its highly endangered status the Department will:

- (a) Where research and monitoring projects within the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area are carried out, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will be provided with opportunities to participate and be involved in decision-making processes; and
- (b) Provide [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] with copies of the proceedings and publications of the relevant species recovery group for New Zealand Fairy Tern species.

10 MARINE MAMMALS

10.1 The Department administers the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Regulations 1992. These Acts provide for the establishment of marine mammal sanctuaries, for permits in respect of marine mammals, the disposal of sick or dead specimens and the prevention of marine mammal harassment. All species of marine mammal occurring within New Zealand, and New Zealand's fisheries waters are absolutely protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. Under that Act, the Department is responsible for the protection, conservation and management of all marine mammals.

- 10.2 The Department's role/responsibility at marine mammal stranding includes responsibility for the welfare of the stranded animals, the disposal of any dead marine mammals (including any part of a marine mammal), the health and safety of its staff and any volunteers under its control, and the public.
- 10.3 [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will identify key contact people who will be available at short notice to make decisions on Te Uri o Hau desire to be involved/perform rituals consistent with Te Uri o Hau tikanga etc.
- 10.4 Prompt notification of all stranding events will be provided to the nominated Te Uri o Hau representatives by the Department.
- 10.5 If at any stage of a stranding the animal(s) is (are) in an obviously distressed condition, or it is clear that a refloating operation is unsuccessful, euthanasia will be required. The decision to euthanase is the responsibility of the Department's stranding control officer. The Department will make every effort to inform [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in advance of any decision to euthanase. If Te Uri o Hau representatives are not available at the time a decision is made to euthanase it will be the responsibility of the stranding control officer to make decisions in the best interest of the marine mammals and public safety.
- 10.6 Both [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department acknowledge the scientific importance of information gathered at a stranding. Decisions concerning the exact nature of the scientific samples required and the subsequent disposal of any dead animals, including their availability to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], will depend on the species.
- 10.7 Depending on the circumstances, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] may want to proceed with the recovery of bone following the collection of scientific data as outlined above, or be unavailable to participate, or wish to officiate only in the appropriate rituals prior to euthanasia.
- 10.8 Because the in-situ recovery of bones involves issues relating to public safety, including the risk of infection from dead and decaying tissue, it needs to be attempted only by the informed and skilled. Te Uri o Hau bone recovery teams will also want to ensure that the appropriate tikanga is understood and followed. However, both the Department and Te Uri o Hau acknowledge that in certain circumstances burial may be the most practical option.
- 10.9 As part of the disposal process, burial sites will be discussed and, where practical, agreed upon in advance by both the Department and [Te Uri o Hau

Governance Entity] in order to meet all the health and safety requirements and to avoid the possible violation of wahi tapu (sacred sites).

11 RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT

11.1 Te Uri o Hau and the Department have mutual concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act. These include effects on:

- wetlands;
- riparian management;
- freshwater fish habitat;
- water quality management;
- protection of historic resources; and
- protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

11.2 From time to time, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department will seek to identify further issues of mutual interest. It is recognised that concerns in any particular resource management issue may diverge and that each of them will continue to make separate submissions.

11.3 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] at the Area Office level to discuss the general approach that will be taken by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern.

11.4 The Department will:

- (a) Have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act; and
- (b) Make non-confidential resource information available to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to assist in improving their effectiveness in Resource Management Act advocacy work.

12 FRESHWATER FISHERIES

- 12.1 Freshwater fisheries are managed under two pieces of legislation; the Fisheries Act 1983 (administered by the Ministry of Fisheries) and the Conservation Act. The Conservation Act deals specifically with the conservation of non-commercial freshwater fisheries.
- 12.2 The Department will consult with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and where reasonably practicable provide for its participation in the conservation and management (including research) of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats.
- 12.3 The Department will work at an Area Office level to provide for active participation by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:
- (a) Seeking to identify areas for co-operation in advocacy, consistent with the Resource Management Act section in this Protocol, focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats;
 - (b) Consulting with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] where the Department is developing or contributing to research and monitoring programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements; and
 - (c) Considering [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

13 PEST CONTROL

- 13.1 A key objective and function of the Department is to prevent, manage and control threats to natural, historic and cultural values from pests. This needs to be done in a way that maximises the value from limited resources available to do this work.
- 13.2 The Department will;

FORM OF DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION PROTOCOL

- (a) Seek and facilitate early consultations with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] on pest control activities within Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, particularly in relation to the use of poisons; and
- (b) Provide [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] with opportunities to review/assess programmes and outcomes.

14 VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

- 14.1 The Department has a role to share knowledge about natural and historic heritage with visitors, to satisfy their requirements for information, increase their enjoyment and understanding of this heritage, and develop an awareness of the need for its conservation. In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department needs to recognise the importance to Te Uri o Hau of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.
- 14.2 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] at the Area Office level to encourage respect for Te Uri o Hau values by:
- (a) Seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars, consulting on the provision of interpretation and visitor facilities (if any) at wahi tapu, wahi taonga and other places of historic or cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau, subject to *clause 9.3* of this Protocol;
 - (b) Ensuring that Department information on new panels, signs, and visitor publications includes Te Uri o Hau perspectives and references to the significance of the sites to Te Uri o Hau where appropriate, including the use of traditional Te Uri o Hau place names;
 - (c) Encouraging Te Uri o Hau participation in the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes;
 - (d) Acknowledging Te Uri o Hau have requested participation in any waste management programmes undertaken by the Department; and
 - (e) Acknowledging [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity]'s interest in training and employment.

15 CONCESSION APPLICATIONS

- 15.1 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to identify categories of concessions of concern to Te Uri o Hau.
- 15.2 In relation to the categories of concern identified by the Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] the Department will:
- (a) Inform [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] of any applications or renewals of applications of in the area covered by this Protocol;
 - (b) When a concession is publicly notified, the Department will at the same time provide separate written notification to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity]; and
 - (c) Prior to issuing concessions to carry out activities on land managed by the Department within the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, and following consultation with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], the Department will ensure that the concessionaire is informed of Te Uri o Hau *tikanga* and values.

[insert appropriate attestations]

ATTACHMENT A
TE URI O HAU DOC PROTOCOL AREA

[map to be provided and to be placed behind this page]

Appendix 14

Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act 2008

Northern Kauri Coast falls within the area covered by the Te Roroa Protocol, as defined in the Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act 2008.

The following two documents form part of the Deed of Settlement.

DOC PROTOCOL

(Clause 8.1)

**FORM OF DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION PROTOCOL
A PROTOCOL ISSUED BY THE CROWN THROUGH THE MINISTER OF CONSERVATION
REGARDING DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION AND TE ROROA ON SPECIFIED ISSUES.**

1. INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 Under the Deed of Settlement dated [] between the Te Roroa Governance Entity and the Crown ("Deed of Settlement"), the Crown, through the Minister of Conservation ("the Minister") agreed to issue a protocol (the "DOC Protocol") setting out how the Department of Conservation ("the Department") will interact with the Te Roroa Governance Entity ("the Governance Entity") on the matters specified in the DOC Protocol.
- 1.2 Both the Department and the Governance Entity are committed to establishing and maintaining a positive and collaborative relationship that will give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. Those principles provide the basis for the ongoing relationship between the parties to the DOC Protocol to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both the Governance Entity and the Department, as set out in this Protocol.
- 1.3 Te Roroa is responsible under tikanga Maori to preserve, protect, and manage natural and historic resources within their rohe. The Department has statutory functions under the Conservation Act 1987 and subordinate legislation.

2. PURPOSE OF THE PROTOCOL

- 2.1 The purpose of this Protocol is to assist the Department and Te Roroa to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost co-operation to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both.
- 2.2 This Protocol sets out a framework that enables the Department and Te Roroa to establish an effective and constructive working relationship that is consistent with the legislative framework. It provides for Te Roroa to have meaningful input into the decision-making processes and management of conservation lands within the Te Roroa DOC Protocol Area.

3. PROTOCOL AREA

- 3.1 This Protocol applies across the Te Roroa DOC Protocol Area, which means the area identified in the map included in Attachment A of this Protocol ("the Protocol Area").

4. TERMS OF ISSUE

- 4.1 This Protocol is issued pursuant to section [] of the Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act [] ("the Settlement") and clause 8.1 of the Deed of Settlement and is subject to the Settlement Legislation and the Deed of Settlement. The provisions of the Settlement Legislation and the Deed of Settlement specifying the terms on which this Protocol is issued are set out in Attachment B of this Protocol.

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

5. IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

- 5.1 The Department will establish and maintain effective communication with Te Roroa on a continuing basis by:
- 5.1.1 Maintaining information on the Governance Entity's office holders, and their address and contact details;
 - 5.1.2 Providing a primary Departmental contact for the Governance Entity, being the Area Manager, who will act as a liaison person with other departmental staff;
 - 5.1.3 Providing reasonable opportunities for the Governance Entity to meet with Department managers and staff;
 - 5.1.4 Holding alternate meetings at the Area Office and a Te Roroa marae or other venue chosen by the Governance Entity to review implementation of this Protocol every three months, unless otherwise agreed by both parties;
 - 5.1.5 Each year developing its annual business planning with input from the Governance Entity and working with the Governance Entity thereafter as changes are proposed to the business plan and
 - 5.1.6 Informing relevant staff and Conservation Board members on the content of this Protocol.
- 5.2 Within the first year of this Protocol being issued, and on a continuing basis the Department and the Governance Entity will discuss practical ways in addition to the provisions contained in this Protocol by which:
- 5.2.1 The Department can be fully informed of the relevant interests of Te Roroa;
 - 5.2.2 Te Roroa can exercise kaitiakitanga over ancestral lands, natural and historic resources and other taonga administered by the Department within the Protocol Area;
 - 5.2.3 Te Roroa can participate in conservation management and activities within the Protocol Area; and
 - 5.2.4 Te Roroa and the Department can continuously improve the process of open, honest communication and will consider particular initiatives to achieve this including:
 - Regular meetings (e.g. monthly) with departmental managers to discuss operational matters within the DOC Protocol Area;
 - Monitoring the implementation of this Protocol;
 - Inviting the Governance Entity to observe specific projects that may be of interest to Te Roroa;

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- Any other initiatives that are agreed to by the Department and the Governance Entity; and
- Considering and/or participating in specific projects with the Governance Entity.

6. FUNDING FOR SEPARATE PROJECTS

- 6.1 This Protocol provides for ongoing implementation of a range of matters as well as special projects identified by the Governance Entity, and implementation will be over time. Some of the projects identified will require specific resourcing set aside through the Department's business planning process.
- 6.2 The process for the involvement of the Governance Entity in the Department's business planning process will be as follows:
- 6.2.1 The Department and the Governance Entity will on an annual basis identify projects that require specific resourcing;
- 6.2.2 The identified projects will be taken into consideration in the Department's business planning process at the conservancy and regional levels and be considered along with other priorities;
- 6.2.3 The decision on whether any of these projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator and the General Manager Operations;
- 6.2.4 If the Department decides to proceed with a specific project that has been identified under this paragraph, the Governance Entity and the Department will meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan and timetable before implementation of the specified project in that business year, in accordance with the resources which have been allocated in the business plan; and
- 6.2.5 If the Department decides not to proceed with a specific project it will meet with the Governance Entity to explain the factors that were taken into account in reaching that decision and, if requested, will provide the Governance Entity with copies of relevant papers (subject to clause 23.1).

7. SPECIES MANAGEMENT

- 7.1 One of the Department's primary objectives is to ensure the survival of species and their genetic diversity. An important part of this work is to prioritise recovery actions in relation to the degree of threat to a species. The Department prioritises recovery actions at both a national and local level.
- 7.2 In recognition of Te Roroa's cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association with indigenous flora and fauna found within the DOC Protocol Area for which the Department has responsibility, the Department will in relation to any indigenous species that Te Roroa may identify as important to them:

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- 7.2.1 where a national recovery programme is being implemented within the DOC Protocol Area, inform and provide opportunities for the Governance Entity to participate in that programme;
- 7.2.2 Provide opportunities for the Governance Entity to input into any Conservation Management Strategy reviews, or the preparation of any statutory or non-statutory plans, policies or documents that relate to the management of those species within the DOC Protocol Area;
- 7.2.3 Inform the Governance Entity before commencing any research and monitoring projects being carried out by the Department within the DOC Protocol Area, and, where reasonably practicable, provide opportunities for the Governance Entity to participate in those projects; and
- 7.2.4 Advise the Governance Entity of the receipt of any research reports relating to indigenous species within the DOC Protocol Area, and provide copies or the opportunity for the Governance Entity to study those reports.

8. CULTURAL MATERIALS

- 8.1 Cultural materials for the purpose of this Protocol are plants, plant materials, material derived from animals and birds for which Te Roroa are kaitiaki and over which the Department has a statutory responsibility within the DOC Protocol Area.
- 8.2 Current legislation means that generally that some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering and possession of cultural materials.
- 8.3 The Director General or the Minister of Conservation will:
 - 8.3.1 Consider requests from the Governance Entity for access to and use of cultural materials from conservation lands in accordance with the relevant legislation;
 - 8.3.2 Subject to competing requests between iwi being resolved through tikanga, or any other special circumstances agreed to by the Department and Governance Entity, provide for the Governance Entity to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of Departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance, or culling of species, or when materials become available as a result of road kill or otherwise through natural causes; and
 - 8.3.3 Develop with the Governance Entity agreed procedures for monitoring sustainable levels and methods of use of cultural materials.

9. WAHI TAPU

- 9.1 Te Roroa consider their wahi tapu and other places of historic and/or traditional significance are taonga (priceless treasures).

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- 9.2 The Department will recognise and respect the great significance of these taonga to Te Roroa by fulfilling the obligations contained in this section of this Protocol.
- 9.3 The responsibility for identifying and assessing wahi tapu values associated with Te Roroa taonga rests with Te Roroa. To assist in this process, the Department will seek Te Roroa's feedback on its proposed annual business plan at the meetings referred to in clause 5.1.5.
- 9.4 On an ongoing basis, the Governance Entity will notify the Area Manager (or equivalent) in the first instance of any concerns with the Department's actions in respect of wahi tapu and the Department will take reasonable steps to address the concerns.
- 9.5 The Department accepts that non-disclosure of information or locations of wahi tapu may be an option that the Governance Entity chooses to take to preserve the values and integrity of those wahi tapu. Any information that is disclosed to the Department will be respected and kept in confidence. The Department and the Governance Entity will develop processes for dealing with information on wahi tapu sites in a way that both recognises the management challenges that confidentiality can present and recognises and provides for the requirements of Te Roroa.
- 9.6 The Department, at the Area Office level, will:
- 9.6.1 Seek to reach agreement with the Governance Entity on the management of sites of historic significance to Te Roroa according to standards of conservation practice which care for places of cultural heritage value, their structures, materials and cultural meaning, as outlined in the International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter 1993 ICOMOS Charter;
 - 9.6.2 When recommending to the Minister of Conservation the issuing of concessions giving authority for other parties to carry out activities on land administered by the Department, include within the terms of the concessions provision for the concessionaire to manage the activities on the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS Charter;
 - 9.6.3 Seek to reach agreement with the Governance Entity to provide for the protection and conservation of wahi tapu and other sites of significance to Te Roroa; and
 - 9.6.4 When requested by the Governance Entity, discuss the recording and protecting of wahi tapu and other places of cultural significance to Te Roroa.

10. FRESHWATER FISHERIES

- 10.1 Freshwater Fisheries are managed under three pieces of legislation: The Fisheries Act 1983 and 1996 (administered by the Ministry of Fisheries) and the Conservation Act 1987. The Conservation Act deals specifically with the conservation of non-commercial freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats. The whitebait fishery is administered by the Department under the Whitebait Fishing Regulations 1994.

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- 10.2 Te Roroa regard a number of freshwater species as taonga species, including the following:
- 10.2.1 Black Mudfish
 - 10.2.2 Dwarf Inanga
 - 10.2.3 Inanga
 - 10.2.4 Karawaka/Ngaiore (Common Smelt)
 - 10.2.5 Kewai (Freshwater Crayfish)
- 10.3 The Department will consult with the Governance Entity and provide for its participation in the conservation and management (including research) of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats.
- 10.4 In carrying out the functions identified in clause 10.3, the Department will:
- 10.4.1 Respect the significance of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats to Te Roroa;
 - 10.4.2 Respect Te Roroa tikanga in relation to freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats.
- 10.5 The Department and the Governance Entity will work together to ensure that the Department as appropriate is aware of relevant tikanga relating to freshwater fisheries.
- 10.6 The Department will work at an Area Office level to provide for active participation by the Governance Entity in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:
- 10.6.1 Seeking to identify areas for co-operation focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats;
 - 10.6.2 Consulting with the Governance Entity where the Department is developing or contributing to research and monitoring programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements; and
 - 10.6.3 Considering the Governance Entity as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

11. VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

- 11.1 In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities on the land it manages, the Department acknowledges the importance to Te Roroa of their tikanga, spiritual and historic values.
- 11.2 The Department, at the Area Office level, will promote Te Roroa values by:
- 11.2.1 Seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed by the Governance Entity, the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars;
 - 11.2.2 Consulting with the Governance Entity on how Te Roroa tikanga, spiritual and historic values are respected in the provision of visitor facilities, public information and Department publications;
 - 11.2.3 Taking reasonable steps to respect Te Roroa tikanga spiritual and historic values in the provision of visitor facilities, public information and Department publications; and
 - 11.2.4 Ensuring the appropriate use of information about Te Roroa in the provision of visitor facilities and services, public information and Department publications by:
 - (a) Obtaining the consent of the Governance Entity prior to disclosure of information obtained from Te Roroa;
 - (b) Obtaining the agreement of the Governance Entity, including on any terms and conditions, before the Department's utilisation of information relating to Te Roroa;
 - (c) Encouraging Te Roroa participation in the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes by informing the Governance Entity of these programmes; and
 - (d) Encouraging any concessionaire proposing to use information provided by or relating to Te Roroa to obtain the agreement (including on any terms and conditions) of the Governance Entity.

12. CONCESSION APPLICATIONS

- 12.1 The Department will:
- 12.1.1 Provide to the Governance Entity copies of all concession applications or renewals of applications in the DOC Protocol Area;
 - 12.1.2 Seek the input of the Governance Entity when assessing all applications or renewals of applications in the area covered by this Protocol by:

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- Providing for the Governance Entity to indicate within five working days whether applications have any impacts on Te Roroa's cultural, spiritual and historical values; and
 - If the Governance Entity indicates that an application has an impact on Te Roroa's cultural, spiritual and historical values, allowing a reasonable specified timeframe (of at least a further 15 working days) for comment;
- 12.1.3 Prior to a concession being publicly notified, the Department will provide separate written notification to the Governance Entity;
- 12.1.4 Prior to issuing concessions to carry out activities on land managed by the Department within the DOC Protocol Area, the Department will work with the Governance Entity to ensure that the concessionaire is made aware of Te Roroa's tikanga and values; and
- 12.1.5 Include in any concession the terms specified in clause 9.6.2.

13. MARINE MAMMALS

- 13.1 The Department administers the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Regulations 1992. These Acts provide for the establishment of marine mammal sanctuaries, for permits in respect of marine mammals, the disposal of sick or dead specimens and the prevention of marine mammal harassment. All species of marine mammal occurring within New Zealand and New Zealand's fisheries waters are absolutely protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. Under that Act the Department is responsible for the protection, conservation and management of all marine mammals, including their disposal and the health and safety of its staff and any volunteers under its control, and the public.
- 13.2 The Department believes that there are opportunities to meet the cultural requirements of Te Roroa and to facilitate the gathering of scientific information. This protocol is intended to meet both needs by way of a co-operative approach to the management of whale strandings and to provide general guidelines for the management of whale strandings in the DOC Protocol Area, and for the recovery by Te Roroa of bone and other material for cultural purposes from dead marine mammals.
- 13.3 In achieving these objectives, the Department will comply with the requirements of section 4 of the Act, as well as assisting the conservation of cetacean species by contribution to the collection of specimens and scientific data of national and international importance.
- 13.4 Both the Department and Te Roroa acknowledge the scientific importance of information gathered at strandings. Decisions concerning the exact nature of the scientific samples required and the subsequent disposal of any dead animals, including their availability to Te Roroa, will depend on the species.
- 13.5 The following species ("category 1 species") are known to strand most frequently on New Zealand shores. In principle these species should be available to the Governance Entity for the recovery of bone once scientific data and samples have

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

been collected. If under certain circumstances there are reasons why this principle should not be followed, they must be discussed between the parties to this Protocol. Category 1 species are:

- 13.5.1 Common dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*)
- 13.5.2 Long-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala melas*)
- 13.5.3 Sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*)
- 13.6 The following species ("category 2 species") are either not commonly encountered in New Zealand waters, or may frequently strand here but are rare elsewhere in the world. For these reasons their scientific value has first priority. In most instances, bone from category 2 species will be made available to the Governance Entity after autopsy if requested.
 - 13.6.1 All baleen whales
 - 13.6.2 Short-finned pilot whale (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*)
 - 13.6.3 Beaked whales (all species, family Ziphiidae)
 - 13.6.4 Pygmy sperm whale (*Kogia breviceps*)
 - 13.6.5 Dwarf sperm whale (*Kogia simus*)
 - 13.6.6 Bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*)
 - 13.6.7 Maui's dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori maui*)
 - 13.6.8 Dusky dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus obscurus*)
 - 13.6.9 Risso's dolphin (*Grampus griseus*)
 - 13.6.10 Spotted dolphin (*Stenella attenuata*)
 - 13.6.11 Striped dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*)
 - 13.6.12 Rough-toothed dolphin (*Steno bredanensis*)
 - 13.6.13 Southern right whale dolphin (*Lissodelphis peronii*)
 - 13.6.14 Spectacled porpoise (*Australophocoena dioptrica*)
 - 13.6.15 Melon-headed whale (*Peponocephala electra*)
 - 13.6.16 Pygmy killer whale (*Feresa attenuata*)

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- 13.6.17 False killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*)
- 13.6.18 Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*)
- 13.6.19 Any other species of cetacean previously unknown in New Zealand waters.
- 13.7 If Te Roroa does not wish to recover the bone or otherwise participate the Governance Entity will notify the Department whereupon the Department will take responsibility for disposing of the cadaver.
- 13.8 Because the in-situ recovery of bones involves issues relating to public safety, including the risk of infection from dead and decaying tissue, it needs to be attempted only by the informed and skilled. Te Roroa bone recovery teams will also want to ensure that the appropriate cultural tikanga is understood and followed. However, both parties acknowledge that generally burial will be the most practical option.
- 13.9 Subject to the prior agreement of the Conservator, where disposal of a dead stranded marine mammal is carried out by the Governance Entity, the Department will meet the reasonable costs incurred up to the estimated costs that would otherwise have been incurred by the Department to carry out the disposal.
- 13.10 The Department will:
- 13.10.1 reach agreement with the Governance Entity on authorised contact people who will be available at short notice to make decisions on the desire of Te Roroa to be involved when there is a marine mammal stranding;
 - 13.10.2 promptly notify Te Roroa, through the Governance Entity, of all stranding events;
 - 13.10.3 discuss, as part of the disposal process, burial sites and, where practical, agree sites in advance which are not to be used for disposing of cadavers in order to meet all the health and safety requirements and to avoid the possible violation of Te Roroa tikanga; and
 - 13.10.4 consult with the Governance Entity in developing or contributing to research and monitoring of the seal population within the DOC Protocol Area.

14. MARINE RESERVES

- 14.1 Marine Reserves are managed under the Marine Reserves Act 1971, although new legislation is in preparation. The purpose of the Marine Reserves Act 1971 is to preserve for scientific study areas of New Zealand's territorial sea that contain underwater scenery, natural features or marine life of such distinctive quality, or which are so typical or beautiful or unique that their continued preservation is in the national interest.

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- 14.2 There are also other mechanisms available for the protection of marine resources, including Mātaitai and Taiapure under the Fisheries Legislation, which could be used within the Protocol Area.
- 14.3 Te Roroa has an interest in preserving and enhancing its relationship with the land and waters within the Protocol Area, and in the customary management and utilisation of fisheries.
- 14.4 The Department will work at both Conservancy and Area Office level to:
- 14.4.1 notify the Governance Entity prior to undertaking any investigative work towards an application by the Department, or upon receipt of any application by a third party, for the establishment of a marine reserve within the DOC Protocol Area;
 - 14.4.2 provide the Governance Entity with all information (subject to clause 23.1), to the extent reasonably practical, regarding any application by either the Department or a third party for the establishment of a marine reserve within the DOC Protocol Area;
 - 14.4.3 seek input from the Governance Entity on any application for a marine reserve within the DOC Protocol Area and use reasonable efforts to address any concerns expressed by the Governance Entity; and
 - 14.4.4 consider input by Te Roroa into the management of any marine reserve created within the DOC Protocol Area.

15. PEST MANAGEMENT

- 15.1 A key objective and function of the Department is to prevent, manage and control threats to natural, cultural and historical heritage values from plant and animal pests. This needs to be done in a way that maximises the value from limited resources available to do this work. This area of work has been identified as being of high importance to Te Roroa as both kaitiaki and, in some circumstances, as an adjoining owner to land administered by the Department.
- 15.2 The Department will:
- 15.2.1 seek and facilitate early consultation with the Governance Entity on pest control activities within the DOC Protocol Area, particularly in relation to the use of poisons;
 - 15.2.2 Where appropriate, consider undertaking joint projects with the Governance Entity or using the Governance Entity as a service provider for pest control work;
 - 15.2.3 Provide the Governance Entity with opportunities to review/assess programmes and outcomes; and

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

- 15.2.4 Seek to co-ordinate its pest control programmes with those of Governance Entity where the Governance Entity is an adjoining landowner.

16. RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT

- 16.1 Te Roroa and the Department both have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act 1991. Areas of common interest include riparian management, effects on freshwater fish habitat, water quality management, and protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.
- 16.2 From time to time, the Governance Entity and the Department will seek to identify further issues of mutual interest for discussion. It is recognised that their concerns in any particular resource management issue may diverge and that each of the Department and the Governance Entity will continue to make separate submissions in any Resource Management Act processes.
- 16.3 In its Resource Management Advocacy work, the Department will:
- 16.3.1 discuss with the Governance Entity the general approach that may be taken by each of Te Roroa and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern;
 - 16.3.2 have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act; and
 - 16.3.3 where reasonably practicable, make non-confidential information about national departmental advocacy programmes available to the Governance Entity to assist in improving its effectiveness in Resource Management Act advocacy work.

17. WASTE AND POLLUTION

- 17.1 The Department and Te Roroa have an interest in ensuring that the natural environment is free from contamination. The Department will take all reasonable steps to prevent the pollution of waterways and the wider environment as a result of its activities (e.g. provision of toileting facilities).

18. WALKWAYS

- 18.1 The Department is generally the administering authority of walkways under the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990.
- 18.2 The Department will consult the Governance Entity before:
- 18.2.1 gazetting any new walkway over public land within the DOC Protocol Area;
 - 18.2.2 publishing any material promoting any walkway within the DOC Protocol Area; and

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: PROTOCOLS: DOC PROTOCOL

18.2.3 In accordance with section 8 of the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990, the Department will obtain the agreement of the Governance Entity before gazetting any new walkway over any area involving land owned by the Governance Entity.

19. CHANGE OF PLACE NAMES

19.1 Subject to legislation, the Department agrees that no names of reserves or conservation areas will be assigned or amended within the Protocol Area unless the agreement of the Governance Entity is obtained in advance.

19.2 The Department will consult the Governance Entity on any new or amended office (e.g. Area Office) names.

20. DISPUTE RESOLUTION

20.1 If a dispute arises in connection with this Protocol, the party invoking the dispute resolution procedure shall be entitled to call a meeting within five working days of notice being given.

20.2 If no resolution is reached at the meeting referred to in clause 20.1, the parties may agree to refer the dispute to mediation, with the mediator to be mutually agreed and the costs of mediation to be equally split between the parties.

20.3 Te Roroa retains the right at all times to enforce this Protocol, as provided for in clause 8.9.6 of the Deed of Settlement.

21. CONSULTATION

21.1 Where the Department is required to consult under this Protocol, the basic principles that will be followed by the Department in consulting with the Governance Entity in each case are:

21.1.1 Ensuring that the Governance Entity is consulted as soon as reasonably practicable following the identification and determination by the Department of the proposal or issues to be the subject of the consultation;

21.1.2 Providing the Governance Entity with sufficient information to make informed discussions and submissions in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation;

21.1.3 Ensuring that sufficient time is given for the effective participation of the Governance Entity in the decision making process and the preparation of submissions by the Governance Entity in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation; and

21.1.4 Ensuring that the Department will approach the consultation with the Governance Entity with an open mind, and will genuinely consider any concerns that the Governance Entity may have in relation to any of the

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: TE TAREHU

TE TAREHU

1. **Description of Area**

- 1.1 The area over which Te Tarehu is created is part of the area known as the Waipoua Forest as shown A on SO 354589.

2. **Preamble**

- 2.1 Pursuant to section [] of the [Settlement Legislation] (clause 8.15.2 of the Deed of Settlement), the Crown acknowledges the statement by Te Roroa of their cultural, spiritual, historic and/or traditional values relating to Waipoua Forest, as set out below.
- 2.2 For the avoidance of doubt, the DOC Protocol (clause 8.1 of the Deed of Settlement) applies in relation to Te Tarehu. Where the provisions of the DOC Protocol and Te Tarehu are inconsistent, the provisions of Te Tarehu prevail.

3. **Te Roroa Values**

- 3.1 Waipoua Forest is a taonga and wahi tapu to Te Roroa of fundamental cultural, ecological and religious significance, parts of which were regarded by Te Roroa tupuna as "wahi tino tapu, whenua rahui".
- 3.2 In the Waipoua Valley, the settlement pattern encompassed three zones: the pa on the high ridges, the fertile lower slopes and river terraces, and the coastal flats. Topographical features were made more indelible by stories of tupuna involved in naming the many places.
- 3.3 The isolation of Waipoua has been a contributing factor to the unassailed position Te Roroa has held in respect of their manawhenua, manamoana and manatupuna.
- 3.4 Waipoua Forest contains specific taonga and wahi tapu including the kauri trees, urupa and kainga tupuna, as well as traditional resources.
- 3.5 Te Roroa are the kaitiaki of Waipoua Forest and everything in it and assert that they maintain tino rangatiratanga over the Forest.

4. **Protection Principles**

- 4.1 The following Protection Principles are directed at the Minister of Conservation avoiding harm to, or the diminishing of, the Te Roroa Values related to Te Tarehu:
- 4.1.1 Protection of wahi tapu, indigenous flora and fauna and the wider environment within Waipoua Forest;
- 4.1.2 Recognition of the mana, kaitiakitanga and tikanga of Te Roroa within Waipoua Forest;

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: TE TAREHU

- 4.1.3 Respect for Te Roroa tikanga within Waipoua Forest;
- 4.1.4 Encouragement of respect for the association of Te Roroa with Waipoua Forest;
- 4.1.5 Accurate portrayal of the association of Te Roroa with Waipoua Forest; and
- 4.1.6 Recognition of the relationship of Te Roroa with wahi tapu, and wahi taonga.

5. Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in relation to specific principles

5.1 Pursuant to clause 8.15.11 of the Deed of Settlement, the Director-General has determined that the following actions will be taken by the Department of Conservation in relation to the specific principles.

5.2 Information

- 5.2.1 Departmental staff, contractors, conservation board members, concessionaires and the public will be provided with information about the Te Roroa Values and the existence of the Tarehu Overlay Area and will be encouraged to respect the Te Roroa association with Waipoua Forest;
- 5.2.2 The Department will work with Te Roroa on the design and location of new signs to discourage inappropriate behaviour, including fossicking, the modification of wahi tapu sites and disturbance of other taonga;
- 5.2.3 The public will be informed that the removal of all rubbish and wastes from Waipoua Forest is required;
- 5.2.4 Te Roroa's association with Waipoua Forest will be accurately portrayed in all new Departmental information and educational material; and
- 5.2.5 Te Roroa Governance Entity will be consulted regarding the provision of all new Departmental public information or educational material, and the Department will only use Te Roroa's cultural information with the consent of the Governance Entity.

5.3 Land and forest management

- 5.3.1 Significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation will be avoided wherever possible;
- 5.3.2 Where significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation cannot be avoided, Te Roroa Governance Entity will be consulted and particular regard will be had to its views, including those relating to koiwi (unidentified human remains) and archaeological sites; and
- 5.3.3 Any koiwi (human remains) or other taonga found or uncovered by the Department will be left untouched and Te Roroa Governance Entity informed

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: TE TAREHU

as soon as possible to enable Te Roroa to deal with the koiwi or taonga in accordance with their tikanga, subject to any procedures required by law.

5.3.4 The Department will work with the Governance Entity when drafting a section of the Northland Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) that applies to the Waipoua Forest, including:

- (a) identification of the effects (including adverse and cumulative effects) of different uses of the forest (including concessions);
- (b) how any adverse effects will be managed or minimised (e.g. through the identification of thresholds and limits for different uses of the forest); and
- (c) the care and management of wahi tapu and Te Roroa taonga within the forest.

5.3.5 If the CMS requires the preparation of a Conservation Management Plan for Waipoua Forest, the Department will work with Te Roroa when drafting that Plan.

5.4 Concessions

5.4.1 The Department will:

- (a) provide to the Governance Entity copies of all applications or renewals of applications in the Tarehu Overlay Area;
- (b) seek the input of the Governance Entity when assessing all applications or renewals of applications in the Tarehu Overlay Area by:
 - providing for the Governance Entity to indicate within five Business Days whether applications have any impacts on Te Roroa's cultural, spiritual and historical values; and
 - if the Governance Entity indicates that an application has an impact on Te Roroa's cultural, spiritual and historical values, allowing a reasonable specified timeframe (of at least a further 15 Business Days) for comment;
- (c) have regard to the potential impact of any concession application on the Te Roroa Statement of Values and the Protection Principles and take reasonable steps to avoid or minimise any impact
- (d) prior to a concession being publicly notified, provide separate written notification to the Governance Entity;
- (e) prior to the Minister of Conservation or his/her delegated representative issuing concessions to carry out activities on land managed by the Department within the Waipoua Forest, and following consultation with

TE ROROA DEED OF SETTLEMENT: SCHEDULES

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: TE TAREHU

the Governance Entity, take all reasonable steps to ensure that the concessionaire is informed of Te Roroa tikanga and values;

- (f) when the Minister of Conservation or his/her delegated representative issues concessions giving authority for other parties to carry out activities on land administered by the Department, the Department will recommend to the Minister of Conservation or his/her delegated representative to include within the terms of the concession provision for the concessionaire to carry out the activities according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993;
- (g) if requested by the Governance Entity, provide an explanation of the factors recommended to the Minister of Conservation or his/her delegated representative that were taken into account in reaching a decision on any particular concession application; and
- (h) if Te Roroa and the Department are unable to agree on a specific concession application, the Conservator will, if requested by Te Roroa, consider Te Roroa's views before the Department makes a decision on the application.

5.5 Cultural Materials

- 5.5.1 Unless there are special circumstances agreed to by both parties, the Governance Entity shall have access to all cultural materials that become available as a result of departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance, or culling of species, or when materials become available as a result of roadkill or otherwise through natural causes.
- 5.5.2 After discussion with the Governance Entity, the Department will consider an authorisation under section 30(2) of the Conservation Act to collect certain plants, or a recommendation to the Minister of Conservation for a concession application under Part 3B of the Act, for the Governance Entity to collect other materials of cultural significance on an ongoing basis (e.g. for five year periods), with any terms and conditions necessary to protect conservation values.

5.6 Kauri National Park

- 5.6.1 The Department will immediately inform the Governance Entity of any work by the Department towards changing the legal status of land within the Waipoua Forest, including for the purposes of a National Park (for example, immediately upon the commencement of any work by the Department leading to a recommendation under section 7(2) of the National Parks Act 1980 or any investigation or re-confirmation of an earlier investigation requested by the NZCA under section 8 of that Act).
- 5.6.2 If the Department is requested by the Minister, the NZCA or the Northland Conservation Board to provide a recommendation with regard to any change of land status or new management body for Waipoua Forest, it will convene a

1: RELATIONSHIP REDRESS: TE TAREHU

working group comprised equally of the Department and the Governance Entity (with other members to be co-opted as may be agreed) to draft a report (including recommendations) to the Director-General.

- 5.6.3 If the status of the Waipoua Forest changes (e.g. to a National Park) the Department will work with the Governance Entity when developing any new management plan (or equivalent document).

Appendix 15

Ngati Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012

Whangaruru-Mangawhai Place falls within the area covered by the Ngati Manuhiri Protocol, as defined in the Ngati Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012. The following document forms part of the Deed of Settlement.

**A PROTOCOL ISSUED BY THE CROWN THROUGH THE MINISTER OF CONSERVATION
AND THE DIRECTOR-GENERAL OF CONSERVATION ON SPECIFIED ISSUES**

1 PURPOSE OF PROTOCOL

- 1.1 This Protocol sets out how the Department of Conservation (the “Department”) and the trustees of the Ngāti Manuhiri Settlement Trust (“the Governance Entity”) will work together in fulfilling conservation objectives across the Ngāti Manuhiri area of interest. It is a framework to foster the development of a positive, collaborative and enduring relationship into the future between Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department of Conservation.
- 1.2 This Protocol forms part of the Ngāti Manuhiri – Crown Agreement in Principle, agreed by Cabinet on 17 December 2009. The terms of the Ngāti Manuhiri – Deed of Settlement apply to this Protocol and should be read as part of this Protocol.
- 1.3 This Protocol shall apply within the Ngāti Manuhiri rohe, referred to as the “Protocol Area” or “Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area”.

2 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

Joint Objectives

- 2.1 Ngāti Manuhiri, the Minister and the Director-General are committed to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area, for present and future generations.
- 2.2 The Ngāti Manuhiri rohe is primarily contained within the Department of Conservation’s Auckland Conservancy Area.

Ngāti Manuhiri Manuhiritanga

- 2.3 Ngāti Manuhiri, as represented by the Governance Entity, describe their cultural, traditional and historic association with the land and waters, and indigenous flora and fauna within their rohe, as manuhiritanga. Manuhiritanga is “the practice and recognition of Ngāti Manuhiri tribal whakapapa, tikanga, kawa, lore and tinorangatiratanga that over arch all whenua, moana and taonga of Ngāti Manuhiri”.

Minister, Director-General and Department of Conservation

- 2.4 The Department administers 24 Acts and has functions under a number of other Acts. Its functions include managing “for conservation purposes, all land, and all other natural and historic resources” under the Conservation Legislation. This must be interpreted and administered so as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that those principles are consistent with the Conservation Legislation.

3 STRATEGIC COLLABORATION

- 3.1 As soon as is practicable after the signing of this Protocol the parties will meet to agree long-term strategic objectives for their relationship (“the strategic objectives for the partnership”).

- 3.2 Thereafter, the Governance Entity will meet with senior staff of the Department (including the Auckland Conservator, the Warkworth Great Barrier Island Area Manager and Pou Kura Taiao) within the Protocol Area at least once a year. At these meetings, the parties will determine whether meetings involving other senior managers of the Department and the Governance Entity are required on particular issues.
- 3.3 The Governance Entity and the Department undertake separate business planning processes prior to the beginning of each new financial year. These business planning processes determine Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department's work priorities and commitments for the year. For the Department, business planning processes largely sit with Area Managers. The parties will meet at an early stage in their annual business planning processes to discuss timeframes for the development of annual work programmes, and to identify potential projects to be undertaken together or separately which are consistent with the strategic objectives for the relationship.
- 3.4 If a specific project is undertaken, the Department and the Governance Entity will determine the nature of their collaboration on that project which may include finalising a work plan for that project. If a specific project is not undertaken, the parties will advise one another of the reason(s) for this.
- 3.5 As part of annual discussions, and as part of ongoing dialogue, the parties will advise each other of:
- a) any significant changes that have occurred or are proposed (including structural, legislative, policy or administrative changes) regarding how either party is working in the Protocol Area; and
 - b) potential opportunities for applying for funding for conservation purposes from external sources (either jointly or individually with the support of the other party).
- 3.6 Each year, the parties will provide a letter or similar form of written advice to the other that describes the work that party has carried out in that financial year to achieve the strategic objectives for the relationship.

Planning documents

- 3.7 The Department and the Governance Entity will meet to identify and seek to address issues affecting Ngāti Manuhiri at an early stage (before public consultation, if any, and throughout the process) in the preparation, review or amendment of any Statutory Planning Document within the Protocol Area.

4 FRESHWATER FISHERIES

- 4.1 Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department share aspirations for conservation of freshwater fisheries within the Protocol Area. Freshwater fisheries will be a key focus in the strategic objectives for the relationship.
- 4.2 The Department's statutory functions include the preservation, as far as practicable, of all indigenous freshwater fisheries, and the protection of recreational freshwater fisheries and their habitats. The Department is responsible for the regulation of whitebait fishing under the Whitebait Regulations. Its work also focuses on fisheries and habitats that are located on public conservation land, species under recovery plans, and biosecurity issues. In all other areas, advocacy for the conservation of freshwater fisheries is undertaken primarily through Resource Management Act processes.

- 4.3 The parties will co-operate in the conservation of freshwater fisheries and freshwater habitats. Establishing these aims in the strategic objectives for the relationship will ensure that actions towards these are integrated into the annual business planning process. These actions may include: areas for co-operation in the protection, restoration and enhancement of riparian vegetation and habitats (including marginal strips); and the development or implementation of research and monitoring programmes.

5 STATUTORY AUTHORISATIONS

- 5.1 The strategic objectives for the relationship will guide the parties to determine appropriate engagement on Statutory Authorisations within the Protocol Area.
- 5.2 As part of these strategic objectives, the Governance Entity and the Department will identify categories of statutory authorisations that may impact on the cultural, traditional and/or historic values of Ngāti Manuhiri. These categories will be reviewed as agreed. The Department will advise and encourage all prospective applicants within the Protocol Area to consult with the Governance Entity before filing their application. The Department will also consult the Governance Entity at an early stage on such categories of authorisations or renewal of authorisations within the Protocol Area.
- 5.3 The Department will consult with the Governance Entity and have regard to its views for Statutory Authorisations for Te Hauturu-o-Toi / Little Barrier Island.
- 5.4 For the types of statutory authorisations that Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department agree have potential significance the Department and the Governance Entity see the benefit of seeking agreement, in a timely manner, on an appropriate response to the application, before the decision is made under the relevant legislation.
- 5.5 As the Department works within time limits to process concession applications, it will notify the Governance Entity (as part of the meetings referred to in paragraph 4.2) of the time frames for providing advice.
- 5.6 It is expected that the strategic objectives for the relationship will guide the parties to determine potential opportunities for Ngāti Manuhiri to obtain statutory authorisations on public conservation land within the Protocol Area, including concessions for cultural tours.

6 STATUTORY LAND MANAGEMENT

- 6.1 The strategic objectives for the relationship will guide the parties' engagement on statutory land management activities within the Protocol Area. Ngāti Manuhiri has an ongoing interest in the range of statutory land management activities that are occurring within the Protocol Area.
- 6.2 From time to time, the Department and the Governance Entity will identify the categories of statutory land management activities that have potential to affect Ngāti Manuhiri sites of significance, and where consultation is appropriate. This includes when: the Minister is considering vestings or management appointments for reserves held under the Reserves Act 1977; other management arrangements with third parties; changing reserve classifications; or disposing of reserves.
- 6.3 Before vesting or making an appointment to control and manage a reserve under the Reserves Act for a Ngāti Manuhiri site of significance, the Department will discuss with the Governance Entity whether Ngāti Manuhiri wishes to be given such a vesting or appointment subject to agreed conditions (if any).

7 CULTURAL MATTERS

- 7.1 The Department will facilitate, in accordance with legislative requirements, Ngāti Manuhiri access to cultural materials and will consider potential impacts on Ngāti Manuhiri where cultural materials are requested by other persons.
- 7.2 Ngāti Manuhiri will develop a Cultural Materials Plan regarding the access, restoration, enhancement and use of taonga cultural materials. Ngāti Manuhiri will work collaboratively with the Department on this, subject to the Department's available resources. Discussions on the plan may include:
- a) identification of cultural materials, their current state, and desired conservation outcomes within the Protocol Area;
 - b) streamlined authorisations process for iwi members to gather cultural materials (within existing legislation). This may include multi-site and multi-take permits to the Governance Entity, which may in turn enable the Governance Entity to authorise its own members to take and use flora materials within the Protocol Area for cultural purposes in accordance with the permit issued to the Governance Entity;
 - c) processes for consultation when there are requests from other persons or entities to take cultural materials;
 - d) opportunities to plant and harvest cultural materials on public conservation land;
 - e) waiver or reduction of recovery of authorisation costs for cultural materials applications; and
 - f) opportunities for the Department and Ngāti Manuhiri to work collaboratively on cultural materials enhancement within the Protocol Area (including knowledge transfer, education, wānanga, and preservation techniques).

SITES OF SIGNIFICANCE

- 7.3 Both parties recognise that there are wāhi tapu and sites of significance to Ngāti Manuhiri on lands managed under Conservation Legislation.
- 7.4 Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department share aspirations for protecting wāhi tapu, sites of significance and other historic places. The parties will work together and endeavour to conserve, in accordance with best practices, sites of significance in areas managed under Conservation Legislation within the Protocol Area. This will be done according to Ngāti Manuhiri tikanga and professional standards for conservation of historic places.
- 7.5 The parties will develop a process for advising one another of sites of significance and wāhi tapu. Information relating to Ngāti Manuhiri sites of significance will be treated in confidence by the Department in order to preserve the wāhi tapu nature of places, unless otherwise agreed by the Trust.
- 7.6 The parties will consult each other in relation to recommendations for public conservation lands containing sites of significance that are to be named in the Protocol Area.

8 SPECIES AND HABITAT PROTECTION (INCLUDING NATIONAL PROGRAMMES AND PEST CONTROL)

- 8.1 The parties share aspirations of protecting ecosystems and indigenous flora and fauna within the Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area. These aspirations will be reflected in the strategic objectives for the relationship.
- 8.2 The Department aims to conserve the full range of New Zealand's ecosystems, maintain or restore the ecological integrity of managed sites, and ensure the survival of threatened species, in particular those most at risk of extinction. This work involves a number of national programmes.
- 8.3 As part of annual discussions the Department will update the Governance Entity of any national sites and species programmes operating in the Protocol Area and will discuss with the Governance Entity how Ngāti Manuhiri wish to be involved in these programmes, particularly where they will progress the strategic objectives for the relationship. The Department and the Governance Entity will also discuss opportunities and processes for collaboration with one another on other field projects of mutual interest.
- 8.4 Preventing, managing and controlling threats to natural, historic and cultural values from animal and weed pests is an integral part of protecting the unique biodiversity of New Zealand. This is done in a way that maximises the value from limited resources available to do this work.
- 8.5 It is envisaged that the strategic objectives for the relationship will determine the strategic outcomes sought from pest control programmes within the Protocol Area, including: monitoring and assessment of programmes; the use of poisons; and co-ordination of pest control where Ngāti Manuhiri is the adjoining landowner. Through the annual business planning process, the parties will create actions to progress these strategic objectives.

9 VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

- 9.1 Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department wish to share knowledge about natural and historic heritage within the Protocol Area with visitors and the general public. This is important to increase enjoyment and understanding of this heritage, and to develop awareness of the need for its conservation.
- 9.2 The parties will encourage respect for and awareness of conservation in, and the Ngāti Manuhiri relationship with, the Protocol Area, including by:
- a) raising public awareness of positive conservation relationships developed between the parties;
 - b) engaging with each other in the development of visitor and public information published by either party that relates to Ngāti Manuhiri values in land and resources managed under Conservation Legislation, particularly where that information relates to Ngāti Manuhiri sites of significance and aspirations to the land; and
 - c) the Department obtaining the consent of the Governance Entity for the disclosure of information received from the Governance Entity relating to Ngāti Manuhiri values.

10 CONSERVATION ADVOCACY

- 10.1 From time to time, Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department will each have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act 1991 and other legislation. The Department's advocacy role includes matters of concern to it under the Resource Management Act.
- 10.2 The Governance Entity and the Department will seek to identify issues of mutual interest and/or concern ahead of each party making submissions in relevant processes.

11 CROSS-ORGANISATIONAL OPPORTUNITIES

- 11.1 As part of the annual business planning process, the parties will discuss:
- a) opportunities and processes to share scientific and cultural resource and information, including data and research material (including to assist Ngāti Manuhiri to exercise their role under the Deed and as kaitiaki);
 - b) opportunities for developing mutual understanding and developing relationships, with respect to conservation, environmental and cultural matters within the Protocol Area. Options may include wānanga, education, training, development and secondments;
 - c) opportunities to be involved or to nominate individuals to take part in relevant training initiatives run by both parties, including cadetships and/or biosecurity accreditation for Te Hauturu-o-Toi / Little Barrier Island;
 - d) potential opportunities for full time positions, holiday employment or student research projects which may arise within the Protocol Area. Ngāti Manuhiri may propose candidates for these roles or opportunities; and
 - e) staff changes and key contacts in each organisation.
- 11.2 Where appropriate, the Department will consider using Ngāti Manuhiri individuals or entities as providers of professional services (such as oral history and interpretation projects). In doing so, the Department recognises the affect that this may have on mana whakahaere of Ngāti Manuhiri. Normal conflict of interests processes will be implemented to avoid a perceived or actual conflict of interest.

12 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

- 12.1 If a dispute arises in connection with this Protocol, every effort will be made in good faith to resolve matters at a local level. This may require the Department's Warkworth Great Barrier Island Area Manager to meet with a representative of the Governance Entity within a reasonable timeframe to endeavour to find a resolution to the matter.
- 12.2 If this process is not successful, the matter may be escalated to a meeting of the Department's Auckland Conservator and a nominated representative of the Governance Entity who will meet within a reasonable timeframe.
- 12.3 If a negotiated outcome cannot be reached from this process, the parties may agree for the issue to be escalated to a meeting between the Director-General (or nominee) and the Chief Executive of the Governance Entity.
- 12.4 If the Department and the Governance Entity agree that the matter is of such significance that it requires the attention of the chair of the Governance Entity and the Minister, then this

matter will be escalated to a meeting of the chair of the Governance Entity and the Minister (or their nominees). The parties acknowledge this measure will be a means of last resort.

13 REVIEW AND AMENDMENT

13.1 The parties agree that this Protocol is a living document that should be updated and adapted to take account of future developments and additional co-management opportunities. If requested by either party, the first review of this Protocol will take place no later than three years after the date this Protocol is signed, and if requested by either party will be reviewed every three years thereafter.

13.2 The parties may only vary this Protocol by agreement in writing.

14 DEFINITIONS

14.1 In this document:

Conservation Legislation means the Conservation Act 1987 and the statutes in the First Schedule of the Act;

Crown has the meaning given to it in section 2(1) of the Public Finance Act 1989;

Cultural materials means plants, plant materials, and materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds for which the Department is responsible within the Ngāti Manuhiri rohe and which are important to Ngāti Manuhiri in maintaining and expressing their cultural values and practices;

Department means the Minister of Conservation, the Director-General and the Departmental managers to whom the Minister of Conservation's and the Director-General's decision-making powers can be delegated;

Kaitiaki means guardian in accordance with tikanga Māori;

Ngāti Manuhiri has the meaning set out in the Deed of Settlement;

Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area or **Protocol Area** means the area identified in the map included in the Attachment of this Protocol.

Statutory Authorisations means an authorisation granted under the Conservation Legislation including a Concession granted under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987;

Statutory Planning Document includes any relevant Conservation Management Strategy or Conservation Management Plan under the Conservation Act 1987;

Tikanga Māori refers to Māori traditional customs.

SCHEDULE 1

SUMMARY OF TERMS OF ISSUE

This Conservation Protocol is issued subject to the provisions of the deed of settlement and the Settlement Legislation. A summary of the relevant provisions is set out below.

1. AMENDMENT AND CANCELLATION

- 1.1 The Minister may amend or cancel this Protocol, but only after consulting with Ngāti Manuhiri and having particular regard for its views (section 20).

2. NOTING

- 2.1 A summary of the terms of this Protocol must be noted in the Conservation Documents affecting the Protocol Area, but the noting:

2.1.1 is for the purpose of public notice; and

2.1.2 does not amend the Conservation Documents for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987 or the National Parks Act 1980 (section 24).

3. LIMITS

- 3.1 This Protocol does not:

3.1.1 restrict the Crown from exercising its powers and performing its functions and duties, in accordance with the law and government policy, including:

(a) introducing legislation; or

(b) changing government policy; or

(c) issuing a Protocol to, or interacting or consulting with, anyone the Crown considers appropriate including any iwi, hapu, marae, whanau or representatives of tangata whenua (section 21);

3.1.2 restrict the responsibilities of the Minister or the Department or the legal rights of Ngāti Manuhiri (section 21); or

3.1.3 grant, create or provide evidence of an estate or interest in, or rights relating to:

(a) land held, managed or administered under Conservation Legislation; or

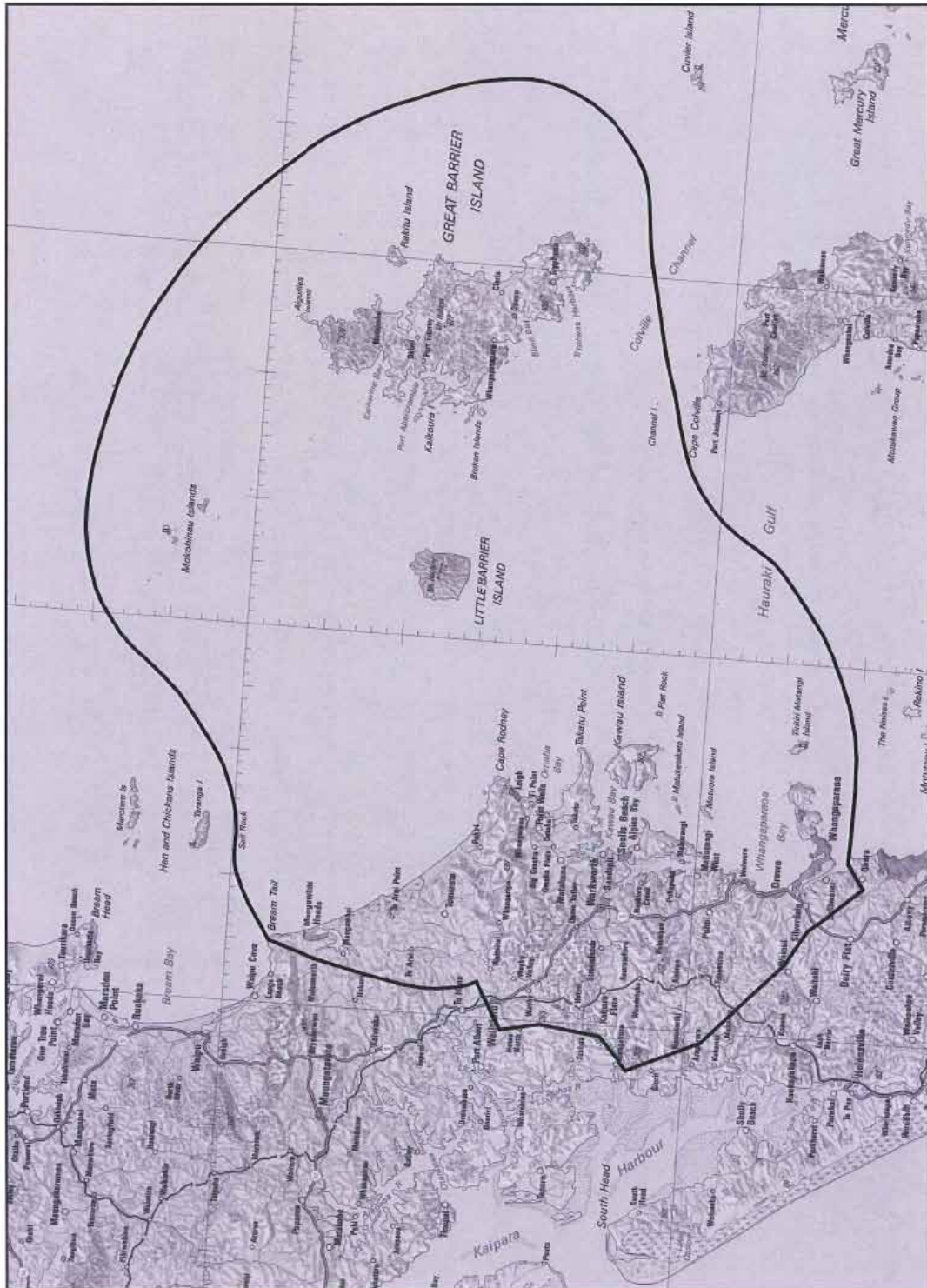
(b) flora or fauna managed or administered under the Conservation Legislation (section 23).

4. BREACH

- 4.1 Subject to the Crown Proceedings Act 1950, Ngāti Manuhiri may enforce the Protocol if the Crown breaches it without good cause, but damages or monetary compensation will not be awarded (section 22).

- 4.2 A breach of this Protocol is not a breach of the Deed of Settlement.

ATTACHMENT 1
DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION PROTOCOL AREA MAP



Index

- accommodation, 63, 90, *See also*
 campgrounds; huts
 private, 91, 108, 114–15, 123, 139
- active management, 31, 32–33, 36, 42, 43, 49, 55, 63, 68, 70, 88, 92, 99
- adverse effects, 89, 94, 105, 108, 111, 113, 130, 131
 addressing, 11, 34, 50, 59, 72, 76, 85, 86, 94, 103, 104, 106, 107, 110, 111, 113, 114, 118, 119, 120
- advocacy, 27, 29, 31, 43, 49, 50, 54, 57, 59, 72, 84, 86, 91, 92, 93, 99, 111, 112, 125, 128
- agriculture, 17, 23, 37
- Ahipara, 20, 52–53, 54
- aircraft, 43, 49, 50, 58, 63, 71, 78, 84, 90, 99, 108–11, 120, 121, 125, 133, 138
 landings, 43, 44, 55, 59, 64, 72, 80, 85, 86, 93, 99, 108–11, 125
- airports, 62, 63, 108, 110, 125
- animal pests, 29, 112
 control of, 43, 57, 62, 64, 78, 79, 93, 94, 100,
See also pest control
- Aponga Settlement, 88, 96
- aquaculture, 37, 38, 46
- Ara Wairua, 41, 54
- Arai Te Uru, 24, 36, 75, 78
- archaeological sites, 23–24, 32, 41, 47, 48, 52, 54, 57, 62, 66, 69, 75, 82, 84, 85, 87, 90, 125, 132, 133
- Argentine ants, 29, 104, 107, 110
- at risk species. *See* threatened and at risk species
- Auckland, 15, 16, 22, 37, 74, 90
 CMS, 26, 82, 83
- Aupouri Peninsula, 18, 20, 28, 46, 48
- backcountry destinations, 10, 33, 126, 129
- bats. *See* pekapeka/bats
- Bay of Islands, 12, 23, 37–38, 39, 63, 66–73, 98, 112, 116
- beehives, 38, 39, 102, 103
- biking. *See* cycling; mountain biking
- biodiversity, 43, 44, 46, 65, 67, 90, 126, 128
 addressing, 10, 22, 28, 29, 31, 36, 51, 58, 61, 63, 67, 69–70, 72, 79, 94, 96, 99
 freshwater, 58, 63, 69, 98
 hotspot, 14, 28, 41
 marine, 21, 92, 94, 135
- biosecurity, 29, 31, 35, 43, 44, 50, 55, 59, 61, 64, 65, 70, 71, 72, 79, 91, 92, 93, 94, 102, 104, 105, 106, 107, 110, 126
- Biosecurity Act 1993, 11, 126, 138
- birds, 30, 41, 69, 91
 coastal, 46, 52, 61, 82, 88
 forest, 18, 29, 46, 52, 61, 63, 74, 78, 87
 game, 36, 112, 118, 132
 migratory, 18, 21, 46, 82, 85, 88, 111
 nesting, 21, 29, 85, 113
 sea, 21, 22, 30, 41–42, 46, 87
 shore, 18, 83, 85, 89, 93, 94, 113
 wading, 18, 21, 46, 61, 82, 88
 wetland, 20, 46, 47, 48, 67
- boating, 68, 76, 83, 89
- Bream Bay, 87, 91–92, 95, 113
- Bream Head, 16, 18, 29, 32, 33, 36, 39, 87, 88, 91, 95, 106
- Bream Islands, 29, 87, 91, 95, 118
- breeding grounds, 18, 20, 22, 41, 46, 82, 88
- buffers, 66, 72
- Building Act 2004, 115, 127
- Busby, James, 23
- business. *See also* commercial activities
 contribution of, 37, 39, 69, 73
 opportunities, 34, 37–39, 84, 102
 working with, 33, 34, 36, 37, 39, 42, 45, 90, 98
- bylaws, 12, 29, 49, 54, 71, 72, 94, 95, 102, 105, 106, 107, 109, 110, 112, 127
- campgrounds, 16, 24, 33, 39, 42, 43, 44, 47, 48, 53, 62, 76, 89, 90, 91, 92, 95, 104, 110, 131
- camping, 24, 42, 53, 63, 69, 83, 89, 108, 130, 132,
See also freedom camping
- Cape Brett, 18, 21, 36, 39, 67, 68, 72
 Lighthouse, 24, 33, 66, 68, 70, 71, 73
- Cape Karikari (Whakapouaka), 21, 47
- Cape Reinga/Te Rerengawairua, 17, 21, 24, 33, 37–38, 39, 41, 42, 43, 102, 105, 111
- car parks, 79, 104, 105, 110, 131
- Cavalli Islands, 22, 23, 56–60
- Civil Aviation Authority, 108
- climate change, 15–16
- coastal environments, 15, 17, 46, 47, 48, 53, 57, 66–69, 74, 75, 84, 87, 88, 91, 108, *See also*
 birds; forests; walks
- coastline, 14, 15, 53, 56, 58, 66, 69, 74, 76, 82, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92
- Cockayne, Leonard, 76
- commercial activities, 20, 43, 69, 70, 102, 108, 116–17, 118–20, 127
- community, 9, 11, 53, 65, 67, 112, 127
 contribution of, 14, 22, 29, 37, 38, 42, 48, 49, 57, 63, 68, 69, 70, 73, 78–79, 85, 89, 91–92, 93, 94, 95
- trusts, 29, 58, 61, 62, 63, 89, 91, 97

- working with, 28, 37, 42, 43, 44, 49–51, 54, 55, 58–59, 64, 67, 69–73, 77, 83–85, 90–94, 97–99, 104, 106, 117
- compliance, 11, 93, 94, 103, 110, 115, 120
- cessionaires, 39, 58, 59, 60, 63, 64, 71, 72, 79, 80, 86, 91, 93, 103, 115, 127
- cessions, 11, 38, 39, 42, 64, 68, 69, 70, 71, 79, 84, 102–4, 108–11, 113, 114–15, 117, 120–21, 124, 127
- conflicts, social, 34, 107, 108, 111, 112, 120
- conservation
 - concept of, 8, 13, 127
 - groups, 22, 35, 37, 38, 48, 49, 54, 55, 57, 58, 59, 89, 91, 97
 - participation in, 22–23, 34–37, 48, 49, 55, 64, 68, 71, 91
 - support for, 22, 33, 36, 38, 39, 43, 53, 76, 78, 87, 89, 97, 98
- Conservation Act 1987, 8, 11, 12, 25, 101, 102, 103, 105, 108, 112, 117, 123, 125, 127, 128, 130, 131, 133, 137, 138, 141, 143
- conservation boards, 9, 26, 106, 114, 124, 127
- Conservation General Policy 2005, 8, 10, 11, 40, 44, 101, 103, 120, 125, 126, 127, 128, 130, 132, 133, 134, 137, 138, 139, 143
- conservation management plans, 8, 12, 127, 128, 138, 141
- conservation management strategies (CMSs), 8, 9, 10, 11–12, 111, 124, 127, 128, 138, 139, 141
- consultation, 9, 11, 27, 29, 34, 35, 44, 65, 72, 79, 80, 106, 107, 114
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat. See Ramsar Convention
- Cook, James, 23, 66
- Crown Minerals Act 1991, 8, 118–19, 136
- cultural heritage, 25, 33, 34, 58, 63, 69, 84, 87, 93, 101, 102, 132, 133, 134, 144
- cultural resources, 27, 90
- cultural sites, 14, 69, 84, 102, 110
- cultural values, 25, 34, 58, 66, 69, 70, 83, 98, 111, 122
 - protecting, 37, 43, 70, 71, 72, 78, 84, 91, 92, 93, 98, 106, 107, 113, 119, 142
- customary use, 27, 120, 129
- cycling, 48, 83, 105, See also mountain biking groups, 107
- Dalmatians, 47, 54
- Dargaville, 21, 76
- Deeds of Settlement, 25, 41, 78, 85
- deer, 29, 121, 122, 132, 143
- destination management, 10, 129
- development, 19, 23, 24, 29, 43, 47, 92, 117
- Director-General of Conservation, 116, 120, 126, 128
- disease, 77, 82, See also PTA (kauri dieback disease)
- district councils. See Far North District Council; local authorities; Whangarei District Council
- district plans, 49, 54, 134
- diving, 56, 57, 89, 91, 92
- dogs, 29, 35, 47, 57, 59, 64, 67, 71, 72, 93, 111–13, 121, 129
- dotterel. See tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel
- Doubtless Bay, 47, 48, 56
- drainage, 19, 29, 49, 75
- Du Fresne, Marion, 23, 66
- dunes, 39, 46, 47, 48, 52, 83, 84, 104
 - lakes, 18, 20, 28, 48, 49, 50, 74, 75, 83, 85
 - systems, 16–17, 20, 28, 42, 48, 49, 54, 75, 82, 83, 87, 88, 92, 94, 122
- East Beach, 29, 48
- eastern Bay of Islands (Ipipiri), 36, 39, 66, 67, 69–70, 72–73
- ecological values, 19, 95, 117
 - addressing, 35, 59, 72, 79, 85, 93, 94, 117, 122, See also restoration
 - interpreting, 44, 55, 73, 102
 - significant, 22, 47, 61, 63, 74, 75, 91
- economy, 23, 37, 38, 90
 - development of, 48, 89, 90
- ecosystems, 10, 15, 17, 19, 20, 28, 37, 41, 43, 50, 52, 59, 65, 79, 86, 88, 91, 94, 97, 98, 112, 123, 126, 130, See also priority ecosystem units
 - forest, 30, 58, 63, 77, 78
 - freshwater, 19, 82, 117
 - marine, 21, 31, 92, 94
 - services, 38, 39, 130
- ecotourism, 39, 68, 91
- education, 34, 50, 65, 90, 91, 93, 96, 98, 99, 112, 116
- eeling, 117
- eels. See tuna/eels
- Electricity Act 1992, 8
- endemic species, 17, 18, 21, 22, 28, 41, 42, 56, 58, 77, 87, 131, See also flora
- energy generation, 35, 37, 83, 142
 - geothermal, 20, 62, 63
- engagement, 22, 28, 35, 39, 50, 51, 57, 60, 64, 65, 69, 71, 73, 78, 80, 85, 86, 90, 94, 100
- eradication, 29, 41, 49, 57, 67, 79, 85, 94, 100, 102, 117, 126, 131
- erosion, 16, 17, 38, 111, 113
- estuaries, 20, 21, 66, 88
 - habitats, 46, 51, 61, 66, 82, 88, 89
- Europeans. See also Māori–European early contact
 - heritage of, 23–24, 47, 75

- settlements of, 14, 23, 25, 52, 53, 88
- explorers, 14, 23, 56
- extinction, 10, 15, 29
- facilities, 11, 24, 30, 34, 43, 62, 63, 71, 76, 77, 79, 105, 107, 123, 131
 - basic, 43, 70, 84, 90, 92, 96
 - upgrading, 34, 44, 65, 79
- fairy tern. *See* taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern
- families, 47, 48, 53, 62, 83, 90, 91
- Far North, 19, 21, 26, 48, 52
- Far North District Council, 8, 48, 49, 71
- farming, 19, 38, 41, 47, 52, 53, 56, 66, 67, 75, 87, 88, 90, 105, 121
- fencing, 73, 78, 79, 100, 121
- ferns, 19, 20, 22, 31, 46, 61, 97
- filming, 38, 85, 111, 120
- fire, 20, 29, 52, 67, 75, 105, 122
 - management, 32, 35, 42, 43, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 103, 106, 122–23
- Fire Service Act 1975, 31
- fish, 18, 19, 21, 46, 47, 57, 68, 75, 131
 - freshwater, 31, 41, 46, 63, 75, 118, 131
 - sports, 36, 117–18, 128, 131, 141
- fish and game councils, 36, 43, 50, 85, 97, 99, 118
- Fisheries Act 1996, 77, 82, 117, 131, 135
- fisheries, freshwater, 118, 140
- fishers, 80, 86, 94
- fishing, 37, 42, 47, 57, 66, 76, 83, 89, 109, 117–18, 135
 - restrictions, 77, 82, 93
- Flagstaff Hill, 24, 70
- flood control, 97, 99, 142
- flora, 18–19, 20, 38, 42, 56, 96, *See also* plant
 - pests; weeds
 - endemic, 22, 28, 31, 56, 61, 74
 - threatened and at risk species, 22, 28, 41, 45, 46, 50, 52, 59, 61, 65, 67, 74, 78, 80, 85, 86, 88, 95, 96, 97, 100
 - wetland, 20, 48, 75, 82
- food sources, 23, 24, 35, 53, 57, *See also*
 - mahinga kai
- foreshore, 72, 131
- Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, 31, 122
- forestry, 32, 37, 41, 50, 53, 89
- forests, 42, *See also* kauri
 - coastal, 46, 48, 52, 54, 56, 58, 59, 67, 82, 87, 88
 - flood, 97
 - hygiene measures for, 30, 44, 50, 55, 59, 64, 72, 80, 85, 93, 99
 - indigenous, 20, 23, 56, 61–65, 67, 74, 75, 92, 96–97
 - lowland, 17, 67, 97
- four-wheel driving, 48, 62, 64, 76, 83, 104, 106, 131
 - clubs, 49, 54, 106
- freedom camping, 24, 39, 105
- Freedom Camping Act 2011, 8, 105
- freshwater habitats, 19–20, 75, 82, 83, *See also*
 - biodiversity; ecosystems; fish; flora; wetlands
- Game Animal Council, 36, 122
- Game Animal Council Act 2013, 8, 121, 122, 132, 138, 143
- game animals, 122, 131, 132, *See also* birds; wild animals
- gardening, 23, 41, 57, 66, 87, 90
- gateway destinations, 10, 32, 33, 48, 63, 69, 78, 90, 91, 129, 132
- General Policy for National Parks 2005, 103, 127, 129, 131, 132
- geology, 16–17, 41, 87, *See also* volcanic
 - formations
- goats, 29, 41, 61, 79, 97, 100, 112, 143
- grazing, 19, 99, 103, 113, 114, 123
- Great Exhibition Bay, 47, 48
- guiding, 38, 42, 43, 53, 58, 62, 70, 76, 78, 85, 92, 102
- gum digging, 32, 47, 48, 52, 76, 83, 87, *See also*
 - kauri
- gumlands, 20, 46, 52, 62, 63, 67, 122
- Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000, 128
- Hawaiki, 41, 42
- helicopters, 104, 108
- Hen and Chickens Islands, 19, 22, 28, 29, 87–88, 91, 118
- Herekino Forest, 32, 36, 52–55
- Herekino Harbour, 21
- Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, 8, 33, 36, 71
- Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act
 - 2014, 8, 125, 133, 143
- historic heritage, 25, 32, 33, 34, 58, 63, 69, 84, 93, 101, 102, 132, 133, 134
- historic resources, 8, 11, 12, 13, 103, 127, 128, 133, 142
- historic sites, 24, 32–33, 49, 53, 66, 69, 70, 87, 102, 125, 134
 - icons, 11, 32, 66, 69
- history, 14, 23–24, 25, 47, 52, 56, 62, 66, 68, 69, 75–76, 77, 78, 84, 126, 132
- Hobson, William, 23
- Hokianga Harbour, 14, 21, 39, 47, 52, 53, 61, 62, 63, 75, 78
- horse riding, 68, 76, 83, 85, 113–14
- Houhora Harbour, 18, 21, 46, 47, 48, 49
- human activities, 17, 24, 30, 92, 102, 126, 137, *See also* commercial activities; industrial activities; land use
- hunters

- pig, 44, 50, 55, 59, 64, 72, 80, 86, 93, 99, 113, 121
- hunting, 36, 42, 47, 59, 62, 64, 76, 83, 98, 109, 111–13, 118, 120, 122, 127
- huts, 33, 57, 58, 59, 62, 73, 78, 91, 96, 99, 110, 113, 131
- icon destinations, 10, 24, 33, 37–38, 43, 68, 70, 90, 129, 133
- iconic species, 10, 31, 133
- Important Bird Area programme, 30
- indigenous species, 15, 27, 56, 65, 75, 79, 117, 133, *See also* endemic species
- conservation, 42, 69, 85, 91, 92, 105, 111, 118
- industrial activities, 29, 89, 90, 92
- infrastructure, 30, 55, 64, 68, 72, 80, 84, 86, 93, 129, 142
- Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group, 83, 85, 97, 98, 99
- integrated management, 9, 12, 27, 40, 59, 61, 63, 65, 67, 72, 73, 78, 85, 90, 95, 101, 128, 134
- international agreements, 12, 128
- International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) charter, 33, 134
- International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN), 30, 134
- interpretation, 32, 34, 43, 44, 55, 64, 71, 73, 79, 90, 95, 102, 116, 131, 134
- intertidal areas, 16, 20, 52, 61, 66, 82, 85, 88
- introduced species, 17, 87, 97, 112, 137
- invertebrates, 18, 21, 22, 41, 74, 88
- Ipipiri. *See* eastern Bay of Islands (Ipipiri)
- islands, 18, 22, 28, 41–44, 46, 47, 56–57, 66, 71, 87–95
- archipelago of, 17, 48, 67, 69–70, 72–73
- iwi, 11, 25–26, 142
- contribution of, 48, 50, 57, 78, 89
- links to areas, 46, 47, 58, 79
- plans and strategies, 27, 98
- working with, 43, 44, 50, 51, 59
- iwi authorities, 9
- Kai Iwi, 20
- Kai Iwi lakes, 75, 76
- Kaihu Forest, 29, 74, 96, 98
- Kaikohe, 18, 62
- Kaimaumuau, 20, 29, 46–51, 118
- Kaipara, 16, 25
- Kaipara District Council, 75
- Kaipara Harbour, 12, 15, 18, 21, 30, 38, 39, 77, 82–86, 96, 97, 98
- Kaipara North Head, 29, 86, 111
- Kaitaia, 47, 52, 108
- kaitiakitanga, 25, 27, 34, 38, 74, 78, 85, 89, 94, 134
- Kapowairua, 43, 44
- Karikari Peninsula, 17, 20, 23, 46, 48, 50
- kauri, 18, 24, 34, 41, 46, 56, 97
- forest, 14, 20, 23, 29, 37, 48, 52, 56, 61–62, 67, 74–81, 83, 88, 90, 96
- gum, 17, 23, 47, 62, 75
- kauri dieback disease. *See* PTA (kauri dieback disease)
- Kauri National Park, 9, 39, 77, 78
- kayaking, 38, 57, 58, 70, 76
- Kerikeri, 16, 18, 23, 67, 108
- Kerikeri River, 70, 118
- kiore. *See* rats
- kirihipi, 25, 83, 85, 135
- kiwi, 18, 22, 24, 29, 52, 56, 57, 58, 61, 64, 67, 71, 72, 74, 79, 88, 89, 93, 96, 97, 98, 112
- Kohukohu, 55, 62
- kōkako, 18, 61, 63, 74, 78, 79
- Kokota (The Sandspit), 17, 47, 48
- Kororipo Pā, 24, 32, 62, 66, 70
- Kororipo–Kerikeri Basin, 8, 12, 24, 33, 62, 66, 68, 70–71, 73
- Kupe, 75, 78
- Lake Ohia, 20, 30, 46, 48, 49, 50
- Lake Omapere, 20, 62
- Lake Owhareiti, 20
- Lake Taharoa, 75, 117, *See also* Kai Iwi lakes
- Lake Waikere, 75, 117, *See also* Kai Iwi lakes
- Lake Waiparaheka, 30, 118
- Lake Waiporohita, 30, 48
- land
- clearance, 29, 53, 56, 75
- private, 17, 22, 41, 49, 57, 76, 91, 108
- Land Information New Zealand, 106
- land use
- activities, 19, 43, 49, 50, 72, 86, 103, 108
- consents, 11, 102
- landforms and landscapes, 31, 38, 43, 48, 56, 57, 58, 66, 78, 83, 84, 87, 89
- landowners, 72, 91, 99, 107
- contribution of, 14, 49, 57, 78, 97
- working with, 28, 31, 49, 64, 68, 69, 71, 72, 91, 93, 98, 99
- Lane Cove, 57, 58, 59, 60
- lizards, 18, 22, 41, 52, 56, 62, 88
- local authorities, 9, 11, 35, 83, 89, 99, 115
- working with, 36, 43, 49, 54, 71, 72, 77, 78, 80, 85, 86, 92, 94, 97, 98, 106, 112, 116, 123
- local treasure destinations, 10, 33, 129, 135
- logging, 47, 52, 56, 61–62, 66, 67, 76, 83, 96
- Mahinepua Peninsula, 56, 57
- mahinga kai, 27, 135
- Maitahi Wetland, 20, 30, 77, 78, 79
- Maitai Bay, 24, 33, 47, 48, 51
- mana whenua, 25
- Manaia Ridge, 30, 87, 88, 91
- mānawa/mangroves, 15, 46, 52, 56, 61, 67, 82, 88

- Manawatāwhi/Three Kings Islands, 19, 21, 22, 28, 30, 41–45
- Mangakahia Forest, 83, 89
- Mangamuka, 36, 52
- Manganui River, 20, 30, 96, 97, 98, 99
- Manganuiowae, 30, 54
- Mangawhai, 18, 24, 28, 30, 36, 87, 88, 91–92
- Manginangina, 61, 62, 63, 64
- Mangonui, 23, 47, 57, 68
 Courthouse, 32, 49
 Heritage Trail, 48, 50
- manufacturing, 37, 38, 89
- Manumanu 1, 75
- Māori, 23, 34, 38, 135, *See also* iwi; tangata
 whenua; Treaty of Waitangi
 heritage, 23–24, 32, 47, 57, 75
 land, 22, 57, 67
 links to areas, 41, 42, 78, 87
 settlements, 14, 24, 25, 41, 52, 53, 75, 88
 Te Reo, 79
- Māori-European early contact, 14, 24, 66, 70
- marine environments, 21, 38, 58, 66, 68, 69, 88, 90, 91, 92, 94, 135
- marine mammals, 21, 27, 68, 69, 82, 88, 94, 116, 123, 135, *See also* Maui's dolphin
- Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, 8, 116, 128, 135
- marine recreational park, 38, 39, 89, 92, 94
- marine reserves, 31, 33, 88–90, 92, 94, 135
- Marine Reserves Act 1971, 8, 128, 135
- Maritime New Zealand, 93
- Marlborough Forest, 74, 96
- Marotere Islands, 30, 95
- Marsden Cross, 24, 32, 66, 68, 70
- Marsden Point Oil Refinery, 37, 89
- Marsden, Samuel, 23, 66
- Matapia Island, 21, 22
- Mataraua Forest, 18, 29, 74, 76, 77, 78, 79
- Matauri Bay, 16, 56
- Maui's dolphin, 78, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 86
 Threat Management Plan, 77, 80, 82, 86, 116
- Maungataniwha, 47, 52
 Range, 16, 46, 52
- Maungataniwha Forest, 18
- Maungatapere Hill, 36, 97, 98
- McGregor, W.R., 76
- milestones, 40, 44–45, 50–51, 55, 59–60, 65, 73, 80–81, 86, 95, 99–100, 123, 124, 136
- Mimiwhangata, 12, 18, 21, 32, 33, 36, 87, 88, 90, 93
 Marine Park, 88
- minerals, 17, 118, 136
 exploration, 17, 118
- mining, 17, 23, 32, 37, 118–19, 136
 seabed, 77, 82
- Minister of Conservation, 8, 11, 101, 102, 108, 118, 120, 121, 122, 126, 127, 128, 132, 135, 142
- Minister of Energy and Resources, 118
- Ministry for Primary Industries, 80, 86, 116, 117
- missionaries, 23, 62, 66, 70
- Mitimiti, 53, 114
- Mokaikai, 17, 30, 43, 106, 114
- monitoring, 29, 31, 42, 45, 50, 51, 55, 60, 61, 65, 67, 69, 81, 86, 95, 100, 103, 106, 107, 110, 114, 116, 124
- Motatau, 20, 88, 96
- Motorua Island, 69–70
- Motuarohia Island, 69
- Motukawanui, 23, 56, 57, 58, 59, *See also* Cavalli Islands
- Motukokako Island (Piercy Island), 22, 67
- Motuopao Island, 42, 44, 118
- Moturoa Islands, 22, 47
- Motutangi, 29, 47, 48, 49
- mountain biking, 62, 63, 65, 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 76, 106–7, 123, 129, 142
- Mt Camel, 17, 48
- Mt Manaia, 16, 24
- mudfish, 18, 46, 47, 62, 65, 67
- museums, 83, 97
- mustelids, 29, 57, 59, 67, 100
- National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA), 20, 51, 68
- National Parks Act 1980, 12, 77, 108, 125, 127, 128, 132, 138, 143
- natural hazards, 15, 24, 38
- natural heritage, 14, 29, 31, 144
 management, 10, 28, 29, 137
- natural quiet, 34, 106, 108, 109, 110, 121, 137
- natural resources, 8, 11, 12, 103, 128, 129, 134, 137, 142
 protecting, 13, 25, 33, 34, 102, 103, 117, 127
- Nelson/Marlborough, 19
- New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, 49, 54, 85, 94
- New Zealand Conservation Authority, 9, 124, 127
- New Zealand Defence Force, 108
- New Zealand Forest Service, 62
- New Zealand Police, 36, 106, 112
- New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008, 10, 126, 142
- New Zealand Transport Agency, 36, 38, 77
- New Zealand Walking Access Commission, 34, 36, 71, 99
- New Zealand Wars, 62, 90
- Nga Ahi Kaa o Pukenui, 8
- Ngā Whenua Rāhui, 17, 22, 26, 73
- Ngāi Takoto, 26, 47
- Ngāpuhi, 26, 47, 53, 62, 75

- Ngāre Raumati, 66
 Ngāti Hine, 26, 96
 Ngāti Kahu, 26, 47
 Ngāti Kahu ki Whangaroa, 26
 Ngāti Kuri, 26, 47
 Ngāti Kuta, 67, 72
 Ngāti Manuhiri, 26
 Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012, 26
 Ngāti Wai, 26, 91
 Ngāti Whātua, 25, 83, 84, 96
 Ngawha, 61, 62, 63, 64
 Geothermal Field, 20, 62
 Ngawha Springs, 20, 30, 65
 Ngunguru, 18, 36, 87, 88
 Ninety Mile Beach (Te Oneroa-a-Tohe), 21, 24, 41, 46, 47, 52, 104
 noise, 77, 108, 110
 North Cape (Otou), 16, 17, 19, 20, 28, 30, 41, 42, 43, 118
 Northern Kauri Coast, 74–81, 83
 Northern Rural Fire Authority, 123
 Northland Regional Council, 9, 43, 49, 50, 51, 54, 64, 92, 94
 Nova Scotians, 87
 objectives, 8, 9, 26–27, 31–34, 36–37, 39, 101, 124, 128
 ocean acidification, 15, 16
 Ocean Beach, 87, 91
 ocean currents, 16, 21, 41
 Okahu Island, 70
 Okiato, 23, 66
 Omahuta Forest, 18, 32, 36, 61–65, 118
 Omamari, 30, 78
 Opito Bay, 67, 73
 Opua Forest, 67, 70
 Otakairangi Swamp, 20, 98, 99
 Otamure Bay, 33, 90, 91
 Otehei Bay, 69, 72
 outcomes, 10, 28–39, 40, 42–43, 48–49, 53–54, 58, 63, 67, 69–71, 77–78, 83–84, 86, 90–92, 94, 98–99, 101, 102, 109, 138
 statements, 9, 28
 pā, 24, 41, 48, 52, 57, 62, 66, 75, 87, 90, 91, 97
 Pacific Ocean, 21, 41, 89
 Paihia, 23, 66, 70
 Papakuri, 30, 98
 Parengarenga Harbour, 12, 15, 17, 18, 21, 43, 46–47, 48, 49, 50
 partnerships, 13, 14, 25–27, 31, 33, 36, 37, 39, 45, 48, 50, 51, 62, 72, 85, 99, 138
 party size, 64, 71
 pāteke/brown teal, 18, 67, 88, 90
 Patukeha, 67, 72
 pekapeka/bats, 18, 52, 61, 97
 permits, 44, 64, 88, 103, 111, 112, 113, 118, 120, 121
 moratorium, 116
 pest control, 11, 31, 36, 55, 58, 59, 61, 62, 63, 64, 67, 70, 71, 72, 73, 78, 79, 85, 94, 138, *See also* animal pests; plant pests
 pest-free status, 29, 41–42, 43, 67, 69, 91
 pets, 111, 114, 139
 pigs, 29, 31, 42, 43, 44, 50, 55, 59, 64, 72, 80, 86, 93, 99, 112, 122, 132, 143
 plant pests, 19, 29, 47, 111, 113
 control of, 29, 49, 79, 123, *See also* pest control
 pōhutukawa, 18, 46, 48, 56, 58, 87
 policies, 9, 40, 43–44, 49–50, 54–55, 59, 64–65, 71–73, 78–80, 85–86, 93–94, 99, 101–23, 128
 pollution, 29, 35, 77, 82
 Pompallier House, 24
 Pompallier, Bishop, 66
 Poor Knights Islands, 19, 21, 22, 24, 28, 30, 33, 87–89, 91, 92, 94, 95, 118
 population trends, 22–23, 37, 47, 68, 90
 possums, 29, 36, 43, 57, 59, 61, 100, 112, 143
 Pouto Peninsula, 15, 17, 20, 28, 29, 36, 39, 82–86, 101, 104
 predator control, 58, 73, 79, 93
 priority ecosystem units, 10, 28, 29–30, 31, 32, 35, 42, 44, 45, 46, 48, 50–51, 55, 58, 59–60, 62, 63, 65, 70, 72, 77–81, 83, 85, 86, 88, 90, 92, 95, 96–100, 113, 121, 124, 139
 Project Island Song, 67, 69, 72
 protected areas, 35, 84, 139
 marine, 21, 31, 48, 49, 68, 94, 135, *See also* marine reserves
 Protected Objects Act 1975, 8
 PTA (kauri dieback disease), 30, 52, 61, 76–77, 104, 105, 113
 addressing, 30–31, 32, 35, 43, 44, 49, 50, 55, 58, 59, 63, 64, 65, 69, 72, 73, 77, 78, 80, 84, 85–86, 90, 93, 95, 99, 100, 107, 110, 121
 public access, 11, 25, 34, 35, 36, 71, 77, 79, 88, 90, 91, 92, 96, 99, 101–2, 108, 129, *See also* vehicles
 public benefit, 13, 14, 35, 37, 38, 48, 84, 89
 public safety, 11, 64, 71, 85, 102, 105, 106, 114, 119, 121
 Pukekaroro, 83, 84
 Pukenui Forest, 8, 29, 30, 32, 36, 98, 100
 Trust, 98, 100
 Puketi Forest, 16, 18, 29, 30, 32, 33, 36, 61–65, 106
 Trust, 61, 62, 63
 Purerua, 67, 73
 Purua, 88, 96
 Puwheke, 46, 48
 QEII covenants, 17, 22

- Raetea Forest, 30, 36, 52–55
 railway, 61, 76
 Ramsar Convention, 12, 49, 140
 Ranfurly Bay, 30, 36, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 106
 Rangaunu Harbour, 12, 15, 18, 21, 30, 46–47, 48, 49, 50
 Rangikapiti, 24, 32, 48, 49, 50
 Rangitane, 67, 73
 Rarawa Beach, 18, 44, 48
 rātā, 19, 46, 52, 61, 62, 96
 rats, 29, 57, 59, 88, 91, 100
 Rawene, 52, 62
 recovery
 species, 43, 67, 68, 77, 78, 82, 84, 88
 wild animal, 59, 64, 120
 recreation, 8, 10, 12, 28, 42, 53, 58, 69, 76, 79, 84, 87, 89, 90, 94, 96, 127, 128
 impacts, 16, 102, 104, 106, 107, 108, 109, 113, 114, 119, 120
 multi-day, 38, 43, 44, 70
 participation in, 33–34, 35, 44, 45, 51, 60, 65, 81, 86, 92, 95, 122
 recreational users, 106, 107, 114, 119
 reefs, 47, 48, 53, 68, 74, 75, 88–89, 126
 regional authorities, 11, 35, 83, 92, 119, *See also* Northland Regional Council
 working with, 32, 36, 97
 regulations, 12, 31, 102, 106, 107, 116, 117, 121, 140
 remoteness, 34, 42, 43, 78, 106, 108, 109
 Reotahi, 87, 89
 research, 17, 29, 44, 64, 65, 68, 71, 79, 82, 88, 91, 92, 93–94, 98, 102, 108, 110, 116, 120
 Reserves Act 1977, 8, 12, 35, 103, 105, 108, 117, 125, 127, 128, 138, 141
 Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), 11, 102, 119, 129, 130
 restoration, 14, 28, 29, 48, 57, 65, 67–68, 69–70, 79, 91, 94, 105, 123, 141
 collaborative, 38, 48, 58, 59, 61, 64, 69
 ecological, 29, 59, 61, 64, 67, 69, 70, 71
 ecosystem, 31, 58, 73, 78, 90, 91
 wetland, 38, 48, 50, 51, 98
 revegetation, 30, 49, 54, 73, 93, 99
 Riponui, 88, 96
 roads, 36, 38, 44, 57, 62, 63, 76, 78, 104, 105–7, 131, 141
 rohe, 25, 26, 40, 78, 85, 141
 Royal Forest & Bird Protection Society, 76
 Ruakaka, 36, 88, 92
 Ruapekapeka Pā, 24, 32, 33, 87
 Management Trust, 89, 90
 Ruatara, chief, 23
 rubbish, 76
 Russell Forest, 67, 70, 90
 Russell Peninsula, 18, 36, 66, 67
 saltmarsh, 19, 38, 46, 52, 56, 61, 67, 82
 sanctuaries, 21, 22, 28, 36, 62, 63, 69, 76, 77, 82, 87, 88, 91, 92, 113, 118
 schools, 9, 36, 96
 search and rescue, 36, 108, 112
 sedimentation, 46, 52
 sewerage, 76, 142
 shellfish, 21, 53, 75, 89, 131
 shipping, 52, 62, 83, 87
 signage, 11, 105, 131
 Simmonds Islands, 30, 46, 47, 49, 50, 118
 snails, 18, 22, 28, 41, 42, 52, 56, 67, 74, 88
 soils, 20, 23, 28, 66, 97, *See also* erosion
 Southland, 19
 Spirits Bay (Piwhane Bay), 21, 32, 42
 spiritual values, 24, 25, 26, 41, 42, 54, 74, 78, 83, 111, 142
 sporting events, 111
 stakeholders, 9, 33, 39, 43, 50, 60, 65, 72, 73, 83, 97
 Statement of Intent, 10, 11, 28, 124, 141
 State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986, 8
 structures, 102, 103–4, 126, 132, 133, 141, 142
 subtropical environment, 14, 17
 Surville Cliffs, 19, 42, 44, 45
 Takou Bay, 16, 56, 57
 Tāne Mahuta, 24, 33, 38, 76, 77, 80
 tangata whenua, 8, 25, 45, 51, 60, 65, 73, 80, 86, 95, 129, 134, 142
 contribution of, 22, 23, 24, 27, 37, 42, 48, 58, 63, 69, 72, 78–79, 85, 88, 91–92, 94, 95
 links to areas, 32, 48, 58, 62, 74, 77, 79, 84, 90, 120
 working with, 26–27, 31–37, 39, 42, 43, 49, 54, 58, 62, 64, 65, 68, 69–71, 72, 77, 80, 83–86, 90–93, 98–99, 104, 106, 116, 117
 Tangihua Forest, 30, 32, 83, 96, 99–100
 Tangihua Range, 16, 98
 taonga, 26, 45, 51, 60, 65, 73, 80, 83, 86, 95, 97, 142
 Tapeka Point, 67, 70
 Tapotupotu, 42, 43, 105
 Tapuwae, 52, 55
 taraiti/New Zealand fairy tern, 18, 88, 92, 95
 Taranga (Hen) Island, 22, 23, 30, 87, 88, 93, 95.
 See also Hen and Chickens Islands
 Taronui Bay, 71, 72, 73
 Tasman Sea, 21, 41
 Taumarumaru, 47, 48, 49, 50
 Taupo, 16, 20
 Taupo Bay, 57
 Tauranga Bay, 57
 Tauranga Valley, 56, 57
 Tauroa Point, 53, 114

- TBfree New Zealand, 36, 121
- Te Arai, 48
- Te Araroa Trail, 33, 34, 52, 53, 55, 63, 64, 70, 72, 73, 89, 91, 92, 95
- Te Aupōuri, 26, 47
- Te Hiku settlement, 26, 41
- Te Matua Ngahere, 76, 77
- Te Paki, 16, 17, 18, 19, 28, 30, 41–45, 104, 106
- Te Ramanuka, 30, 48
- Te Rarawa, 26, 47, 53, 75
- Te Rawhiti, 67, 68
- Te Roroa, 25, 38, 74, 75, 77, 78, 79, 142
- Te Roroa Claims Settlement Act 2008, 25, 74, 142
- Te Tarai o Rahiri, 96, 98
- Te Tarehu, 25, 74, 77, 78, 79, 142
- Te Uri o Hau, 25, 83, 84, 85, 88, 97, 135
- Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002, 25, 83, 135
- Te Wahapū, 14, 75
- Te Werahi, 20, 42
- telecommunications, 23, 103, 108, 111, 142
- threatened and at risk species, 17, 18–19, 22, 28–29, 41, 42, 58, 61, 63, 64, 67, 77, 82, 87–88, 97, 117, 124, 126, 142. *See also* flora
- conservation, 10, 31, 63, 69, 70, 72, 78, 83, 84, 90–91, 92, 98, 108
- Three Kings Islands, 30, 118
- tikanga, 38, 129, 134, 142
- timber milling, 23, 52, 62, 83, 87
- toilets, 79, 131
- Totara North, 56, 57
- tourism, 8, 10, 12, 22, 33, 58, 84, 89, 116, 123, 128
- attractions, 37–38, 42, 66, 68, 83, 133
- impacts, 68, 119, 120
- industry, 39, 69, 71, 77, 92, 94, 107
- tracks, 30, 33, 43, 53, 60, 62, 63, 76, 77, 89, 96, 98–100, 104, 106–7, 110, 113, 123, 131
- standard of, 55, 59, 64, 70, 73, 81, 90, 91, 95, 99
- upgrading, 32, 44, 54, 55, 72, 79, 98, 100
- tramping, 33, 38, 42, 53, 57, 76, 126, 132
- clubs, 107
- translocations, 29, 78, 91, 94, 142
- Treaty of Waitangi
- history of, 14, 23, 66
- settlements, 12, 25–27, 35, 38, 44, 47, 50, 74, 84, 90, 98, 110, 120
- tropical species, 19, 57, 89
- Trounson Kauri Park, 30, 33, 36, 38, 76–80
- Trounson, James, 76
- tuatara, 15, 22, 88
- tuna/eels, 31, 75, 97, 98, 99, 117
- Tutamoe Range, 74, 83, 96, 98
- Tutukaka, 39, 88, 91
- tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, 18, 49, 54, 57, 58, 67, 71, 82, 88
- Urupukapuka Island, 24, 32, 33, 66, 69, 72, 73, 114
- Utakura, 62, 63, 64
- utilities, 103, 105, 108, 110, 111, 141, 142
- vehicles, 49, 77, 85, 104–7, 120, 143
- access, 44, 49, 54, 64, 83, 84, 85, 93, 104–6, 135
- motorised, 64, 76, 83, 104–6, 123, 136
- recreational, 48, 76, 83, 94, 104
- visitors, 15, 42, 44, 47–48, 50, 60, 83, 89, 143
- contribution of, 44, 55, 59, 64, 69, 72, 80, 85, 91, 93, 99
- experience, 14, 24, 33, 34, 42–43, 52, 62, 63, 64, 65, 69–73, 77–78, 79, 80, 87, 90, 91, 92, 98, 102, 103, 109, 110, 111, 113, 114, 133, 142
- number of, 47, 61, 68, 69, 73, 76, 79, 80, 89, 92, 102
- volcanic formations, 16, 56, 62, 74
- volunteers, 37, 44, 68, 88
- von Hochstetter, Ferdinand, 75
- vulnerability, 71, 83, 104, 112, 122
- Waewaetorea Island, 70
- wāhi tapu, 24, 25, 27, 41, 47, 87, 88, 132, 142, 143
- Waihoanga, 62, 63
- Waihuahua, 29, 48
- Waikare, 66, 70
- Waikato, 37
- Waikino Forest, 67
- Waima Forest, 18, 29, 30, 74, 76, 77, 78, 79
- Waima Range, 16, 17, 74
- Waima River, 117
- Waimamaku River, 75
- Waipapa River, 61, 117
- Waipoua, 16, 118
- Waipoua Forest, 17, 18, 25, 29, 33, 36, 37–38, 74, 75–80, 142
- Waipoua River, 20, 74, 75
- Waipu, 18, 30, 36, 87, 88
- Wairakau, 56, 59
- Wairoa River, 96, 97
- Wairua River, 16, 36, 96, 99, 100
- Waitangi, 16, 23
- Waitangi National Trust, 71
- Waitangi River, 67, 117
- Waitangi Treaty Grounds, 12, 24, 66
- Walking Access Act 2008, 8
- walks, 24, 33, 38, 47, 53, 57, 58, 62, 64, 69, 73, 76, 83, 85, 92, 102, 126, 131
- coastal, 16, 33, 42, 43, 47, 91
- Warawara Forest, 16, 18, 30, 32, 36, 39, 52–55, 118
- water
- levels, 49
- quality, 19, 31, 35, 38, 46, 58, 63, 69, 93, 98

- supply, 19, 38, 97, 142
- watercraft, 52, 57, 58, 68, 104
 - landings, 71
- weeds, 19, 104, 113, 117
 - control of, 42, 63, 91, 103
- West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary, 21, 77, 82
- wētā, 22, 41, 88
- wetlands, 17, 38, 46-47, 48, 52, 61, 74, 75, 82, 83, 96-100, 122, 143
 - freshwater, 19-20, 56, 66, 67
 - protecting, 42, 49, 50, 63, 73, 99, *See also* restoration
- Whakaangi, 56, 58, 60
- whaling, 23, 66, 70
- Whananaki, 18, 88
- Whangamumu, 66, 70, 88
- Whangarei, 87, 89, 90, 95, 108
- Whangarei District Council, 8, 92, 97, 98
- Whangarei Harbour, 18, 21, 24, 88, 89, 92, 118
- Whangarei Heads, 19, 87
- Whangarei Kiwi Sanctuary, 88, 91, 93, 95, 96, 97
- Whangaroa, 17, 56-60
- Whangaroa Harbour, 12, 39, 56, 61
- Whangaruru, 33, 67, 88, 90, 114
- Whangaruru North Head, 30, 36, 87, 88, 93, 95
- Wild Animal Control Act 1977, 8, 120, 121, 128, 138, 143
- wild animals, 29, 31, 120-21, 143
- wilderness, 28, 34
 - area, 108, 143
- Wildlife Act 1953, 8, 122, 128, 132, 138, 144
- Williams, Henry, 66
- Wiroa, 62, 63, 64
- World Heritage areas, 12, 42, 144
- World War II defences, 23, 32, 66, 87, 91
- youth, 48, 49, 50, 53, 55
- zoning, 44, 50, 55, 59, 72, 80, 86, 93, 99, 104, 106, 108-11, 119, 120, 121

